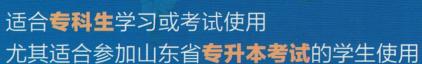
一书在手,升本无忧

专升本英语等外本英语等

李海燕 编著





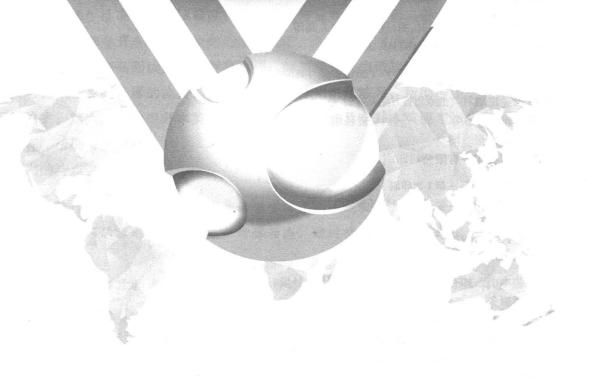




专升本英语

实用数程

李海燕 编著





图书在版编目 (CIP) 数据

专升本英语实用教程 / 李海燕编著. —北京: 机械工业出版社, 2018.6 ISBN 978-7-111-60458-7

Ⅰ. ①专… Ⅱ. ①李… Ⅲ. ①英语-成人高等教育-升学参考资料 Ⅳ. ①H319. 39

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字 (2018) 第 148646 号

机械工业出版社 (北京市百万庄大街 22 号 邮政编码 100037)

策划编辑: 孙铁军 责任编辑: 苏筛琴

责任印制:张博

三河市国英印务有限公司印刷

2018 年 7 月第 1 版·第 1 次印刷

184mm×260mm・25. 25 印张・443 千字

0 001 - 4000 册

标准书号: ISBN 978-7-111-60458-7

定价: 48.00元

凡购本书, 如有缺页、倒页、脱页, 由本社发行部调换

电话服务 网络服务

服务咨询热线: 010-88361066 机 工 官 网: www. cmpbook. com 读者购书热线: 010-68326294 机 工 官 博: weibo. com/cmp1952

010-88379203 教育服务网: www. cmpedu. com

封面无防伪标均为盗版 金 书 网: www. golden-book. com

前言

《专升本英语实用教程》是一本集语法、词汇、阅读、写作、翻译等专项训练于一体的综合教程。本书的编写目标是为大学生介绍英语学习的策略和方法,指明重点、解决难点、阐释疑点、扫除盲点,并集知识传授和方法点拨于一体,既授之以"鱼",又授之以"渔",使学生少走弯路,达到事半功倍的效果。本书不仅可以帮助参加各级各类考试的考生,尤其是大学专科层次的考生更好地备考,还可以作为广大读者巩固课堂知识的课外自学用书,与目前使用的《新视野大学英语》等教材配套使用。本书在正式出版之前,已在山东潍坊科技学院 2010 级进行了试用,本书以极强的实用性受到广大师生的欢迎和认可。

本书以《山东省高职高专英语应用能力考试大纲》为指导,结合英语教学的实际情况,在对历年专升本考试试题及权威资料进行认真研究的基础上编写而成。全书由六部分构成:第一部分为考试大纲、样题及详解,介绍专升本英语考试要求及考试构成,深度透析真题,帮助考生准确把握考试难度、题型构成与发展变化;第二部分为语法、词汇知识及练习,详细讲解专升本考试涉及的语法和词汇,并配有专项训练;第三部分为阅读理解及练习,帮助考生提高阅读能力和解题技巧;第四部分为翻译知识及练习,帮助考生提高翻译技巧,增强英汉互译的能力;第五部分为写作知识及练习,帮助考生更好地了解应用文写作格式;第六部分为专升本英语词汇必备,主要涉及专升本英语考试常用词汇,配有汉语注释,帮助考生记忆。

本书的特点:

名师主笔:本书编者是多年从事英语课堂教学的一线教师,熟悉考试大纲和考生的需要,深谙考试命题的原则、思路和最新考试动态,经过精心研究,编写出了这本高水平的教材。

内容权威: 本书紧扣考试大纲, 结合多年命题研究经验编写而成, 具有很强的权威性、实战性和针对性。

体系新颖: 本书将大纲要求、考试要点、强化训练等巧妙地结合在一起,大大方便学生复习。其重点内容突出、知识脉络分明、条理清楚,便于学生全面复习,重点把握。

知识全面:本书在编写的过程中特别注意了各个章节的协调和衔接,既注重知识的全面系统,又注重其实用性。力求章章完美,节节优秀,做到了知识点不多、不重、不漏。

同步训练:本书在知识讲解过程中,设计了大量的同步专项训练,便于知识的学习和 巩固。

本书得以出版要特别感谢给予支持和帮助的潍坊科技学院的同事们和济南师范大学的老师们。

由于写作经验有限,书中难免有疏漏和不足之处,欢迎广大学者、老师和同学提出批评意见和宝贵建议。

编者 2018 年 4 月

| 37. | |
|------|--------|
| Hill | = |
| 刖 | \Box |

| 第一部分 考 | 试大纲、样题及详解1 |
|--------|-------------------|
| 第一章 | 考试概述 |
| 第二章 | 考试大纲4 |
| 第三章 | 样题及详解······· 7 |
| | 法、词汇知识及练习 27 |
| 第一章 | 语法结构 |
| 第一 | • • • |
| 第二 | 节 被动语态 |
| 第三 | 节 复合从句41 |
| 第四 | 节 虚拟语气 70 |
| 第五 | 节 非谓语动词 |
| 第六 | 节 情态动词 |
| 第七 | 节 形容词、副词 |
| 第八 | 节 倒装、强调、反义疑问句 |
| 第九 | 节 主谓一致 |
| 第二章 | 语法专项练习 |
| 第三章 | 词汇知识158 |
| 第一 | 节 词汇考查重点 |
| 第二 | 节 英语词汇构成法 |
| 第四章 | 词汇专项练习 |
| 第五章 | 语法、词汇综合练习及答案详解180 |
| 第三部分 阅 | 读理解及练习203 |
| 第一章 | 阅读理解概述 |
| 第二章 | 提高阅读能力 205 |
| 第三章 | 提高解题能力 |

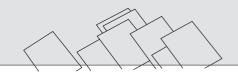
| 第一 | 一节 提高辨别信息的能力 | 208 |
|------|--|-----|
| 第二 | 二节 提高检测、归纳、概括的能力 | 211 |
| 第三 | 三节 提高逻辑推理能力 | 217 |
| 第四章 | 阅读理解专项练习 · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | 224 |
| | | |
| 第四部分 | 翻译知识及练习 | 265 |
| 第一章 | 英汉翻译概述 | 266 |
| 第一 | -节 英汉翻译的基本程序和方法 | 267 |
| 第二 | 二节 英汉翻译基础知识与技能 | 269 |
| 第三 | 三节 英汉翻译中的常用技巧 | 271 |
| 第四 | 9节 长句、难句的翻译 | 275 |
| 第二章 | 汉译英专项练习 | 283 |
| 第三章 | 英译汉专项练习 | 288 |
| | | |
| 第五部分 | 写作知识及练习 | 297 |
| 第一章 | 写作概述 | 298 |
| 第二章 | 应用文写作及范文 · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | 300 |
| 第三章 | 常见文体写作及范文 | 318 |
| 第四章 | 作文专项练习及范文 | 331 |
| | | |
| 第六部分 | 专升本英语词汇必备 | 351 |
| 专升本业 | 必备系列: 英语高频词组 (一) | 352 |
| 专升本业 | 必备系列:英语高频词组 (二) | 360 |
| 专升本业 | 公备系列:英语近义词、形近词辨析 | 376 |

第一部分

考试大纲、样题及详解

第一章

考试概述



自2011年起,山东省普通高等教育专升本考试取消了学分互认专升本考试(即校内专升本),此前已把跨校类专升本考试及面向社会专升本考试统一为普通专升本考试(含师范类和高职类),在每年12月份或次年1月份举行全省统一考试。考试科目分为公共课和专业综合课两种:公共课包括公共英语(英语专业考生考大学语文)和计算机(计算机专业考生考高等数学),每门考试科目成绩为100分;专业综合课根据考生报考的专业由主考院校确定,每门成绩满分不超过150分。其中,公共课为统考科目,实行全省统一命题、统一阅卷,并规定最低控制分数线。达到分数线的考生,方可进入录取序列。

山东省专升本英语考试的命题主要依据教育部颁发的《高职高专教育英语课程教学基本要求(试行)》(以下简称《基本要求》)进行,同时根据省内考生在公共英语方面的实际能力以及招生录取工作的具体情况,对每年的题型及难度做出调整。由于大纲颁布距今已有10年时间,其规定难度已无法对学生的英文水平进行全面准确的考查,加上历年来命题过程中对具体题型不断进行调整,实考试题的题型构成也有了较大变化。因此,考生需要重点关注以往几年山东省专升本英语考试的真题,以便清晰把握考试的题型构成、难度系数以及考查重点等。

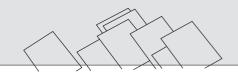
目前,山东省专升本公共英语考试的具体题型构成根据实际情况调整如下:考试基本题型保持听力理解(Listening Comprehension)、词汇用法和语法结构(Vocabulary and Structure)、阅读理解(Reading Comprehension)、翻译(Translation)、写作(Writing)五部分不变。其中听力部分包括的题型有简短对话(Short Conversations)、长对话(Long Conversations)、短文听力(Short Passages)和听写填空(Spot Dictation)四种。每年从中选取三种或四种题型进行考查,分值为 20 分。词汇与语法结构部分取消了大纲样题中 A 节对词性转换的考查,仅保留了 B 节单项选择题,同时在单选题中增加了对词汇搭配、词义辨析的考查。词汇与语法结构部分目前一般为30 题,分值为 15 分。阅读理解部分的题型包括阅读选择题、阅读简答题、业务交际英语理解三种,每年从中选取两种或三种题型进行考查,分值为 30 分。翻译部分仍然包括英译汉、汉译英两部分,共 10 题,分值为 20 分。其中 A 节英译汉部分的英文句子不

再完全出自试题的阅读理解文章,部分句子来自试题之外。写作部分的要求有所提高,词数由大纲中的规定不低于80词提高到不低于120词,体裁和题材均有较大的扩展。目前的考查形式有书信、标题作文、提纲作文等,分值为15分。

随着各院校英语教学水平的不断提高,近年来参加专升本考试的考生英语能力有了较大提高,试题的难度也逐年增大。目前试题难度已远高于大纲样题的难度,大体介于高等学校英语应用能力考试 A 级(PRETCO-A)与大学英语三级(CET-3)考试之间。这一难度能够比较好地反映出考生的实际英语水平,较好地控制了过线学生人数,实现了选拔优秀学生进入本科阶段学习的目标。同时,考试整体难度的增加,也反映在对考生词汇量的要求上。目前在山东省的专升本考试中,公共英语方面要求学生达到的词汇量大约在3 800词左右,也已超出大纲中规定的 3 400 词的上限。

第二章

考试大纲



山东省高职高专英语应用能力考试大纲

山东省教育厅高等教育处审定

一、总则

教育部颁发的《基本要求》指出:"语言测试在考核英语知识的同时,应着重考核学生实际运用语言的能力,要做到科学、公平和规范。"同时指出:"考虑到目前学生入学英语水平的差异,教学和测试分 A、B 两级。"山东省高职高专英语应用能力考试大纲就是根据这一要求而设计的。鉴于我省实际情况,目前,山东省高职高专英语应用能力考试的内容以《基本要求》所规定的 B 级内容为主。待条件成熟后,再进行 A 级的统一考试。这种考试属于尺度参照性考试。

高职高专英语课程的教学目的是: "经过 180~220 学时的教学, 使学生掌握一定的英语基础知识和技能, 具有一定的听、说、读、写、译的能力, 从而能借助词典阅读和翻译有关英语业务资料, 在涉外交际的日常活动和业务中进行简短的口头和书写交流, 并为今后进一步提高英语的交际能力打下基础。"整个教学过程遵循"实用为主,够用为度"的原则,"强调打好语言基础和培养语言应用能力并重;强调语言基本技能的训练和培养实际从事涉外交际活动的语言应用能力并重。""目前要特别注意加强听说技能的培养。"为此,本考试主要考核学生听和读的理解能力、翻译与写作的应用能力,同时也对词语用法、语法结构的掌握程度进行考核。

本考试目前只进行笔试。但为了贯彻《基本要求》的精神,我们把客观性试题和主观性试题的比例做了较大调整,有原来的7:3调整为5.5:4.5,考试时间为120分钟,满分为100分。

二、应考对象和考试要求

考试对象为高职、高专、五年一贯制高专和成人专科修完 220 学时英语课程的学生。他们应掌握 3 400 个单词和一定数量的词组的意义及基本用法,应具有实际运用语法的能力,能够阅读和翻译一般题材和涉外业务的文字材料,能够听懂一般的对话和短文,并能写简单的关于日常生活的短文和业务应用文。

三、考试内容

B 级考试的内容以《基本要求》的四个附表,即交际范围表、语言技能表、语法结构表、词汇表为依据。考试包括五个部分:听力理解、词语用法和语法结构、阅读理解、翻译和写作。全部题目按序列统一编号。

第一部分: 听力理解 (Part | Listening Comprehension)

共20题,考试时间为15分钟。这一部分包括3节。A节(Section A)共5题,每题含一组对话,共两句,读一遍,对话后有一个问句。B节(Section B)读一遍,共5题,分别安排在两篇听力材料之后,每篇后有2~3题,每题为一个问句。C节(Section C)为听写填空或简答题。听写填空:共10题,试卷上给出的160词左右的短文,其中有10个空格,每个空格要求填入一个词或短语,全文读三遍。简答题:共5题,试卷上给出200词左右的短文,全文朗读两遍。第一遍按正常语速朗读,第二遍语速稍慢,要求考生在会意和听懂的基础上做出简约的回答。听力部分的语速正常的情况下为每分钟110词左右。本部分的测试目的是检查考试获取口头信息和书面表达的综合能力。

选材的原则是:

对话部分为日常交际对话, 句子结构较为简单。 短文听力材料为题材熟悉、情节较为简单的短文。 听写填空材料为日常生活或较为简单的关于涉外活动的短文。

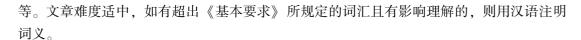
第二部分:词语用法和语法结构 (Part II Vocabulary and Structure)

共30题,考试时间为20分钟。这一部分包括两节: A节(Section A)为词语的用法,共10题,要求考生用括号中所给词的适当形式填空。B节(Section B)为语法结构,共20题,要求考生从每题四个选项中选出一个最佳答案。本部分的此时目的是检查学生对词语用法和语法结构的掌握程度。

第三部分: 阅读理解 (Part Ⅲ Reading Comprehension)

共 20 题, 4 节内容, 考试时间为 35 分钟, 要求考生按照指令完成各项任务。第一节和第二节为短文理解, 考生可根据文章内容从每题四个选择项中选出最佳答案; 第三节为业务交际英语理解, 首先以字母为序给出若干常用英语业务交际英语, 然后打乱顺序以数字为序给出部分汉语翻译, 要求考生把意义相同的英汉用语匹配到一起, 以检查学生对英语基本业务用语的掌握程度; 第四节是应用文理解, 给出一篇或两篇应用文, 要求考生对所提问题做出简单回答, 目的是考查学生对广告、说明书、业务信函、合同等常见应用文的理解能力和初步的应用能力。

选材的原则是:题材广泛,包括社会文化、日常生活、科普常识、商贸经济等,所涉及的背景和知识是学生了解和熟悉的。体裁多样,为记叙文、说明文、议论文、应用文



第四部分:翻译 (Part Ⅳ Translation)

共10题,考试时间为20分钟。这一部分包括两节。A节(Section A)为英译汉,共5题,要求将阅读理解材料中有标号的5个画线句子译成汉语。本节的测试目的是检查学生对常用句型和词语的综合理解和运用能力。B节(Section B)为汉译英,给出5个单句或包含5个句子的短文。本节的测试目的是检查考生实际运用语言的综合能力。

第五部分:写作 (Part V Writing)

考试时间为30分钟。要求考生写出80~100词的短文,写作内容为日常生活题材或简单的业务交际的短文。试卷上可能给出题目,或规定情景,或要求写请柬、个人简历、通知等应用文。短文要求格式基本正确,能基本表达思想,意思连贯,无重大语法错误。本部分的测试目的是检查学生的英语书面表达能力。

四、试卷各部分的题目、记分和考试时间

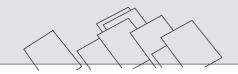
| | 题 号 | 名 称 | 题 数 | 记 分 | 时 间 |
|----|---------|-----------|------|------|--------|
| I | 1 ~ 20 | 听力理解 | 20 题 | 20 分 | 15 分钟 |
| II | 21 ~ 50 | 词语用法和语法结构 | 30 题 | 15 分 | 20 分钟 |
| | 51 ~ 70 | 阅读理解 | 20 题 | 30 分 | 35 分钟 |
| IV | 71 ~80 | 翻译 | 10 题 | 20 分 | 20 分钟 |
| V | | 写作 | 1 题 | 15 分 | 30 分钟 |
| | | 合 计 | 81 题 | 100分 | 120 分钟 |

备注:

- 1. 考试时间以每年山东省招生考试院公示的考试时间为准。
- 2. 听力部分的题型每年会稍有变化,以真题为准。
- 3. 阅读部分的题型近几年稍有不同,共有2节内容,基本题型为选择题和匹配题,阅读简答题和业务交际英语理解已取消,以真题为准。

第三章

样题及详解



山东省普通高等教育专升本考试公共英语模拟试题及详解

试卷一

(考试时间: 120 分钟)

注意事项:

- 一、本试卷分为试卷一、试卷二两部分。
- 二、将自己的姓名、准考证号码写在试卷和答题卡的相应位置上。考试结束后,把试 卷和答题卡放在桌面上。教师收卷后才可以离开考场。试卷和答题卡均不得带走。
 - 三、仔细读懂题目说明。
 - 四、在120分钟内答完全部试题,不得拖延时间。
- 五、试卷一的答案必须填涂在答题卡上,凡写在试卷上的答案一律无效;试卷上所有 题目必须在试卷上作答。

第一部分: 听力理解 (本大题共20 小题, 每小题1分, 共20分)

Part I Listening Comprehension (15 points, 1 point each)

Section A

Directions: In this section, you will hear 8 short conversations and 2 long conversations. At the end of each conversation, one or more questions will be asked about what was said. Both the conversation and the question will be spoken only once. After each question there will be a pause. During the pause, you must read the four choices marked A, B, C and D, and decide which is the best answer. Then mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center.

Short Conversations

- 1. A. He has changed his plan.
 - C. He is arriving this afternoon.
- 2. A. A waitress.
- B. A salesgirl.
- 3. A. 9:00.
- B. 9:10.

- B. He has canceled his trip.
- D. He forgot to arrange his trip.
- C. A housewife.
- D. A receptionist.
- C. 9:20.
- D. 9:30.

- 4. A. The woman is sick.
 - B. The woman has to work.

- C. The woman has to go to the party.
- D. The woman doesn't want to go the party.
- 5. A. The man didn't notice her in the hallway.
 - B. There was an announcement in the hallway.
 - C. The meeting will be on Friday.
 - D. The meeting has been canceled.
- 6. A. She is very much afraid.
 - C. She is not familiar with the place.
- 7. A. The new teacher is ill.
 - C. She doesn't want to meet the new teacher.
- 8. A. Not go shopping downtown.
 - C. Look for a new wallet.

- B. She has never heard of the place.
- D. She has never taken the bus before.
- B. She hasn't met the new teacher yet.
- D. She doesn't feel well.
- B. Guard her money.
- D. Not to take the train.

Long Conversation 1

Questions 9 to 11 are based on the conversation you have just heard.

- 9. A. He isn't very well.
 - B. He has some trouble in his study.
 - C. He feels lonely living in Britain.
 - D. He is not accustomed to the weather and food in the country.
- 10. A. Because he seldom goes out.
 - B. Because English people seldom goes out.
 - C. Because he lives at a place where there are few English people.
 - D. Because he is busy studying.
- 11. A. Peter's English is too poor.

B. English people hate to be talked to.

C. He never speaks first.

D. He often asks stupid questions.

Long Conversation 2

Questions 12 to 14 are based on the conversation you have just heard.

12. A. A common habit.

B. A common behavior.

C. A learned behavior.

- D. A learned habit.
- 13. A. She is shy when speaking in front of people.
 - B. She forgot to prepare the class.
 - C. She made a serious mistake in front of people.
 - D. She forgot to give a presentation.
- 14. A. He looks like children.
 - B. He feels very nervous when somebody is waiting for him.

- C. He likes history very much.
- D. He blushes frequently.

Section B

Directions: In this section, you will hear 2 passages. At the end of each passage, you will hear some questions. Both the passage and the questions will be spoken only once. After you hear a question, you must choose the best answer from the four choices marked A, B, C, and D. Then mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center.

Passage One

Questions 15 to 17 are based on the passage you have just heard.

- 15. A. The matter is somewhat important.
- B. It is a matter of life and death.
- C. You are getting people into trouble.
- D. You are not considerate.

16. A. In social life.

B. In school life.

C. In private life.

- D. In daily life.
- 17. A. Because they speak different languages.
 - B. Because they use different gestures.
 - C. Because they understand the meaning of time differently.
 - D. Because they have different educational background.

Passage Two

Questions 18 to 20 are based on the passage you have just heard.

- 18. A. Dijon.
- B. Paris.
- C. London.
- D. New York.

- 19. A. On the airplane.
- B. In the ship.
- C. On the bus.
- D. On the train.

- 20. A. Mark Twain was very hot-tempered.
 - B. The conductor was quite careless.
 - C. The service on the train was bad.
 - D. The man who was put off the train was a little bit angry.

第二部分: 词汇和语法结构 (本大题共30 小题,每小题0.5分,共15分)

Part II Vocabulary and Structure (15 points, 0.5 pint each)

Directions: There are 30 incomplete sentences in this part. For each sentence there are four choices marked A, B, C and D. Choose the ONE answer that best completes the sentence. Then mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center.

- 21. You have nothing to by refusing our advice.
 - A. gain
- B. grasp
- C. seize
- D. earn

| 22. | The accident | him of his sight and | the use of his legs. | | | |
|-----|------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|--|--|
| | A. derived | B. disabled | C. deprived | D. seized | | |
| 23. | She was so | in her job that she did | ln't hear anybody knock | ing at the door. | | |
| | A. absorbed | B. attracted | C. drawn | D. concentrated | | |
| 24. | I a long j | pole in the center of the | field, and on top of it l | hung the lamp. | | |
| | A. put up | B. put on | C. put out | D. put up with | | |
| 25. | A good friend is one | e who will you | when you are in troubl | e. | | |
| | A. stand for | B. stand by | C. stand up to | D. stand up with | | |
| 26. | It was in the year | 1925 John H | Biard found a way to s | send pictures by wireless | | |
| | equipment. | | | | | |
| | A. when | B. that | C. which | D. until | | |
| 27. | It was essential that | all the necessary docum | ents to the pr | resident's office before the | | |
| | end of this month. | | | | | |
| | A. be handed in | | B. should hand i | n | | |
| | C. must be handed | in | D. had been han | ded in | | |
| 28. | I don't like watching | g football games, and | · | | | |
| | A. she doesn't too | | B. either doesn't she | | | |
| | C. neither does she | | D. she doesn't ne | either | | |
| 29. | This year we will pr | roducethey di | d last year. | | | |
| | A. as twice many c | ars as | B. twice as many | cars than | | |
| | C. twice as many c | ars as | D. cars twice as | many that | | |
| 30. | In some countries, | is called "eq | uality" does not really | mean equal rights for all | | |
| | people. | | | | | |
| | A. which | B. what | C. that | D. one | | |
| 31. | might be | expected the response to | the question was very | mixed. | | |
| | A. As | B. That | C. It | D. What | | |
| 32. | Police have | to the public to come | e forward with any info | rmation which might help | | |
| | them in their inquir | ies. | | | | |
| | A. urged | B. appealed | C. claimed | D. called | | |
| 33. | Why don't you have | a night out? It would ta | ke your off y | our worries. | | |
| | A. cares | B. head | C. heart | D. mind | | |
| 34. | As a pres | sident, his views are trea | ated with respect when l | he was interviewed. | | |
| | A. prior | B. late | C. previous | D. former | | |
| 35. | I felt somewhat disa | appointed and was about | t to leave,s | something occurred which | | |
| | attracted my attention | on. | | | | |
| | A. unless | B. until | C. when | D. while | | |

| 36. | , you are weld | come to join in our discus | sion | l . | | |
|-----|---------------------------|-----------------------------|-------|-----------------------|-------|--------------------|
| | A. No matter what are y | your opinions | В. | Whatever your opi | inior | ns are |
| | C. No matter whatever y | your opinions are | D. | No matter your op | inio | ns are |
| 37. | His explanation | he didn't see the notic | e is | unsatisfactory. | | |
| | A. which | B. as | C. | that | D. | what |
| 38. | Realizing that he hadn't | enough money and | | to borrow from his | fath | er, he decided to |
| | sell his watch. | | | | | |
| | A. not wanted | B. no to want | C. | not wanting | D. | wanting not |
| 39. | He is the only one of the | e sons in the family who | | received hig | her | education. |
| | A. are | B. is | C. | have | D. | has |
| 40. | I suppose that when I co | ome back in ten years' tin | ne a | ll these old houses | _ | down. |
| | A. will have been pulled | d | В. | will have pulled | | |
| | C. will be pulling | | D. | will be pulled | | |
| 41. | When I caught him | , I stopped buying | thin | gs there and started | d de | aling with another |
| | shop. | | | | | |
| | A. cheating | B. cheat | C. | to cheat | D. | to be cheating |
| 42. | Most parents encourage | their children to take an a | activ | ve part in social eve | ents | , those |
| | event do not interfere wi | th their studies. | | | | |
| | A. lest | B. unless | C. | though | D. | provided |
| 43. | for my illness | , I would have lent him a | a he | lping hand. | | |
| | A. Not being | B. Had it not been | C. | Without being | D. | Not having been |
| 44. | Only one little boy | the accident; every | one | else was killed. | | |
| | A. survived | B. submitted | C. | suffered | D. | succeed |
| 45. | I don't know whether wh | at she said is true, but I | 'll t | ry to it. | | |
| | A. confine | B. confess | C. | conform | D. | confirm |
| 46. | Children who are over-pa | rotected by their parents | may | become | | |
| | A. hurt | B. damaged | C. | spoiled | D. | harmed |
| 47. | The boat, thre | owing the boys into the w | ater | ·. | | |
| | A. turned on | B. turned down | C. | turned off | D. | turn over |
| 48. | The teacher asked a diff | icult question, but finally | Те | d a good | l an | swer. |
| | A. came up to | B. came up for | D. | came up with | D. | came up against |
| 49. | Not long ago, a person | whom I know very well w | as _ | an accide | ent. | |
| | A. related to | B. included in | C. | involved in | D. | subject to |
| 50. | I will give you such info | rmation help y | ou i | in your study. | | |
| | A. as will | B. as it will | C. | that will | D. | which will |

第三部分:阅读理解(本大题共20小题,每小题1.5分,共30分)

Part III Reading Comprehension (30 points, 1.5 points each)

Section A

Directions: There are 3 passages in this part. Each passage is followed by some questions or unfinished statements. For each of them there are four choices marked A, B, C and D. You should decide on the best choice and mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center.

Passage One

One hundred and thirteen million Americans have at least one bank-issued credit card. They give their owners automatic credit in stores, restaurants, and hotels, at home, across the country, and even abroad, and they make many banking services available as well. More and more of these credit cards can be read automatically, making it possible to withdraw or deposit money in scattered locations, whether or not the local branch bank is open. For many of us the "cashless society" is not on the horizon—it's already here.

While computers offer these conveniences to consumers, they have many advantages for sellers too. Electronic cash registers can do much more than simply ring up sales. They can keep a wide range of records, including who sold what, when and to whom. This information allows businessmen to keep track of their list of goods by showing which items are being sold and how far they are moving. Decisions to reorder or return goods to suppliers can then be made. At the same time these computers record which hours are busiest and which employees are the most efficient, allowing personnel and staffing assignments to be made accordingly. And they also identify preferred customer for promotional campaigns. Computers are relied on by manufacturers for similar reasons. Computer analyzed marketing reports can help to decide which products to emphasize now, which to develop for the future and which to drop. Computers keep track of goods in stock, of raw materials on hand, and even of the production process itself.

Numerous other commercial enterprises, from theaters to magazine publishers, from gas and electric utilities to milk processors, bring better and more efficient services to consumers through the use of computers.

- 51. According to the passage, the credit card enables its owner to ______.
 - A. withdraw as much money from the bank as he wishes
 - B. obtain more convenient services than other people do
 - C. enjoy great trust from the storekeeper
 - D. cash money where he wished to

- 52. From the last sentence of the first paragraph we learn that .
 - A. in the future all the Americans will use credit cards
 - B. credit cards are mainly used in the United States today
 - C. nowadays many Americans do not pay in cash
 - D. it is now more convenient to use credit cards than before
- 53. The phrase "ring up sales" most probably means
 - A. make an order of goods

B. record sales on a cash register

C. call the sales manager

- D. keep track of the goods in stock
- 54. What is this passage mainly about?
 - A. Approaches to the commercial use of computers.
 - B. Conveniences brought about by computers in business.
 - C. Significance of automation in commercial enterprise.
 - D. Advantages of credit cards in business.

Passage Two

Most personnel managers agree that job interviews are one of the least objective recruitment methods. But the advantages of testing are not going to change the attraction of the interview to employers. The appeal of the interview has everything to do with the human factor.

Most people believe they are a reasonable judge of character and trust their instinctive feelings. We might use some kind of test to aid the selection process, but we usually pick a candidate who interviews will, has good qualifications and an impressive work record.

But suppose the candidate lies or is less than completely honest, "This can be a serious problem for employers," explains Alan Conrad, Chief Executive at Optimus Recruitment. "The most difficult liars to find are those who tell half-truths rather than complete lies." Research shows that up to 75 percent of resumes are inaccurate on purpose. The most common practice is omission.

Interviewer should therefore concentrate on areas of uncertainty such as gaps between periods of employment and job descriptions that seem strange. "Focusing on these areas will force candidates to tell the truth or become increasingly dishonest. This is usually when people signal their anxiety by their body language. Sweat on the upper lip, false smiles and nervous hand movements all indicate discomfort."

Conrad does not suggest an aggressive policy-style interview technique, but insists that close inspection of a resume is absolutely essential. Only by asking the right questions can you confirm the suitability of the candidate or put pressure on those who are being less than completely honest.

- 55. The best title of this passage can be . .
 - A. How to Catch out the Dishonest Candidate
- B. How to Find a Job by Tricks
- C. Disadvantages of Job Interviews
- D. Advantages of Job Interviews

- 56. The liars hard to recognize are those who tell .
 - A. complete truths
- B. complete lies
- C. partial truths
- D. mainly truths
- 57. How were the job applicants able to lie without being detected?
 - A. By leaving out some necessary information.
 - B. By providing more information than needed.
 - C. By using their body language.
 - D. By telling some unbelievable lies.
- 58. What is the author's attitude towards job interviews?
 - A. Most objective.
- B. Too subjective.
- C. Suspicious.
- D. Credulous.

Passage Three

Tokyo is one of those places that you can love and hate at the same time.

In Tokyo there are always too many people in the places where I want to go. Of course there are too many cars. The Japanese drive very fast, but in Tokyo they often spend a long time in traffic jams. Tokyo is not different from London, Paris and New York in that, it is different when one wants to walk. At certain times of the day there are a lot of people on foot in London's Oxford Street. But the streets near the Ginze in Tokyo always have a lot of people on foot, and sometimes it is really difficult to walk. People are very polite; there are just too many of them. The worst time to be in the street is at 11:30 at night. That is when the night-clubs are closing and everybody wants to go home. There are 35,000 night clubs in Tokyo, and you do not often see one that is empty.

During the day, most people travel to and from work by train. Tokyo people buy six million train tickets every day. At most stations, trains arrive every two or three minutes, but at certain hours there do not seem to be enough trains. Although they are usually crowded, Japanese trains are very good. They always leave and arrive on time. On a London train you would see everybody reading a newspaper. In Tokyo trains everybody in a seat seems to be asleep, whether his journey is long or short.

In Tokyo, I stood outside the station for five minutes. Three fire-engines raced past on the way to one of the many fires that Tokyo has every day. Tokyo has so many surprises that none of them can really surprise me now.

- 59. According to the passage, Tokyo is different from in that _____.
 - A. it has a larger population
 - B. it is a bigger city
 - C. it is more difficult to go somewhere on foot
 - D. its people are friendlier and more polite
- 60. What time does the writer think is the worst time to go into the street?
 - A. When the nightclubs are closing.
- B. Eight o'clock in the morning.
- C. When the train is overcrowded.
- D. When people travel to and from work.

| 61. | What does the writer say about Japanes | e tr | ains? |
|------------------|---|------|---|
| | A. They are very nice and comfortable | | B. There are not enough trains. |
| | C. They often run behind schedule. | | D. They leave and arrive on schedule. |
| 62. | From the writer's observation, we can s | see | that fires break out |
| | A. quite frequently | | B. very rarely |
| | C. occasionally | | D. only several times a day |
| | | Sec | ction B |
| Dir ecolu | | he l | left column with the English translations in the right |
| (| Part 1 | | |
| 63. | 再过一个月就是圣诞节了,但悲哀的是 麦克唐纳家的房子里似乎缺少了点圣诞 气息。 | A. | We are here to make a case for volunteerism in college, as there may be some benefits to community service that you haven't yet considered when drawing up those schedules. |
| 64. | 我们在这里为在大学做志愿服务提供充足的理由,因为当你制订计划的时候,也许还有一些社区服务的益处没有考虑到。 | В. | With Christmas only a month away, the McDonald house seemed sadly lacking in Christmas spirit. |
| 65. | 史密斯教授明天的演讲很重要。如果你 想通过期末考试的话最好在演讲时不要 让自己的思想开小差。 | C. | Exposing children to classical music helps to build up their good temperament. |
| 66. | 从小让孩子接触古典音乐有助于培养良 好的性情。 | D. | The lecture to be given by Professor Smith tomorrow is very important. If you wish to pass the final exam you'd better not let your mind wander during the lecture. |
| (b) | Part 2 | | |
| 67. | 但是卡车很大,并且载重很多;它们被 人们接受是因为它们提供了人们需要的 服务,使美国向前发展。 | A. | Only when the researchers have obtained sufficient data can they come to a sound conclusion. |
| 68. | 只有当研究者获得充分的数据,他们才 能得出一个正确的结论。 | В. | But trucks are big and carry heavy load; they are accepted because they perform a needed service, making America move. |
| 69. | 老师的南方口音太重,我怎么听也不明白他在说什么。 | C. | I listened hard but still failed to make out what the teacher was saying because of his strong southern accent. |
| 70. | 至于计算机化的影响,没有什么地方比 | D. | As for the influence of computerization, nowhere have we |

银行能更清楚地看到其成果。

seen the results more clearly than in the bank.

试卷二

第四部分 翻译 (本大题共20分,每小题2分)

Part IV Translation (20 points, 2 points each.)

| | _ |
|---------|---|
| Section | |
| | |
| | |

Directions: Translate the English sentences into Chinese.

- 71. More and more of these credit cards can be read automatically, making it possible to withdraw or deposit money in scattered locations, whether or not the local branch bank is open.
- 72. This information allows businessmen to keep track of their list of goods by showing which items are being sold and how far they are moving.
- 73. Most personnel managers agree that job interviews are one of the least objective recruitment methods.
- 74. Only by asking the right questions can you confirm the suitability of the candidate or put pressure on those who are being less than completely honest.
- 75. On a London train you would see everybody reading a newspaper. In Tokyo trains everybody in a seat seems to be asleep, whether his journey is long or short.

Section B

Directions: Translate the Chinese sentences into English.

- 76. 苏迪悄悄地告诉我,说那个留着长长的红色头发、看上去像艺术家的年轻人是她的 表哥。
- 77. 除了有趣和是一种很好的锻炼,游泳是一项十分有用的技能。
- 78. 约翰和他的家人依靠微薄的收入勉强生活。
- 79. 成千上万的游客把通向塔顶的台阶都踏得磨损了。

80. 令人奇怪的是如此无知的人竟然被认为是一个学者。

Part V Writing (15 points)

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition entitled "What Can Be Done to Tackle the Haze Problem?" You should write at least 120 words according to the following Chinese outline.

- (1) 描述雾霾天气这一现象及其危害。
- (2) 分析雾霾天气产生的原因。
- (3) 提出应对雾霾天气的建议。

I. Listening Comprehension (20 points)

1—5 A D B B B 6—10 C D B A A 11—15 C A A D B 16—20 A C A D B

Section A

- 1. M: Shall we go to the airport to meet Dr. Smith this afternoon?
 - W: Oh, I forgot to tell you. He has put off his trip.
 - **Q:** What do we know about Dr. Smith?
- 2. W: Good morning, Hilton Hotel. May I help you?
 - M: I'd like some information about your hotel.
 - **Q:** What is the woman?
- 3. **W:** When is the show supposed to start?
 - M: Don't worry. It doesn't start until 9:30. We've still got 20 minutes.
 - **Q:** What's the time now?
- 4. M: The International Students Association is having a party on Saturday night. Can you go?
 - W: I wish I could, but I work at the hospital on weekends.

- **Q:** What do we learn from the conversation?
- 5. M: I wonder when they will reschedule the meeting. I hope it is not on Friday.
 - **W:** Didn't you see the notice in the hallway?
 - **Q:** What does the woman mean?
- 6. M: Excuse me. Can you tell me if this bus goes to Victoria Station?
 - W: No, I'm afraid I can't. I've only been there a few days myself.
 - **Q:** Why can't the woman give the man directions?
- 7. M: Did you meet our new teacher yesterday?
 - W: I've been sick for three days.
 - **Q:** What's the woman trying to tell the man?
- 8. W: I'm taking the train downtown to go shopping.
 - M: Well, you'd better keep an eye on your wallet.
 - **Q:** What does the man advise the woman to do?

Conversation One

- W: What's the matter, Peter? You don't look very happy.
- M: I'm worried about my English.
- **W:** What's the problem?
- M: I'm not practicing enough.
- **W:** Why not?
- **M:** Well, I seldom have chances to meet English people.
- W: You should go out more.
- **M:** Where should I go?
- W: You should go to pubs, you should join a club.
- **M:** But... English people never speak to me.
- W: Ah! You should speak first.
- **M:** What can I talk about?
- **W:** The weather! English people are always interested in the weather.

Questions 9 to 11 are based on the conversation you have just heard.

- 9. Which of the following is TRUE about Peter?
- 10. Why doesn't Peter have many chances to meet English people?
- 11. Why does Peter say that English people never speak to him?

Conversation Two

- **M:** Hi, Sarah. What's up?
- W: Oh, hi, I just got out of history class. I had to give a presentation.

M: How did it go?

W: Terribly. I'm sure I made a fool of myself.

M: Why? Weren't you prepared?

W: No, it was not that. It's just I get so embarrassed and nervous whenever I have to speak in front of a group of people. I stand up and my face gets red and then I get even more nervous because I know everyone can see me blushing.

M: It's not so bad to blush.

W: But it happens all the time. If the professor asks a question and I know the answer, I blush like crazy if he calls on me. Doesn't that ever happen to you?

M: No, not really. Maybe you should just try to forget about the people. Look at something else in the room like the exit sign.

W: I guess I could try that but I doubt it'll help.

M: You know, we talked about it in psychology class. Blushing, even though it's involuntary, is more or less a learned behavior.

W: What do you mean?

M: Oh, children hardly ever blush at all. And among adults, supposedly, women blush more than men.

W: I wonder why?

M: I don't know, but I had a friend at high school, Brian Smith. It was really easy to make him blush. He turned red whenever a waitress would ask him for his order.

W: I'm not that bad. Well, I've got to get going for my next class. I'll take to you later.

Questions 12 to 14 are based on the conversation you have just heard.

- 12. What's the psychological view on blushing?
- 13. Why does the woman think the class went terribly?
- 14. What does the man say about Brian Smith?



Passage One

In the United States, it is not customary to telephone someone very early in the morning. If you telephone him early in the day, while he is shaving or having breakfast, it shows that the matter is very important and requires immediate attention. The same meaning is attached to telephone calls made after 11:00 p.m. If someone receives a call during sleeping hours, he assumes it's a matter of life and death. The time chosen for the call indicates its importance.

In social life, time plays a very important part. In the United States guests tend to feel they

are not highly regarded if the invitation to a dinner party is extended only three or four days before the party date. But it is not true in all countries. In other areas of the world, it may be considered foolish to make an appointment too far in advance because plans which are made for a date more than a week away tend to be forgotten. The meaning of the time differs in different parts of the world. Thus, misunderstanding can arise between people from cultures that treat time differently. Promptness is highly valued in American life, for example, if people are not prompt, they may be regarded as impolite or not truly responsible.

Questions 15 to 17 are based on the passage you have just heard.

- 15. What would it mean if you phone somebody late at night?
- 16. In what aspect of life does time play an important role according to the passage?
- 17. Why can misunderstanding arise between people from different cultures according to this passage?

Passage Two

Mark Twain, the famous American writer, was once traveling in France. He went by train to Dijon. He was very tired and wanted to sleep. Therefore he asked the conductor to wake him up when the train came to Dijon.

But first he explained that he was a very heavy sleeper. "I may possibly protest loudly when you try to wake me up," he said to the conductor. "But don't take notice, just put me off the train any way."

Then Mark Twain went to sleep. Later, when he woke up it was nighttime and the train had reached Paris already. He realized at once that the conductor had forgotten to wake him up at Dijon. He was so angry that he ran up to the conductor and began to shout at him.

"I have never been so angry in all my life," Mark Twain said. The conductor looked at him calmly. "You are not half as angry as the American whom I put off the train at Dijon," he said.

Questions 18 to 20 are based on the passage you have just heard.

- 18. Which city did Mark Twain want to get to?
- 19. Where did the story take place?
- 20. What can you infer from the passage?

II. Vocabulary and Structure (15 points)

- 21. A 本题考查词义辨析。have nothing to gain 是固定表达,本句意为:拒绝我们的劝告对你没有任何好处。
- 22. C 本题考查词义辨析。deprive 意为"剥夺,抢走,使丧失",用于 derive sb. of sth. 这一句型。如: They were deprived of a normal childhood by the war. 由于战争,他们失

去了一个正常的童年。derive 意为"起源;推理出", derive a conclusion from the facts "从事实推出结论"。disable 意为"使残废,丧失能力"。如: An accident disabled him from playing football. —场意外事故使他不能踢球。seize 意为"抓住"。本句意为:这场交通事故使他丧失了视力和双腿。

- 23. A 本题考查词义辨析。absorb 意为"引人注意, 使全神贯注"; attract 意为"吸引, 诱惑", 通常指被一些有趣或者美丽的东西吸引。如: We were attracted by the display of lights. 我们被灯展吸引。draw 意为"取出,引出,引起反应"; a performance that drew jeers from the audience 一场吸引观众的表演; concentrate 意为"集中,全神贯注",但是不用于被动语态。如: We concentrated on the task before us. 我们专注于眼前的任务。本句意为: 她全神贯注地沉浸在工作中,连敲门的声音都没听见。
- 24. A 本题考查动词短语辨析。put up 意为"树立,建立,建造"; put on 意为"穿衣服;上演"; put out 意为"熄灭; 出版"; put up with 意为"忍受,忍耐"。本句意为:我在田野中间立起了一个长杆子,并在上面安装了灯。
- 25. **B** 本题考查动词短语辨析。stand by 意为"对……忠诚,帮助或者支持某人", stand by her friends 支持她的朋友; stand for 意为"代表,象征"; stand up to 意为"勇敢面对,顶得住"; stand up with 指"在婚礼中做男或女傧相,陪伴"。本句意为:好朋友是当你有困难时,帮助你的人。
- 26. **B** 本题考查强调句型。虽然 in the year 1925 表示时间,但不能选 when,只能用 that,构成 It is...that...强调结构。本句意为:在 1925年,约翰·毕拉德找到了一种通过无线设备发送图片的方法。
- 27. A 本题考查虚拟语气的用法。在 It is/was essential that...结构中, that 引导的从句中谓语部分应使用"(should +)动词原形"的形式。本句意为:在本月底之前,所有必要的文件都必须提交到总统办公室。
- 28. C 本题考查倒装结构。否定副词 neither 意为"也不",位于句首时,句子要用倒装语序。本句意为:我不喜欢看足球节目,她也不喜欢。
- 29. C 本题考查英文中倍数的表达方式。倍数的常见结构为: 倍数 + as + adj. + as。在有些情况下,表示比较范围的形容词之后还可以添加名词。如: This is twice as large a room as that one. 这个房间比那一间大一倍。本句意为: 我们今年的汽车产量是去年的两倍。
- 30. **B** 本题考查名词性从句的引导词。本题为主语从句中缺失表示物的主语的情况,要使用 what 来引导。本句意为:在有些国家,所谓平等并不意味着所有人都有平等的权利。
- 31. A 本题考查 as 引导的定语从句。在非限制性定语从句中, as 可指代整个主句, 类似于 which。但是 as 引导的定语从句通常放在句首,已经形成了固定的说法,如: as is well-known to all...众所周知的是……, as has been pointed out...正如曾经指出的那

样……。本句意为: 正如预期的那样, 这个问题的答案非常复杂。

- 32. **B** 本题考查词义辨析。urge 意为"催促,力劝"; appeal 意为"请求,呼吁"; claim 意为"要求,主张"; call 意为"叫喊,通话"。根据题意,本题选 B。本句意为:警 方呼吁市民提供任何可能有助于他们调查的信息。
- 33. **D** 本题考查词义辨析。当涉及"精神,情绪"时,一般用 mind。本句意为:为什么你不在外面玩一晚上?那样可以让你忘记烦恼。
- 34. **D** 本题考查词义辨析。prior 意为"预先的,事先的"; late 意为"晚的,晚期,后期的"; previous 意为"以前的"; former 意为"前任的,从前的"。本句意为:作为一名前总统,他的观点在接受采访时受到尊重。
- 35. C 本题考查连词的用法。when 做并列连词,表示当某事正在进行时,另一事件突然发生,相当于 at that time。while 多用于延续性动作,但此句的主句与从句相关的动作分别为 leave 与 occur,均为短暂性动作,因此不用 while。本句意为:我感到有些失望,正要离开,这时发生了一件引起我注意的事情。
- 36. **B** 本题考查 whatever 和 no matter what 的用法。whatever 意为 "无论什么,不管什么",在此处引导让步状语从句。whatever your opinions are = no matter what your opinions are。本句意为:无论你的意见如何,欢迎你加入我们的讨论。
- 37. C 本题考查同位语从句的引导词。that 引导同位语从句,解释说明 explanation 的内容。本句意为:他没有看到通知的解释是令人不满意的。
- 38. C 本题考查并列结构。分析句子可以看出,空格处要填的词语要与 realizing 形式一致,应使用 wanting, not 置于非谓语动词之前。本句意为:他知道自己的钱不够,又不想从父亲那儿借钱,因此决定卖掉自己的手表。
- 39. **D** 本题考查定语从句中涉及的主谓一致问题。如果在定语从句的先行词前出现了 the only one 一词,则定语从句中的谓语动词用单数形式。试比较: She is one of the girls who like classic music. 她是这些喜欢古典音乐的女孩中的一员。She is the only one of the girls who likes classic music. 她是这些女孩中唯一喜欢古典音乐的。本句意为: 他是家里唯一一个接受过高等教育的孩子。
- 40. A 本题考查动词的时态与语态变化。时间状语 when I come back in ten years' time 暗示 主句动作为"到将来某一时间为止",因此应使用将来完成时。同时, these old houses 是 pull 的动作承受者,因此应用被动语态。本句意为:我想十年后我回来的时候,所有这些老房子都将会被推倒了。
- 41. A 本题考查非谓语动词做宾语补足语的用法。短语 catch sb. doing sth. 表示"发觉某人做某事",具有类似用法的词还有 keep, leave, set 等。如:I am sorry to keep you waiting. 很抱歉让你一直等着。His words set me thinking. 他的话让我陷入思考。本句意为:当我发现他欺骗的时候,我就不再买东西了,开始和另一家商店打交道。
- 42. D 本题考查状语从句的引导词。lest 意为"唯恐,以免",引导目的状语; unless 意

- 为"除非",引导条件状语; though 意为"虽然,尽管",引导让步状语; provided 意为"倘若",引导条件状语。本题意为:大多数家长鼓励孩子参与社会活动,只要这些活动不影响他们的学习。因此, provided (也可使用 providing)为正确选项。
- 43. **B** 本题考查介词 for 在虚拟语气中的用法,以及虚拟语气中从句省略 if 的用法。本句中主句动词使用了 would have lent,含义是"我本可以帮他",因而前面需要一个表示过去的非真实条件从句,可以使用 if it had not been for, for 表示"因为"。B 选项是省略了 if 后的条件句的形式。本句意为:如果不是因为我生病,我就会帮他一把。
- 44. A 本题考查词义辨析。survive 为及物动词,表示"比……活得长,从困境中活过来"; submit 意为"屈服;提交",一般用于 submit to 结构中; suffer 意为"受……之苦",一般用于 suffer from 结构中; succeed 意为"成功"。本题意为:只有一名小男孩在事故中幸存,其他人都遇难了。
- 45. **D** 本题考查形近词辨析, confine 意为"限制, 禁闭"; confess 意为"承认, 坦白", conform 意为"使一致, 符合"; confirm 意为"确认"。本句意为: 我不知道她说的是不是实话, 我会尽量证实一下。
- 46. C 本题考查词义辨析。hurt 意为"伤害"; damage 意为"损坏"; spoil 意为"宠坏"; harm 意为"伤害,损害"。本句意为:受到父母过度保护的孩子可能会被宠坏。
- 47. **D** 本题考查动词短语辨析。turn over 意为"翻转;移交"; turn sth. on 意为"打开(电视、收音机等)"; turn sth. down 意为"调低; 婉言谢绝"; turn sth. off 意为"关掉"。本句意为: 小船翻了, 男孩们都掉进了水里。
- 48. C 本题考查动词短语辨析。come up with sth. 表示"提出或想出(答案、方法、计划等)"; come up to sth. 意为"达到(认可的水平或标准)"; come up for sth. 表示"做某事的申请人或候选人"; come up against sb. / sth. 表示"面对某人/某事物"。本句意为: 老师提出了一个很难的问题,但最后泰德想出了一个很好的答案。
- 49. C 本题考查动词短语辨析。related to 意为"与……有关"; included in 意为"被包括;被包容"; involve 意为"使卷入,使陷入",主语为人时,谓语使用 be involved in 形式。be subject to 意为"经受"。本句意为:不久前,我很熟悉的一个人发生了意外。
- 50. **A** 本题考查 "such + n." 后使用定语从句的用法。当定语从句的先行词前有 such 修 饰时,关系代词用 as,在从句中做主语或宾语。本句意为:我会给你这些信息,帮助 你学习。

III. Reading Comprehension (30 points)

51. **B** 推理判断题。从第一段第二句 "They give their owners automatic credit in stores, restaurants, and hotels, at home, across the country, and even abroad, and they make many banking services available as well."可知,信用卡持有者能够在很多地方进行自由消费,

而且还可以在很多地方存取款。由此可推知,信用卡能够带给人们很多方便。

- 52. C 推理判断题。从第一段最后一句 "For many of us the 'cashless society' is not on the horizon, it's already here."可知,对很多人来说,"无现金社会"已经成为现实。由此可推知,如今很多人不用现金付款。
- 53. **B** 词语理解题。从第二段第二、三句"Electronic cash registers can do much more than simply ring up sales. They can keep a wide range of records..."可知,电子收款机不止简单地用来记录销售额,ring up sales 指"记录销售额"。
- 54. **B** 主旨大意题。通读全文可知,电子收款机与信用卡的使用都是计算机在商业上应用的实例,本文旨在指出计算机的应用给使用者带来的诸多方便。
- 55. A 主旨大意题。本文主要讲述了面试者如何发现不诚实的应聘者。第三段开头的 but 一词表明前面两段的作用,引出主题,因而不能错把这两段的内容当作本文的中心思想。故 A 项为正确答案。
- 56. C 事实细节题。根据第三段第二句 "The most difficult liars to find are those who tell half-truths rather than complete lies."可知,最难辨认的是那些说话半真半假者。故选 C。
- 57. A 推理判断题。根据第三段最后两句 "Research shows that up to 75 percent of resumes are inaccurate on purpose. The most common practice is omission."可推知,大约 75%的应聘者会在简历上有意隐瞒一些信息。选项 A 中的 leaving out 和原文中 omission 同义。故选 A。
- 58. **B** 推理判断题。第一段提到大部分人事经理都同意面试是最不客观的招聘方法,接着又说面试受太多人为因素的影响,故可推断出作者对面试的看法,即作者觉得面试太主观了。选项 A 意为"最客观的",选项 C 意为"怀疑的",选项 D 意为"轻信的",均不符合题意。故 B "太主观的"为正确答案。
- 59. C 事实细节题。根据第二段第五、六、七句可知,在一天的某些时间伦敦牛津街会有很多人步行,而在东京银座经常会有很多人步行,有时连走路都很困难。这正是Tokyo与 London 的区别之处。故选 C。
- 60. A 事实细节题。根据第二段倒数第二、三句 "The worst time to be in the street is at 11:30 at night. That is when the nightclubs are closing and everybody wants to go home." 可知,晚上十一点半是在街上最糟糕的时间,因为那时夜总会要关门,所有人都要回家。故选 A。
- 61. **D** 事实细节题。根据第三段倒数第三句"They always leave and arrive on time."可知,日本的火车总是准时出发和到达。故选 D。
- 62. A 推理判断题。根据最后一段的几个词语 five minutes, three fire-engines, every day 可以看出,火灾是频繁发生的。故选 A。
- 63 ~ 66 B A D C 67 ~ 70 B A C D

IV. Translation (20 points)

- 71. 越来越多的信用卡可以自动读取,使得持卡人可以在不同的地方存取款,不管当地支行是否营业。
- 72. 这些信息通过显示销售商品的种类和销售速度,使商家能够跟踪和记录它们的商品清单。
- 73. 大多数人事经理都认为,面试是最不客观的招聘方式之一。
- 74. 只有通过问合适的问题, 你才能确认求职者是否是合适的人选; 也只有通过问合适的问题, 你才能给那些不诚实的应聘者施加压力。
- 75. 在伦敦的火车上,每个人都在看报;在东京的火车上,无论旅途长短,每位在座的乘客似乎都睡着了。
- 76. Sudie told me in a whisper that the young man with long red hair, who looked the part of an artist, was her cousin.
- 77. Aside from being fun and good exercise, swimming is a very useful skill.
- 78. John and his family got by upon a remarkably small income.
- 79. The steps to the top of the tower have been worn away by the feet of thousands of visitors.
- 80. It is strange that such an ignorant man should be regarded as a scholar.

V. Writing (15 points)

What Can Be Done to Tackle the Haze Problem?

China has been increasingly hit with severe hazy weather since the beginning of this century. In many big cities, where the pollutants in the air can't be dispersed without strong wind, the haze problem is worse. As a result, the incidence of respiratory disease among city dwellers has been on the rise.

The cause of the haze is no mystery. With rapid industrialization, many steel and power plants burn a lot of coal. Without resorting to the clean technology, these factories emit smoke and fume directly into the atmosphere. The past decade has also witnessed a sharp increase in the number of private cars. This would not have posed an environmental problem to the cities if the quality of gas is good and the car engines meet the emission standard. With fast-paced urbanization, the sand and dirt released from numerous construction sites also contribute to the haze problem.

In order to tackle this problem, we should reduce the use of private cars and choose public transport. The government should strictly enforce the environmental laws and severely punish polluters.

第二部分

语法、词汇知识及练习

第一章

语法结构



第一节

时态

| | 一般 | 进行 | 完成 | 完成进行 |
|------|----------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 现在 | work/works | am/is/are working | has/have worked | has/have been working |
| 过去 | worked | was/were working | had worked | had been working |
| 将来 | will/shall work | will/shall be working | will/shall have worked | will/shall have been working |
| 过去将来 | would/should work | would/should be working | would/should have worked | would/should have been working |

- **▶ 1**. —般现在时通常与 every day/week, sometimes, usually, often, twice a week 等时间状语连用。
- 1.1 用来表示现在存在的特征和状态、习惯性动作、经常性动作等,或表示普遍真理或谚语。
 - 如: Light travels more quickly than sound. 光速比声速快。
 - 1.2 一般现在时可以代替一般将来时用于条件、时间、让步状语从句中。
 - 如: I'll ring you as soon as he comes back. 他一回来我就给你打电话。

You will succeed if you try your best. 如果你尽力,就会成功。

It will be 33 years before we have a chance of seeing the star again.

再过33年,我们才有机会再次看到这颗星星。

I will accept any job as long as I don't have to get up early.

只要不必早起, 我就接受这份工作。

They'll stand by you even if you don't succeed. 即使你失败了,他们也会支持你。

1.3 具有"出发,到达"等含义的动词 come, go, arrive, get, leave, move, sail, start 等可以用一般现在时表示计划将要发生动作。

如: The meeting starts at five o'clock. 会议五点钟开始。

- ≥ 2 . 一般过去时通常与 last year, just now, in those days 等时间状语连用,用来表示过去某时存在的状态或过去发生的动作,包括经常性或偶尔发生的动作。
 - 如: When I was young, I was a handsome boy. 我年轻的时候是个很英俊的男生。 We used to go for a walk after supper. 我们过去常常晚饭后去散步。
 - 2.1 used to do (过去常常做) 与 be used to doing (习惯于) 的用法及区别:
 - 如: He used to get up early. 过去他经常早起。(意味着如今他不再早起了。)
 Now he is used to getting up early. 现在他已经习惯早起了。
 - 2.2 一些暂时性或一次性发生的动作通常用一般过去时。

如: He died and left his children a large sum of money. 他死后给他的孩子们留下一大笔钱。 特殊句型: It has been over a year since we last met.

自从我们上次见面已经一年多了。

You've changed much since you came here. 自从你来这里你已经改变了很多。

- ▶ 3. 一般将来时通常与 tomorrow, in 2 days, next week 等时间状语连用。
- 3.1 表示计划要做的事情或估计要发生的事情,最近打算做的事情,用 be going to do;表示正要做的事情用 be about to do,意为"即将……之时",相当于 on the point of...。
 - 如: The meeting is about to begin. 会议即将开始。

 They are on the point of repairing the machine. 他们正准备修理机器。
 - 3.2 表示计划、安排要做的事情,含有约定、必然、应该等不同意味用 be to do sth.。
 - 如: They are to be married in May. 他们五月份结婚。
 Am I to take over her work? 我接替她的工作吗?
 The football game is to be televised live tonight. 今天晚上直播足球比赛。
 - **▶ 4**. 过去将来时表示从过去某时看将要发生的动作或情况,常用于宾语从句。
 - 如: I told my father that I would conduct my own defense in court. 我告诉爸爸, 我将在法庭上做自我辩护。

Whenever something went wrong with my typewriter, I would turn to him for help. Λ *E** to him for

- \gg **5**. 现在进行时常与 now, at present, at this moment 等时间状语连用。表示此时此刻或现阶段一段时间内正在进行的动作,或重复的动作,或经常出现的动作。
 - 如: Scientists are testing a new device for guiding a missile to its target. 科学家们正在测试一个用来指引导弹击中目标的新装置。

- 5.1 现在进行时与频率副词连用可以表示某种感情色彩。
- 如: He is always boasting. 他总是吹牛。

He is always finding fault with his employees. 他总是找雇员们的毛病。

He is constantly thinking of how he could do more for others.

他常常想能为别人多做些事情。

- 5.2 具有"出发,到达"等含义的动词 come, go, arrive, get, leave, move, sail, start 等可以用现在进行时表示计划将要发生动作。
 - 如: I'm leaving for Beijing. 我正要离开去北京 (离开地点不清楚)。
 - \geq 6. 过去进行时表示过去某一时刻所发生的动作。
 - 如: When he called me, I was reading. 他给我打电话的时候我正在阅读。
 My heart was jumping with fear. 我被吓得心直跳。
 It was snowing all night. 下了一夜雪。

注意 过去进行时侧重动作持续时间的长度,可表示持续动作,而一般过去时着重说明 动作的事实。

- **▶ 7. 将来进行时**表示将来某时正在发生的或持续的动作。
- 如: He will be working on his doctoral dissertation during next May. 明年五月份,他将正忙着撰写他的博士学位论文。 I'll be having an English class this time tomorrow. 明天这个时候我们正上英语课。
- **▶8**. **一般过去将来时**表示从过去的某一时间来看将要发生的动作或呈现的状态。
- 一般过去将来时的出发点是过去,即从过去某一时刻看以后要发生的动作或状态。
- 如: I didn't know if he was going to come. 他是否要来我不知道。
 I didn't know if he would come. 他是否要来我不知道。
 She was sixty-six. In three years, she would be sixty-nine. 她66 岁了, 三年后是69 岁。

≥9. 完成时

- 9.1 现在完成时通常与 already, yet, these days, recently, lately, so far, by now, the past/the last 2 years, for, since 等时间状语连用。表示过去发生的动作对现在产生的影响,过去发生延续到现在的状态,或某一时期发生情况的总和。
 - 如: He has been back for 3 days. 他回来3天了。

We haven't seen each other again since we graduated in 1987.

自从1987年毕业,我们再也没见过面。

How many products have you turned out? 你们制造了多少产品?

特殊句型: It has been three years since they entered the college.

他们进入大学已经3年了。

This is the first/second time that I have visited the university.

这是我第一次/第二次参观这所大学。

It isn't the first time that I have found myself in an embarrassing situation.

这已不是我第一次发现自己处于一个尴尬的境地。

9.2 现在完成进行时表示从过去某一刻开始的动作一直延续到说话时还在进行或可能继续下去,常与表示一段时间的状语连用。

如: He's been working for Alibaba for 15 years.

他已在阿里巴巴工作15年了。

I've been waiting for an hour but she still hasn't come.

我已经等一个小时了, 但她还是没来。

The satellite has been sending back signals as well as photographs ever since it landed on the Mars. 自从这颗卫星登上火星,就不断发回信号和照片。

9.3 过去完成时通常与(by+过去时间短语) never, by 2000, by the end of last term, "by the time/when+过去发生情况从句"等时间状语连用,表示在过去某个时刻或时刻之前已经完成的动作或存在的状态,注意过去完成时不和 ago 连用,但可与 before 连用。

如: He had finished the work by ten o'clock this morning.

到今天上午十点钟,他已完成了这项工作。

She had visited America twenty times in the previous thirty years.

在过去的30年里,她去过美国20多趟。

有些动词如 plan, think, intend, hope, want, mean 等常用过去完成时表示"打算做而没有做的事情"。

如: We had intended to finish writing this grammar book the day before yesterday.

我们本打算前天写完这本语法书。

We had planned to attend the meeting but we changed our mind.

我们本来计划参加会议、但是又改主意了。

- 9.4 过去完成进行时表示动作在过去某一时间开始一直持续到过去某一时间有可能继续下去。
 - 如: When his father returned home, the little boy had been flying a kite for two hours. 当他父亲回家时,这个小男孩已经放了 2 个小时的风筝了(这个小男孩一直在放风筝)。 He told me that the lawyers had been arguing the case since eight o'clock in the morning. 他告诉我,律师们从上午八点开始就一直在争论这个案件。
 - 9.5 将来完成时通常与(by + 将来时间) by the end of, by 2050 等时间状语连用, 表

示在将来某一时刻前或者某个动作发生前另一个动作将要结束或完成;有时候也表示一种 推测。

如: By the time you arrive in London, we will have stayed in Europe for 2 weeks.

当你到达伦敦的时候, 我们将已在欧洲待两个星期了。

They will have stayed here for five months next week.

到下周,他们就将在这里待5个月了。

By the end of this term we shall have finished studying College English Book II. 到这学期末,我们将完成《大学英语第二册》的学习。

- 9.6 将来完成进行时表示动作从某一时间开始一直持续到将来某一时间。
- 如: By next month he will have been working in our factory for 30 years. 到下个月,他将已经在我们工厂工作30年了。

If we don't hurry up, the store will have been closing before we get there. 咱们若不快一点儿,等我们到了那儿,店门就会关了。

- 9.7 过去将来完成时表示从过去某个时间看将来某时之前已经完成的动作。
- 如: He said that they would have arrived by seven o'clock.

他说他们在七点钟前就会到达。

She told me that she would have finished typing the letter before I came back. 她告诉我,在我回来之前她就会把信件打好的。

I thought Judy would have graduated from the college by then.

我想届时朱迪就已经大学毕业了。

- 9.8 过去将来完成进行时表示动作从过去某一时间开始一直延续到过去将来某一时间。动作是否继续下去,由上下文决定。这个时态用得相对比较少,通常主要用于转述方面,即用于间接引语中。
 - 如: I heard by July you'd have been teaching here for ten years.

我听说到七月份, 你在这里就教 10 年书了。

He said that by the end of the spring term he would have been studying English for three vears. 他说到了春季学期末,他就学了三年英语了。

注意 时态常见错误就是动词即谓语时态形式与所给或所暗示的时间状语不一致。解决 对策就是掌握与某个时态连用的时间状语。

如:给下面这个句子改错。

This is the longest flight I have ever taken. By the time we get to Los Angeles, we had flown for 13 hours.

方法一: 结合本句所给的时间状语,可以将主句中的 had flown 应该改为 will have flown.

方法二: 主句的时态不变,将时间状语从句改为 By the time we got to Los Angeles。

| G | Grammar Test: | | | | | |
|----|--|-----------------------------|---|---------|--|--|
| 1. | Professor Smith told | l his students that he | letters all day tomorrow. | | | |
| | A. will write | | B. is writing | | | |
| | C. would be writin | g | D. will be writing | | | |
| 2. | Anne says that she | will come to see you and y | our husband the moment she her | r work. | | |
| | A. will finish | B. finished | C. finishes D. has finished | | | |
| 3. | The monitor told m | e that I could not leave th | e room until I all the windows. | | | |
| | A. closed | B. had closed | C. have closed D. would have | closed | | |
| 4. | Mr. Smith | _ short stories, but he | a TV play these days. | | | |
| | A. is writing; is w | riting | B. is writing; writes | | | |
| | C. writes; is writing | ng | D. writes; writes | | | |
| 5. | It is reported that t | he company fulfilled their | work earlier than they | | | |
| | A. have expected | B. expected | C. were expecting D. had expected | d | | |
| 6. | I don't know how | long our general manager | away from home. He | on | | |
| | business trip since | last Thursday. | | | | |
| | A. will to be; was | being | B. will have been; has been | | | |
| | C. would be; had | been | D. will be; has been | | | |
| 7. | This time yesterday | Jack his bike. | He TV. | | | |
| | A. repaired; didn't | t watch | B. was repairing; watched | | | |
| | C. repaired; watch | ned | D. was repairing; wasn't watching | | | |
| 8. | I often wonder whe | ther our life con | siderably by next year. | | | |
| | A. will be changin | g | B. will be changed | | | |
| | C. will have to cha | nge | D. will have changed | | | |
| 9. | He in a | small workshop, but now | he is the head of big business company. | | | |
| | A. used to working | 5 | B. was used to work | | | |
| | C. used to work | | D. was used to working | | | |
| 10 | . I my b | reakfast when Mum told m | e that I was wanted on the telephone. | | | |
| | A. had | | B. had been having | | | |
| | C. was having | | D. have been having | | | |
| 11 | My niece has been to Sumatra and Iran as well as all of Europe. By the time she is twenty, | | | | | |
| | she aln | nost everywhere. | | | | |
| | A. will be | B. would have been | C. will have been D. would be | | | |
| 12 | . Is this the first tin | ne that you Sha | nghai? | | | |
| | A. have visited | B. would visit | C. visited D. have been vi | isiting | | |
| 13 | . While people ma | y prefer to mobile phone | for up-to-the-minute news, it is unlike | ly that | | |
| | television | the newspaper complet | ely. | | | |

| | A. replaces | B. have replaced | C. is replaced | D. will replace | | |
|---|--|--|---|--|--|--|
| 14. | 4. The conference a full week by the time it ends. | | | | | |
| | A. has lasted | B. will have lasted | C. had lasted | D. is lasted | | |
| 15. | 6. It's reported that by the end of this month the output of cement in the factory | | | | | |
| | by 10%. | | | | | |
| | A will have risen | B. has risen | C. will be rising | D. has been rising | | |
| 16. | The computer, working | ng very fast,d | ata at the speed of light | ht. | | |
| | A. has lasted | B. handled | C. handling | D. handles | | |
| 17. | The company | a rise in salary for age | es, but nothing has ha | ppened yet. | | |
| | A. is promised | | B. is promising | | | |
| | C. has been promisin | g | D. promised | | | |
| 18. | He told the policeman | that Kate nea | ar the lake at this time | yesterday evening. | | |
| | A. was playing | B. is playing | C. has played | D. plays | | |
| 19. | As long as you | the money back pro | mptly, I'll lend it to yo | ou with pleasure. | | |
| | A. returned | B. return | C. will return | D. have returned | | |
| 20. | The foreigners say on | WeChat that it will be 2 | years before we | a chance of visiting | | |
| | our country. | | | | | |
| | A. had | B. have | C. will have | D. will be having | | |
| 21. | Unless economic cond | litions improve next year | year, there widespread unrest (动荡的 | | | |
| | 局面) in that country. | | | | | |
| | 局面) in that country | v. | | | | |
| | 局面) in that country A. would be | | C. should be | D. will be | | |
| 22. | A. would be | | | | | |
| 22. | A. would be | B. is | | of this year. | | |
| 22. | A. would be She told me she | B. is in that University f | for 20 years by the end | of this year. | | |
| | A. would be She told me she A. will have taught C. have been teachin | B. is in that University f | or 20 years by the end B. will have been te D. would have been | of this year. aching teaching | | |
| | A. would be She told me she A. will have taught C. have been teachin | B. is in that University f g side by side for n | or 20 years by the end B. will have been te D. would have been | of this year. aching teaching | | |
| | A. would be She told me she A. will have taught C. have been teachin Even though they | B. is in that University f g side by side for n h other. | or 20 years by the end B. will have been te D. would have been | of this year. aching teaching | | |
| | A. would be She told me she A. will have taught C. have been teachin Even though they very familiar with each | B. is in that University f g side by side for n h other. | or 20 years by the end B. will have been te D. would have been early ten years, the tw | of this year. aching teaching vo neighbors are still not | | |
| 23. | A. would be She told me she A. will have taught C. have been teachin Even though they very familiar with eac A. having been lived C. had been living | B. is in that University f g side by side for n h other. | or 20 years by the end B. will have been te D. would have been early ten years, the tv B. have been living D. having been living | of this year. aching teaching vo neighbors are still not | | |
| 23. | A. would be She told me she A. will have taught C. have been teachin Even though they very familiar with eac A. having been lived C. had been living | B. is in that University f g side by side for n h other. | or 20 years by the end B. will have been te D. would have been early ten years, the tv B. have been living D. having been living | of this year. aching teaching vo neighbors are still not | | |
| 23. | A. would be She told me she A. will have taught C. have been teachin Even though they very familiar with eac A. having been lived C. had been living Some doctors involve sections of the brain. | B. is in that University f g side by side for n h other. | or 20 years by the end B. will have been te D. would have been early ten years, the tv B. have been living D. having been living | of this year. aching teaching teaching teaching to neighbors are still not g has its roots in certain | | |
| 23.24. | A. would be She told me she A. will have taught C. have been teachin Even though they very familiar with eac A. having been lived C. had been living Some doctors involve sections of the brain. A. are believing | B. is in that University f g side by side for n h other. ed in brain research | B. will have been to D. would have been early ten years, the tw B. have been living D. having been living that violence C. believing | of this year. aching teaching teaching teaching to neighbors are still not g has its roots in certain | | |
| 23.24. | A. would be She told me she A. will have taught C. have been teachin Even though they very familiar with eac A. having been lived C. had been living Some doctors involve sections of the brain. A. are believing Hundreds of jobs | B. is in that University f g side by side for n h other. d in brain research B. believe | B. will have been to D. would have been early ten years, the tw B. have been living D. having been living that violence C. believing | of this year. aching teaching teaching teaching to neighbors are still not g has its roots in certain | | |
| 23.24.25. | A. would be She told me she A. will have taught C. have been teachin Even though they very familiar with eac A. having been lived C. had been living Some doctors involve sections of the brain. A. are believing Hundreds of jobs A. will be lost | B. is in that University f g side by side for n h other. d in brain research B. believe if the factory close | B. will have been to D. would have been early ten years, the tw B. have been living D. having been living that violence C. believing es. C. are lost | of this year. aching teaching we neighbors are still not g has its roots in certain D. believes D. will lose | | |
| 23.24.25. | A. would be She told me she A. will have taught C. have been teachin Even though they very familiar with eac A. having been lived C. had been living Some doctors involve sections of the brain. A. are believing Hundreds of jobs A. will be lost | B. is in that University f g side by side for n h other. d in brain research B. believe if the factory close B. lose | B. will have been to D. would have been early ten years, the two B. have been living D. having been living that violence C. believing es. C. are lost inner although she | of this year. aching teaching we neighbors are still not g has its roots in certain D. believes D. will lose | | |

| | makes them worrying | • | | | |
|-----|---|-----------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| | A. borrowing | B. borrowed | C. been borrowed | D. being borrowed | |
| 28. | There is a police car | in front of the gate of our | r campus. What do yo | u suppose? | |
| | A. is happened | B. did happen | C. would happen | D. has happened | |
| 29. | The Queen | Japan in a week's time. | | | |
| | A. will be visit | B. visit | C. is to visit | D. were to be visit | |
| 30. | They to join | in us in the game, but th | ey couldn't get here in | time. | |
| | A. have intend | B. had intended | C. intended | D. were intended | |
| 31. | Obviously, my 80-year | ar-old grandmother | rural life. | | |
| | A. shall finish | B. used to | C. is used to | D. uses to | |
| 32. | — Will she finish the | e work soon? | | | |
| | —Yes, she | _ it by next Friday. | | | |
| | A. shall finish | B. finish | C. have finished | D. will have finished | |
| 33. | It almost every day so far this month. | | | | |
| | A. is raining | B. rained | C. rains | D. has been raining | |
| 34. | It seems my wife | me severely for do | oing a wrong thing. W | hat shall I do? | |
| | A. has forever critici | zed | B. forever is criticizi | ng | |
| | A. has forever criticized B. forever is criticizing C. was forever criticizing D. is forever criticizing | | | | |
| 35. | When I was at colleg | e I three forei | gn languages, but I _ | all except for a | |
| | few words of each. | | | | |
| | A. spoke; had forgo | tten | B. spoke; have forgo | otten | |
| | C. had spoken; had | forgotten | D. had spoken; have | e forgotten | |
| 36. | The style in woman's clothes this year calls for shorter skirts. Mother busy taking | | | | |
| | up hers. | | | | |
| | A. was | B. has been | C. had been | D. has being | |
| 37. | — Was the driving pleasant when you spent your holidays in Mexico last summer? | | | | |
| | — No, it | for four days when we are | rived, so the roads we | re very muddy. | |
| | A. was raining | B. would be raining | C. had been raining | D. have rained | |
| 38. | No wonder those plan | ts are dying. They | any water for sev | eral months. | |
| | A. haven't had | B. haven't | C. hadn't had | D. hadn't | |
| 39. | For one week there $_$ | no break in the | rain. How strange! | | |
| | A. is | B. will be | C. has been | D. have been | |
| 40. | While formerly a me | mber of the sports club, | Mr. Teeters | _ tennis there regularly. | |
| | Now he takes up mou | ıntain climbing. | | | |
| | A. is used to playing | g | B. was used to play | | |
| | C. used to play | | D. used to playing | | |



1—5 C C B C D

6—10 D D D C C

11—15 CADBA

16—20 D C A B B

21—25 D D B B A

26—30 CADCB

31—35 C D D D B

36—40 B C A C C

If at first you don't succeed, try, try again.

水滴石穿,绳锯木断。

You reap what you sow.

一分耕耘,一分收获。(种瓜得瓜,种豆得豆。)

Practice makes perfect.

熟能生巧。

第二节

被动语态

| 完成 | 一般 | 进行 | 完成 |
|--------|----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 进行 | am/is/are done | am/is/are being done | has/have been done |
| 过去 | was/were done | was/were being done | had been done |
| 将来 | shall/will be done | * * * * | shall/will have been done |
| 过去将来 | should/would be done | * * * * | should/would have been done |

▶ 1. **当动作的执行者不必、不易说出或无从说出的时候**(不带 by)或者出于谦虚、礼貌、简练或微妙的感情等方面的考虑时常常使用被动语态。

如: The room has been cleaned. 房间被打扫干净了。

You have been told so many times not to touch these things.

告诉过你多少次了,不要碰这些东西。

- ▶ 2. 某些及物动词表示某种状态或情况,有"拥有,容纳,缺少,明白"等意思,如: happen, take place, mean, rise, occur, break out, lack, fit, equal, resemble, befall, consist of, look like, hold, cost, contain, last, fail, benefit 等不能使用被动语态。
 - 如: The story took place in 1989. 这个故事发生在1989年。

Jane resembles her mother. 简看起来像她的母亲。

The auditorium holds 5,000 people. 这个大厅能容纳 5000 人。

- **≫** 3. 某些动词以主动形式表示被动含义。具体情况如下:
- 3.1 某些感官动词和系动词 feel, look, smell, taste, sound, prove 等后面接形容词,

如: The flowers smell sweet. 这些花闻起来很香甜。
Cotton feels very soft. 棉花摸起来很柔软。
The surface feels rough. 表面摸上去很粗糙。
The music sounds very familiar to me. 这音乐我听起来很耳熟。

- 3.2 be + 表示被动意义的形容词 (以-able, -ible 结尾) acceptable, reliable, visible, eatable, drinkable 等。
 - **如:** This bottle of milk has gone bad, so it is not drinkable. 这瓶牛奶坏了,所以不能喝。 Your plan is not practicable, so it is not acceptable. 你的计划是不可行的,所以不能接受。

I'm sorry, but those overcoats are not available in your color and size. 对不起,但是那些大衣没有适合你的颜色和尺寸。

- 3.3 某些及物动词如: wash / clean, write, sell, read, open, cut, lock, play, shut, peel, record 等。通常是从及物动词转化而来的不及物动词,它们通常以主动形式表示被动含义。
 - 如: The kind of cloth washes well. 这种布料很好洗。
 The kind of glasses cleans easily. 这种眼镜很容易清洗。
 Ripe oranges peel easily. 熟了的橙子容易剥皮。
 The book sells well. 这本书卖得很好。
 The recorder won't play. 这台录音机不转了。
 The door won't shut. 门没有关上。
 - 3.4 want, deserve, need, require 后面接 doing。
 - 如: The point deserves mentioning. 这一点值得提及。
 The coat requires mending. 衣服需要修补。
 The house wants whitewashing. 房子需要粉刷。
 The house needs painting, but they plan to wait until next spring to do it.

 (= The house needs to be painted, but they plan to wait until next spring to do it.)
 - 3.5 某些表语形容词后面用动词不定式主动式表示被动意义。

房子需要刷油漆,但是他们计划等到明年春天再刷。

如: She is easy to approach. 她很容易接近。

He is hard to please. 他是难以取悦的。

The article is difficult to read. 这篇文章是难以阅读的。

≥ 4 . 被动语态与系表结构的比较:

在英语中"be+过去分词"结构,可能是被动语态,也可能是系表结构。这两种形式 虽相似却又不同。其区别如下:

- 4.1 从时态上来区分。被动语态强调的是动作,其主语是动作的对象,可以有各种时态。而系表结构是说明主语的状态和特征。做表语的过去分词相当于形容词,不强调动作,多用于一般现在时和一般过去时,表示目前和过去的性状,没有进行时。因此,凡是用进行时的肯定是被动语态。
 - 如: This story was written by Lu Xun in 1922. 这个故事是鲁迅在 1922 年写的。(表示动作,是被动语态)
 The problem is being studied. 问题正在(被)研究。(表示进行的动作,是被动语态)
 This story is well written. 这个故事写得很好。(表示性状,是系表结构)
- 4.2 从所带状语来区分。如果句子中带有时间状语、方式状语或 by 词组做状语,则 多数是被动语态。
 - 如: The shop is often closed at 6:30 in the afternoon.
 那家商店通常在下午 6:30 关门。(带时间状语,是被动语态)
 The shop is closed. 那家商店关门了。(表示性状,是系表结构)
 She was surprised by this strange noise. 她对这奇怪的声音感到惊讶。(被动语态)
 She was not at all surprised at the news. 她对这消息一点也不感到吃惊。(系表结构)
- 4.3 从动词的性质来区分。在英语中并非所有动词的过去分词都能用于系表结构做表语。常见的能做表语的动词一般大致有三类:
- ① 具有形容词特征的过去分词。如:能表示事物状态的 broken, closed, shut, lost 等;能表示人的感觉和情绪的 excited, interested, worried 等。
 - 如: The window was broken. 窗户被打破了。

 He is interested in this book. 他对这本书感兴趣。
- ②表示智力活动结果或表示行为结果的少数动词。如: known, unknown, learned, mistaken, killed, saved, deserted, injured, saved, wounded 等。
 - 如: The young scientist is known to us all. 这位年轻科学家是我们大家都知道的。
 The soldier was badly wounded. 那个士兵伤得很重。
- ③ 少数不及物动词的过去分词。不及物动词是没有被动语态的,若其过去分词用于系动词之后则一定是表语。能这样用的不及物动词多数是表示"运动"或"转变"的词,除了 rise, go 之外,还有 come, arrive, pass, fall, set, return, change, grow, become, turn, melt 等。
 - 如: The moon is risen. 月亮升起来了。

 Gone are the days when we were bullied! 我们被欺负的日子一去不返。
 - 4.4 被动结构中的过去分词不可以用 very 等副词修饰, 但系表结构可以。
 - 如: Mother is very worried about his health. 妈妈很担忧他的健康。
 - 4.5 被动结构中的过去分词没有固定介词搭配,系表结构中的过去分词常常有固定

介词搭配。

Grammar Test:

A. must be taken

- 如: The girl was completely absorbed in the experiment. 那女孩正全神贯注地做实验。
 He was evidently not accustomed to this kind of food. 很显然,他不习惯吃这种食物。
- \gg **5**. 特殊动词用法: see, watch, observe, notice, hear, feel, let, have, make 等后面的动词不定式做宾语补足语的时候省略 to, 构成 v. +sb. +do sth., 这类结构变被动的时候要还原 to。
 - 如: Did you notice him leave the house?

The teacher makes his students read the text. \rightarrow His students are made to read the text. 含有情态动词的被动结构: (can, must, may, etc.) + be + done

Bad things sometimes can be turned into good ones. 坏事有时可以变成好事。

I was made to wait two hours in the chilly wind.

我被迫在寒风中等了两个小时。

| 1. | I will have to push the | car to the side of the | road because we | if we leave it here. |
|----|-------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|
| | A. would be fined | | B. will be fined | |
| | C. will being fined | | D. will have been fined | ł |
| 2. | If one by pr | ride, he will reject use | ful advice and friendly as | ssistance. |
| | A. overcomes | B. overcome | C. has been overcome | D. is overcome |
| 3. | The United Kingdom _ | Great Britain | and Northern Ireland. | |
| | A. consisted of | B. is consisted of | C. consists of | D. consist |
| 4. | These ripe oranges | nice. | | |
| | A. are tasted | B. taste | C. is tasted | D. tastes |
| 5. | In some parts of the w | orld, tea wi | th milk and sugar. | |
| | A. is serving | B. served | C. serves | D. is served |
| 6. | The house suddenly co | llapsed while it | down. | |
| | A. was pulled | | B. pulled | |
| | C. was being pulled | | D. had been pulled | |
| 7. | — How do you like yo | our new position? | | |
| | — I | | | |
| | A. don't satisfy | B. am not satisfied | C. can't satisfy | D. haven't satisfied |
| 8. | She in the f | eet on her way home f | rom work. | |
| | A. was hurting | B. is hurt | C. hurts | D. got hurt |

9. It is a rule in our school that no books _____ out unless you have a library card.

10. Though Newton was a great scientist, many of his ideas _____ today and been modified by

C. might take

B. can be taken

D. should be taken

| | the work of today's so | cientists. | | | | |
|-----|------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------|--|--|
| | A. are to challenge | | B. are challenging | | | |
| | C. may be challenged | | D. have been challer | nged | | |
| 11. | Once environmental of | damage, it t | takes many years for the | e system to recover. | | |
| | A. has done | B. is to do | C. is done | D. is to be doing | | |
| 12. | Neither of the young | men who had applied | for the position in the u | iniversity | | |
| | A. was accepted | B. are accepted | C. accepts | D. have been accepted | | |
| 13. | In most manufacturin | g companies, workers | on a weekly basis. | | | |
| | A. are paid for | B. get pay | C. are paid | D. get paid for | | |
| 14. | Whatever the causes | English at the beginn | ning of the 21st century | is more widely spoken and | | |
| | written than any othe | r language | | | | |
| | A. ever was | B. had ever been | C. would ever be | D. has ever been | | |
| 15. | As we know, all the | regulations in school _ | | | | |
| | A. must keep up wit | h B. must be kept | C. must keep | D. must be kept up | | |
| 16. | The English teacher | tells him that his comp | osition any r | more. | | |
| | A. need not to be co | rrected | B. doesn't need to be | e corrected | | |
| | C. doesn't need be c | orrected | D. need not correct | | | |
| 17. | The workers are mad- | e all day by | their boss. | heir boss. | | |
| | A. work | B. to work | C. worked | D. working | | |
| 18. | Hurry up, or the tick | cets out by t | the time we get there. | | | |
| | A. will have sold | B. will sell | C. have sold | D. will have been sold | | |
| 19. | A candidate for the d | lemocratic presidential | nomination a | at this moment. | | |
| | A. is interviewing | | B. being interviewed | | | |
| | C. is being interview | ed | D. interviewing | | | |
| 20. | He does not possess | a bicycle, this one he | uses Peter. | | | |
| | A. is belonged to | B. belonged to | C. belongs to | D. is belonging to | | |
| ОП | Keys | | | | | |
| | 1—5 В D С В D | 6—10 CBDBD | 11—15 CACD | В 16—20 ВВ СС | | |
| 0 | | D 2: | 1 | ! | | |
| | | * | ow what you can do today. ,今日毕。 | | | |
| 1 | | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | will, there is a way. | | | |
| i | | | 事竟成。 | | | |
| - | | Failure is the m | nother of success. | | | |
| - | 失败乃成功之母。 | | | | | |

第三节

复合从句

英语中的主从复合句式是相对于简单句而言的,简单句只有一套主谓(宾)结构,而 主从复合句则由主句和从句构成,主句有一套主谓结构,从句也有一套主谓结构;主句为 句子的主体,从句不能独立,要对主句的某个成分进行限定、修饰、补充或说明。从句必 须由引导词(连词)引出,否则复合句不成立。因为大部分连词既起连接主句和从句的作 用,表明主从句之间的关系,还在从句中充当一定的成分,有一定的意义,故复合句中的 连词常成为考查的焦点。

根据从句在句子中所起的作用,英语中的从句可以分为三大类:名词性从句、形容词性从句(定语从句)和副词性从句(状语从句)。

○ 一、名词性从句

名词性从句是在句子中起名词作用的句子。名词性从句的功能相当于名词词组,它在复合句中能担任主语、宾语、表语、同位语、介词宾语等,因此根据它在句中不同的语法功能,名词性从句又可分别称为主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句。

引导名词性从句的关联词可分为三类:

| 从属连词 | that, whether, if |
|------|--|
| 连接代词 | which, who, whom, whose, what, whatever, whoever 等 |
| 连接副词 | when, where, how, why |

能够充当名词性从句的句子有三类:陈述句、一般疑问句和特殊疑问句。当用陈述句时,需要在陈述句句首加 that 来引导;用一般疑问句时,需要把疑问倒装语序变为陈述语序,再加 whether 或 if (注意: if 只用于宾语从句)引导,以保留原句意义;用特殊疑问句时,则把特殊疑问句语序变为陈述语序。

如: The boy should be sent to school. 应当把这个男孩送去上学。

My idea is that the boy should be sent to school. 我认为应当把这个男孩送去上学。 Does he need my help? 他需要我的帮助吗?

I don't know whether/if he needs my help. 我不知道他是否需要我的帮助。

Where could we get the loan? 我们从哪里能得到贷款?

There arouses the question where we could get the loan.

问题是,我们从哪里能获得贷款。

▶ 1. 主语从句

主语从句应保持陈述语序, 当单个从句做主语时, 谓语动词用单数。

1.1 从属连词 that, whether, if 只起连接作用, 在从句中不充当任何句法成分, 但不

能省略。并且由它们引导的主语从句,多用it做形式主语。

如: That men have learned much from the behavior of animals is hardly new.

人类从动物的行为中学到了很多,这并不是什么新鲜的东西。

It doesn't seem likely that she will be here. 她似乎不太可能在这里。

It occurred to him that he had forgotten to take his notebook with him.

他突然想到忘了带笔记本。

It happened that I knew his telephone number. 碰巧我知道他的电话号码。

It is said that he will go abroad next month. 据说下月他将要出国。

Whether he will join us won't make too much difference.

他来不来参加我们的活动都没关系。

It won't make too much difference whether he will join us.

他是否会加入我们没太大的不同。

- 1.2 由连接代词 what, who, whoever, whom, whose, which 引导主语从句时,连接代词在从句中既充当句子成分,也有意义和连接作用。
 - 如: What he wants to tell us is not clear. 他要跟我们说什么,还不清楚。
 Who will win the match is still unknown. 谁能赢得这场比赛还不得而知。
 Whoever leaves the room last should turn off the lights. 最后离开教室的人要关灯。
- **说明:** whoever = anyone who, 在句子中做双重主语, 既做从句的主语又做主句的主语, 而 who 只做从句主语。

如: Who will come is not decided. 还没有决定谁来。

注意 what 引导的名词性从句做主语时,其谓语动词的单复数形式取决于 what 指代的具体内容。如:

What we need is fresh water. (what 代指 fresh water)

What we need are useful books. (what 代指 useful books)

- 1.3 由连接副词 when, where, how, why 引导主语从句时,连接副词既充当从句的成分(状语),也有意义。
 - 如: It is known to us how he became a writer. 我们都知道他是如何成为一名作家的。 Where the English evening will be held has not yet been announced. 英语晚会将在哪里举行,还没有宣布。

When he leaves is his own decision. 什么时候离开是他自己的决定。

注意 怎样判断是选连接代词还是连接副词?

解决要诀:如果从句中缺少主语、宾语、表语和定语,则选连接代词;如果从句缺少状语,则选连接副词;从句不缺任何成分,只能选 that 或 whether。这些原则同样适用于表语从句、定语从句和同位语从句。

≥ 2. 宾语从句

宾语从句应用陈述语序,注意 that 和 what 在引导宾语从句时, that 不做句子成分 (可省略),而 what 做句子成分。

如: Everybody knows (that) money doesn't grow on trees. 众所周知,金钱是不会从树上长出来的。

He asked what he could do next. 他问他下一步能做什么。

- 2.1 由 whether, where, how, when, who 等引导的宾语从句可做动词的宾语从句, 也可做介词的宾语从句。that 宾语从句不能直接放在介词后面。
 - 如: In most of our country agriculture still depends on whether there is enough timely rain. 在我国的大部分地区、农业仍然依赖是否有足够的降水。

He didn't say anything about how he managed to pass the exam.

他没有说关于他如何通过考试的任何事情。

She hasn't made up her mind as to/about whom she is to nominate as her candidate. 她还没有下定决心提名谁作为她的候选人。

注意 介词 besides, beyond, but, except, in 与 that 构成一个复合词, 起连词作用, that 不可省略。其中,除了 in that 之外, besides, beyond, but, except, in that 都有"除了"的意思。如:

① besides that: 此外; 除外
She knew nothing besides that he was there. 除了知道他在那儿外,她什么也不知道。

② beyond that: 除去, 除……之外

He did not really know what he was going to say beyond that the situation demanded something romantic. 除了说这场面需要浪漫色彩外,他确实不知道还该说些什么。

I have heard nothing beyond that he is ill. 除了他生病之外, 我没有听说什么。

③ but that:要不是;如非,除……外

But that I saw it I could not have believed it. 要不是我亲眼看见,我真不能相信。 Nothing would please him but that we go along.

除了我们往下进行之外,什么都不会使他开心。

④ except that: 除去……之外: 可惜……

I know nothing except that he left home early that morning.

我只知道那天早晨他很早就离开了家, 其余的我就不清楚了。

It's a very satisfactory hat, except that it doesn't fit me.

那是一顶很令人满意的帽子,只可惜我戴着不合适。

⑤ in that: 因为; 在……方面

Most of them are not in reality engineers, in that the work they do is mostly clerical. 他们中的大多数人实际上都不是工程师,因为他们做的主要是办公室工作。

- 2.2 **当连接词是 that 时**,由于句子平衡的需要,常常用 it 做形式宾语而将真正的宾语后置。
 - 如: I took it for granted that they weren't coming. 我想当然地认为他们不会来。
 I'll see to it that everything is ready on time. 我将会看到一切都准备就绪了。
 He made it clear that he preferred to live here. 他明确表示,他宁愿住在这里。
 - 2.3 if 可用于宾语从句中,有时可以和 whether 互换。
 - 如: She asked if/whether she could help. 她问她是否能帮上忙。

≫ 3. 表语从句

表语从句应保持陈述语序,能引导主语从句的关联词都可以引导表语从句,应用原则与主语从句一致。

如: The problem is who will water my plants while I am away.

问题是我走后谁会给我的植物浇水。

One advantage of solar energy is that it will never run out.

太阳能的一个优点是它永远不会耗尽。

▶ 4. 同位语从句

多由 that 引导,that 只起连接作用,在从句中不做任何语法成分(定语从句的引导词在从句中可以充当一定的句子成分);同位语从句与修饰的名词是相等关系,对前面的名词进行解释和说明,而定语从句与名词是修饰与被修饰的关系;同位语从句前面的名词是特定的。常常用作同位语从句的先行词:belief,conclusion,fact,evidence,idea,opinion,plan,proposal,news,hope,question,suggestion,message,likelihood,doubt,proof,suspicion,worry,truth,possibility等。

如: That is the fact that they left without saying goodbye.

这就是他们没有说再见就离开的事实。

There are signs that restaurants are becoming more popular with families.

有迹象表明,餐馆受越来越多的家庭欢迎。

He was allowed to go swimming on condition that he kept near the other boys.

他被允许去游泳的条件是和其他的男孩一起。

He went to the party in spite of the fact that he was not welcome.

尽管他不受欢迎、但他还是去参加了聚会。

He got a message from Mr. Johnson that the manager could not see him that afternoon. 他从约翰逊先生那里得到消息, 经理那天下午不会去看他。

○ 二、定语从句

▶ 1. 定语从句的3个重要概念:

1.1 定义:用来修饰某个名词、代词或整个句子的从句就叫作定语从句。定语从句

包括限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句两种。

如: The man you talked about is our headmaster.

你们刚才谈论的那个人是我们的校长。

This is the bike my father gave me as my birthday present.

这是我父亲送给我作为生日礼物的自行车。

The tree whose leaves are red was planted last year.

那棵红叶子的树是去年栽的。

1.2 先行词:定语从句所修饰的词就叫作先行词,它一般是由名词、代词或句子充当。

如: The boy who is singing at the stage is only nine years old.

在舞台上唱歌的那个男孩今年才九岁。(先行词是名词)

Anyone that is willing to help others is welcome to our group.

任何愿意帮助他人的人都欢迎来参加我们的组织。(先行词是代词)

His mother is out of danger, which excites their family very much.

他母亲脱离了危险,这件事情使他们家人兴奋不已。(先行词是句子)

- 1.3 **关系词:** 引导定语从句的词就叫做关系词。根据关系词的用法不同,关系词又分关系代词和关系副词,其中关系代词有 that, which, who, whom, whose 等,关系副词有 where, when, why 等。关系词既起连接先行词与定语从句的作用,又做从句中的某个句子成分。
 - 如:It is in this place that he once lived. 他曾经居住过的是这个地方。

The building which we are looking at used to be a hospital.

我们正在看的这幢大楼过去曾经是一家医院。

Those who were trapped under the ruins finally got rescued.

那些被困在废墟里的人最后得救了。

Our company has 2,000 workers, two thirds of whom are women.

我们公司有2000名工人,三分之二是女工。

The room whose window faces south is mine. = The room of which the window faces south is mine. 窗户朝南的那间房间是我的。

It is the place where he once lived. 这是他曾经住过的地方。

I still remember the day when I first met Jennifer.

我仍然记得第一次见到詹妮弗的那一天。

I don't know the reason why he came so late. 我不知道他来得那么晚的原因。

≥ 2. 限制性定语从句

- 2.1 **关系代词** that, which, who, whom, whose 在定语从句中做主语或宾语。关系代词在定语从句中做宾语时可以省略,但在介词后则不能省略。
 - 如: The man who/that is speaking at the meeting is a famous writer.

正在大会上发言的人是一位著名的作家。

The woman (whom) you saw just now is our English teacher.

你刚刚看到的那个妇女是我们的英语老师。

That is the girl with whom he worked.

那个是跟他一起工作的女孩。

Football is a game which is liked by most boys.

足球是大多数男孩子喜欢的运动。

This is the pen (which) he bought yesterday. 这是他昨天买的钢笔。

The documents for which they were searching have been recovered.

他们找寻的文件已找到了。

This is the woman scientist whose name is known all over the country.

这是一个被整个国家熟知的女科学家。

- 2.2 **关系副词** when, where, why 在从句中充当状语。当关系副词引导的定语从句紧紧跟在先行词后面的时候,关系副词也可以省略。
 - 如: I never forget the day (when) I met you. 我永远不会忘记我遇见你的那一天。

The day will come soon when China will become a modern, powerful country.

中国成为一个现代的、强大的国家的这一天很快就会到来。

She is going to live in Macao, where she has some close friends.

她要到澳门去定居, 在那里她有几个密友。

This is the reason (why) I am late. 这是我迟到的原因。

3. 非限制性定语从句

- 3.1 **在非限制性定语从句中**,定语从句可修饰整个主句或主句的一部分,此时从句只能用 which 或 as 引导。
 - 如: I tried to get out of the business, which I found impossible.

我试图从繁忙的事务中逃离出来,却发现这不可能。

Some of the roads were flooded, which made our journey more difficult.

有些道路被洪水淹没了,这使得我们的旅行更加困难。

As is known to us, Taiwan belongs to China.

众所周知,台湾属于中国。

He failed in this exam, which proves that he wasn't working hard enough.

他这次考试不及格,证明他不够努力。

- 3.2 **关系副词** when 引导非限制性定语从句相当于 at the time, just then, and then, 有 逗号与前面句子隔开。
 - 如: The conference will be put off till next week, when all the comrades will arrive from the different parts of the country.

会议将被推迟到下周,到那时所有与会人员将从祖国各地赶来。

Next month, when you'll spend your summer holidays in your hometown, is approaching. 下个月即将来临,届时你们将在家乡度过暑假。

▶ 4. "介词 + 关系代词"结构

若关系代词在定语从句中做介词的逻辑宾语,可将介词提前构成"介词+关系代词which/whom/whose"的结构,关系代词指人时用whom,不可用who,that;关系代词指物时用which,不可用that;关系代词是所有格时用whose,不可以用that或者whom。介词取决于从句中的动词或形容词。

如: Do you like the book on which she spent \$10? 你喜欢她花了 10 美元买的那本书吗? Do you like the book for which she paid \$10? 你喜欢她花了 10 美元买的那本书吗? Do you like the book from which she learned a lot? 你喜欢她从中学到很多的那本书吗? Do you like the book about which she often talks? 你喜欢她经常谈论的那本书吗? This is the ring on which she spent 100 dollars. 这是她花 100 美元买的戒指。 He is the man on whom I think you can depend. 他是我认为你可以信赖的人。 He is the man for whose factory I work. 他是我给他的工厂打工的人(他是我老板)。

注意 含有介词的短语动词一般不拆开,介词不能提前。如: look for, look after, take care of 等。

This is the watch (which/that) I am looking for. (E)

This is the watch for which I am looking. (误)

> 5. of which 与 of whom 的用法:

在定语从句中做表语的定语时,一般只用 of which 和 of whom。

如: He has three brothers, of whom Li Lei is the youngest one.

他有三兄弟, 李雷是他们中最小的一个。

I bought some books, five of which are best-sellers.

我买了一些书,其中有五本是畅销书。

of 前可使用名词、代词、数词和形容词最高级

- 5.1 **the 名词 + of + which**, 表示所属关系, 相当于 whose, 译为: ……的。
- 如: She is my sister, the shirt of whom is blue. = She is my sister whose shirt is blue. = She is my sister, of whom the shirt is blue. 她是我的妹妹,她的衬衫是蓝色的。 The house the roof of which was damaged has now been repaired. = The house whose roof was damaged has now been repaired. 那幢屋顶损坏的房子现在已经修好了。
- 5.2 代词 + of + which/whom

- 如: The total expenses came to about 500 yuan, all of which was paid out of the public medical fund. 所有花费大约为 500 元, 所有这些钱都是由公共医疗基金支付的。 He has a lot of story books, a few of which I have never read. 他有很多故事书,其中有几本故事书我还从未看过。
- 5.3 数词 + of + which/whom
- 如: The old man has three children, two of whom are college students and one of whom is a manager. 那个老人有三个孩子,其中两个是大学生,另一个是经理。
 I met the fruit-pickers, several of whom were university students.
 我遇到了摘水果的人们,其中有几个人是大学生。
- 5.4 形容词最高级 + of + which
- 如: New York is famous for its sky-scrapers, the highest of which has more than 100 stories. 纽约因为有很多摩天大厦而闻名. 最高的有 100 多层。

c of 的用法:

1. of 表示同位关系: 即用于在 A+of+B 结构,其中的 A 和 B 为同位关系。如: Her sons, both of whom work abroad, ring her up every week.

她的两个儿子都在国外工作,他们每周都给她打来电话。

We've tested three hundred types of boot, none of which is completely waterproof. 我们已经测试过 300 种靴子,没有一种是完全防水的。

2. of 表示整体与部分的关系:即用于"部分+of+整体 (which, whom)"结构。如:

He went with a group of people, few of whom were correctly equipped for such a climb.

他和一队人一起去了, 其中没有几个人配有进行这样一次登山的合适的装备。

The buses, most of which were already full, were surrounded by an angry crowd.

公共汽车大多数都已经挤满了人,它们被愤怒的人群包围着。

3. of 表示所属关系:即 of 用于构成所有格。如:

He wrote a book, the name of which I've forgotten.

他写了一本书,书名我给忘了。

The house, the roof of which was damaged, has now been repaired.

那幢屋顶损坏的房子现在已经修好了。

> 6. 引导定语从句的关系代词只用 that . 不用 which 的常见情况有下列五种 :

- 6.1 **当先行词**是 something, anything, everything, nothing, all, none, few, little, some 等代词时,或当先行词被 every, any, all, some, no, little, few, much 等代词修饰时。
 - 如: Is there anything that I can do for you? 有什么我可以为你做的吗? All that I gave was likely to consider as negligible. 我所给予的一切貌似是微不足道的。

注意 that I gave 是定语从句修饰先行词 all, that 指代先行词, all 在定语从句中做宾语,这里没有省略 that。当先行词是 all,关系代词做主语或宾语时,只能用 that,不能用 which。All that I gave 的意思是:我所给出的一切。另外, consider 与 as 之间省略了上下文中都知道的"it"(一件事情)。在这里, all that 相当于 what。又如:

All that can be done must be done. 凡是能做的都必须做。

- 6.2 当先行词被形容词的最高级或序数词修饰时。
- 如: That is one of the most interesting books that are sold in the bookshop. 那是这家书店卖的最有趣的书之一。

 The first thing that we should do is to get some food. 我们该做的第一件事是弄点吃的。
- 6.3 当先行词被 the only, the very, the same, the last 等修饰时。
- 如: My necklace is not the only thing that's missing. 我的项链不是唯一丢失的东西。
- 6.4 当先行词前有 who 或 which 等疑问代词时,用 that 以避免重复。
- 如: Who is the girl that is wearing a red coat? 穿着红色外套的女孩子是谁?
 Which is the T-shirt that fits me most?
 哪件 T 恤衫最适合我?
- 6.5 当先行词既有人又有物时,用 that。
- 如: The writer and his novel that you have just talked about are really well-known. 你刚才谈起的那位作家以及他的小说确实很著名。
- > 7. 关系代词 as 与 which 的用法区别
- 7.1 **as** 和 **which** 都可引导非限制性定语从句,放在主句之后,代表前面整个句子,在非限制性定语从句中充当从句的主语、宾语。
 - 如: His mother is ill, as / which makes him very sad. 他母亲病了,这件事情使他很难过。
 Tom has found a good job, as / which we all hope.
 汤姆找到了一份好工作,这正是我们大家所希望的。
- 7.2 **as 引导非限制性定语从句**,先行词可以是一个词,一个短语或者句子,可以位于句首或句尾,甚至还可以分割主句;而 which 引导非限制性定语从句只能放在主句之后。
 - 如: As is known to all, China is a developing country. 众所周知,中国是一个发展中国家。
 He is from the south, as we can know from his accent.
 他是南方人、我们从他的口音就能知道。

Water consists of hydrogen and oxygen, which (as) is known to all. 众所周知, 水是由氢和氧构成的。

另外, as 的常见结构如下:

as is said before..., as can be imagined..., as often happens...,

as has been mentioned above..., as has been announced..., as is often the case...,

as has been pointed out..., as might/could be expected...,

as can be seen from these figures...等。

常常有"正如,正像"的含义。

如: As is generally accepted, the social status of women has been greatly improved nowadays. 普遍接受的是,如今妇女的社会地位有了很大的提高。

As you expected, he turned up on time. 正如你所愿,他按时出现了。

As is said above, he has conquered the difficulty. 正如上面所说,他克服了困难。

- 7.3 **当先行词被** such, the same 修饰时, 关系词常用 as, 形成 such...as..., the same...as...结构。
 - 如: She wears the same kind of dress as I do. 她穿的衣服和我的一样。
 Such people as you described are rare nowadays. 你描述的这种人现在很少见。
 Here is such a difficult problem as none of us can solve.
 这是一个我们都无法解决的难题。

> 8. 定语从句与同位语从句的区别:

在从句中一般不担当成分。试比较:

8.1 **定语从句中**,从句和先行词是修饰关系;同位语从句中,从句是对先行词的具体说明,从句和先行词是等价关系,它们的地位是同等的。试比较:

The plane that has just taken off is for Paris. 刚刚起飞的飞机是去巴黎的。(定语从句)
The fact that he has already died is quite clear. 他已经死了这一事实很清楚。(同位语从句)

8.2 定语从句中关系代词在从句中充当句子成分;同位语从句一般由连词 that 引导,

The opinion (which/that) I heard from Tom is totally wrong.

我从汤姆那里听到的意见完全错了。(定语从句)

其中 opinion 是从句中 hear 的宾语,即 I hear the opinion from Tom。opinion 在从句中由 that 或 which 代替,做宾语时可以省略关系代词。

I heard the news that our team had won. 我听到了我们队获胜的消息。(同位语从句) 其中 news 与 our team had won 的地位相同。从句是对限定词 the news 的进一步解释。

- > 9. 关系副词 when, where, why 的用法:
- 9.1 **when 指时间**,在从句中做时间状语,它的先行词通常有:time,day,morning,

night, week, year 等。

如: I still remember the time when I first became a college student. 我仍然记得我刚刚成为大学生的时候。

Do you know the date when Lincoln was born? 你知道林肯的出生日期吗?

The days are gone forever when the Chinese people were looked down upon.

中国人民被人轻视的日子一去不复返了。

The main school holidays are from mid-December till early February, when the days are long and warm. 学校的主要假期是从12月中旬到2月初,这段时间里白天长而且很温暖。

Considering (the time) when these paintings were done, they are in excellent condition.

考虑到这些油画的创作时期,它们保存的状况是极好的。

Do you remember (the time) when the three of us went on a picnic? 你还记得我们三个人去野餐的那段时光吗?

- ① 在定语从句中, that 在某些条件下可用来代替 when, 这时其先行词通常是 time, day, moment, year 等。
 - 如: His mother died on the evening that he was born. 他母亲死于他出生的那个晚上。 I stay at home on the days that I am not busy. 在我不忙的时候,我就待在家里。
 - ② when 时常可以省略,特别是在某些句型和某些时间状语中。
 - 如: Each time he came, he did his best to help us. 每次他来,他都尽力帮助我们。 But help never stopped coming from the day she fell ill. 自从她生病的那天帮助从未停止。
- 9.2 where 指地点,在从句中做地点状语。它的先行词通常有: place, spot, street, house, room, city, town, country 等。
 - 如: This is the hotel where they are staying. 这是他们住的酒店。
 I forget the house where the Smiths lived. 我忘记了史密斯一家住的房子在哪儿。

注意 where 有时也可以省略。

如: This is the place (where) we met yesterday. 这是我们昨天见面的地方。

9.3 why 指原因或理由,它的先行词只有 reason。

如: That is the reason why he is leaving so soon. 这是他很快就要离开的原因。

注意「why 时常也可以省略。

如: That is the real reason he did it. 那就是他做这件事的真正原因。

9.4 when, where, why 这三个关系副词在意义上都相当于一定的"介词+which"结构:

when = on (in, at, during...) + which;

where = in (at, on...) + which;

why = for which

如: I was in Beijing on the day when (=on which) he arrived. 他到达的那天我在北京。 I'll never forget the mountain village where (= in which) I spent my childhood. 我永远不会忘记我度过童年时代的那个山村。

I don't know the reason why (= for which) he did that. 我不知道他为什么那样做。

≥ 10. 当先行词表示时间、地点、原因、方式时,如何选择关系词。

- 一定要注意分析从句的结构,如果缺少主语或宾语,则关系词应该用 which 或 that; 缺少时间状语、地点状语或原因状语时,才能用 when, where 或 why。
- 10.1 当先行词是表时间的 time, day 等和表地点的 place, house 及表示原因的 reason 等时。
 - 如: I'll never forget the day when my hometown was liberated.

我永远不会忘记我家乡解放的那一天。

I'll never forget the days which/that we spent with my grandma last summer.

我永远不会忘记去年夏天和祖母一起度过的日子。

His father works in a factory where radio parts are made.

他父亲在一家制造无线电元件的工厂工作。

His father works in a factory which/that makes radio parts.

他父亲在一家制造无线电元件的工厂工作。

The reason that/which/ (也可以省去) he gave you was reasonable.

他给你的理由是合理的。

The reason why he could not go there was that his grades were too low.

他不能去那儿的原因是他的成绩太低了。

- 10.2 ① The reason why...is that... 这是特定句型, why 引导定语从句, 在句中是关系副词, is 后的用词为 that, 不用 because。
 - 如: The reason why she did it is that she wouldn't let her parents feel disappointed. 她那么做的原因是她不想让父母失望。
- ② The reason is / was that ... 当主语是 reason / cause 时,一般不能用 because 或 why 引导表语从句,以免造成语义重复。也可以理解为 is / was 后跟名词性从句做表语,用连词 that。

The reason (why/for which) he was late was that he got up late.

他迟到的原因是他起床晚了。

③ 当主语是 this / that 时,可以由 because / why 引导表语从句。

He got up late. That was why he was late for class. 他起晚了。那就是他上课迟到的原因。 He was late for class, because he got up late. 他上课迟到了,因为他起晚了。

- 10.3 the way 做先行词的用法: 在定语从句中做主语、宾语、状语。
- ① He has given you the way (that) is best to solve the problem.

他给你的是最好的解决问题的方式。(way 在定语从句中当主语, 引导词可以省略)

2 I want to know the way (that) he told you yesterday.

我想知道他昨天告诉你的方法。(way 在定语从句中当 told 的宾语,引导词可以省略)

3 I don't like the way (in which) he speaks to me.

我不喜欢他对我说话的方式。(way 在定语从句中当介词宾语,介词短语在定语从句中当状语时,引导词可以省略)

▶ 三、状语从旬

状语从句在句中做状语,修饰主句中的动词、形容词或副词等。状语从句放在主句之前时,常用逗号分开;放在主句之后时一般不用逗号。状语从句按其意义和作用可分为时间、地点、原因、目的、结果、让步、条件、方式、比较等9种状语从句。

- ▶ 1. 时间状语从句 常用下列引导词: when, while, as, as soon as, immediately, directly, the moment (that), the minute (that), no sooner...than..., hardly/ scarcely... when..., once (一旦……就……), till, until 和 not...until, every time, each time, next time, the first time, any time, all the time 等。
 - 1.1 when, while 和 as 的用法及区别:
 - ① when 既可引导一个持续动作,也可引导一个短暂性动作。
 - 如: When I lived there, I used to go to the seashore on Sundays. 我住在那里时,星期天常到海边去。

When the film ended, the people went back.

电影一结束,看电影的人便回去了。

- ② while 引导的动作必须是持续性的,侧重主句动作和从句动作相对比。
- 如: Please don't talk so loud while others are working.

别人在工作时,请别大声说话。

While I was wondering at this, our schoolmaster took his place.

正当我对此不解时,我们校长就座了。

- ③ as 引导一个持续性动作,多用于主句和从句动作同时发生。
- 如: He hurried home, looking behind as he went.
 他匆匆忙忙跑回去,一边走一边回头望。

 John sings as he works. 约翰一边工作,一边唱歌。
- 1.2 as soon as, immediately, directly, the moment (that), the minute (that), no sooner... than..., hardly/ scarcely... when..., once (一旦……就……) 等。

这些从属连词常译为"一……就……"。从句中用一般时态代替将来时。

如: Once you remember it, you'll never forget it.

一旦你记住它, 你将永远不会忘记它。

The moment I heard the voice, I knew father was coming.

我一听到那声音,就知道父亲要来了。

No sooner had we arrived at the station than the train left.

我们一到车站,火车就开了。

The boy burst into tears immediately he saw his mother. 男孩一看见母亲就大哭起来。

注意 "no sooner... than...; hardly/scarcely... when..." 结构的时态搭配:

no sooner 与 hardly/scarcely 引导的主句谓语动词应用过去完成时,而 than 与 when 的从句谓语应用一般过去时。此外,当把 no sooner 和 hardly/ scarcely 提到句首时,主句要用倒装语序。

I had no sooner reached home than it began to rain. /

No sooner had I reached home than it began to rain. /

I had hardly got home when it began to rain. 我刚到家, 天就下雨了。

He had scarcely finished his speech when the audience started cheering. /

Scarcely had he finished his speech when the audience started cheering.

他刚演讲完, 观众就开始欢呼起来。

- 1.3 till, until 和 not...until 的用法及区别:
- ① 肯定句: 主句谓语动词必须是延续性动词, 主句、从句都为肯定式, 意为"某动作一直持续到某点时间才停止"。
 - 如:He remained there until she arrived.他一直等到她来。

You may stay here until the rain stops. 你在这里可以待到雨停。

- ② 否定句: 主句谓语动词必须是非延续性动词, 从句肯定式, 意为"某动作直到某时间才开始"。
 - 如: He won't go to bed till (until) she returns. 直到她回来他才去睡觉。
 - ③ till 不可以置于句首,而 until 可以。
 - 如: Until you told me I had no idea of it. 直到你告诉我,我才知道这件事。
 - ④ not...until 句型中的强调和倒装用法:

not...until 用在强调句结构 (It is/was not until ...that...) 中不用倒装语序。

如: It was not until he had done his work that Mike came. 麦克直到完成工作才回来。

not until 置于句首主句要倒装。

如:Not until you told me did I have any idea of it. 直到你告诉我,我才知道这件事。

- 1.4 before 和 since 的用法:
- - 如: We had sailed four days and four nights before we saw land.

我们航行了四天四夜才看到陆地。

We hadn't run a mile before he felt tired.

我们跑了还不到一英里他就累了。

Please write it down before you forget it.

趁你现在没忘把它记下来。

Before I could get in a word, he had measured me.

我还没来得及插话,他就给我量好了尺寸。

before 从句中谓语不用否定式、又如:

Before they reached the station, the train had gone.

他们(还没)到火车站前,火车已开走了。

- ② 句型 "It be (not) + 时间段 before + 从句", 意思为: "多久之后才……"。
- 如: It will be half a year before I come back. 半年之后我就回来。

It won't be long before we meet again. 不久我们会再相见。

It was long/one year before she came. 她过了很久/一年才回来。

It was not long before I forgot it all. 没过多久, 我就把它全忘了。

- ③ since 从句的动词一般是非延续性动词,主句的谓语动词是延续性的或者是反复发生过的动作。since 从句的时态为一般过去时,相应地,主句中的时态是现在完成时或现在完成进行时。
 - 如: I have written home four times since I came here.

自从我到这儿来,我往家写了四封信。

She has been working in this factory since she left school.

自从她离开学校就一直在这家工厂工作。

- ④ 句型 "It is + 时间段 since + 从句", 时间的计算一律从 since 句的动作完成或状态结束时算起。
 - 如: It is three years since the war broke out. 战争爆发以来,有三年了。

It is three years since she was in our class. 她离开我们班有三年了。

It is three years since he lived here. 他不在这儿住有三年了。

It is three years since I (have) smoked a cigar. (= since I stopped smoking a cigar). 我不吸烟有三年了。

如果翻译"我吸烟有三年了"。应为: It is three years since I began to smoke.

- 1.5 every time, each time, next time, the first time, any time, all the time 等名词短语引导时间状语从句,表示"每当……,每次……,下次……"。
 - 如: Every/Each time I was in trouble, he would come to help me out.

每次我遇到麻烦,他都来帮我。

Next time you come, do remember to bring your son here.

下次你来的时候,一定要带你儿子到这儿来。

The last time she saw James, he was lying in bed.

她最后一次见到詹姆斯时, 他躺在床上。

The first time I climbed onto the wall, I felt nervous.

我第一次爬到墙上时,感到紧张。

You are welcome to come back any time you want to. 随时欢迎你回来。

- ▶ 2. 地点状语从句常用下列引导词: where, wherever, anywhere, everywhere。
- 如: Where there is a will there is a way. 有志者, 事竟成。

Wherever there is smoke, there is a fire. (无火不生烟) 无风不起浪。

You cannot camp anywhere you like these days. 近期, 你不可以随处野营。

I looked for my wallet everywhere, but I can't find it anywhere.

我到处找我的钱包, 但是我哪儿也没找到。

- ▶ 3. 原因状语从句常用下列引导词: because, since, for, as, now that, in that, considering (that), seeing (that) 等。其中, now that (既然,由于) 引导的原因状语从句常常置于主句之前,而 in that (原因在于,是因为) 引导的原因状语从句则常常置于主句之后。
 - 如: Now that quite a few committee members were absent, we decided to call off the meeting. 由于几个委员缺席,我们决定取消这次会议。

We could have a joint party, seeing that your birthday is the same day as mine.

我们可以联合举行一个聚会, 因为你的生日和我的生日同一天。

Considering that the weather is bad, we'll stay at home.

考虑到天气不好, 我们还是待在家里吧。

Seeing that he is ill, we'll do the work for him. 因为他病了,我们将为他做这项工作。

3.1 because, since, as, for 的比较。这四个词都是并列连词。

because 意思为"最重",回答 why 时只能用它,表示的是直接的理由;

since 意思是"既然",表示对方已知道的事实或理由;

as 意思是"由于", 表示较为明显的理由, 语气较弱, 比较口语化;

for 意思是"因为"一般只表示推断的理由,只是对主句的附带说明,用逗号与主句隔开,重点在主句。

如: Mary didn't go to school yesterday, because she was ill. 玛丽昨天没有上学,因为她病了。

Since he says so, it must be true. 既然他这么说,那一定是真的。 As you are tired, you had better rest. 既然你累了,最好休息一下。 It must have rained in the night, for I saw the grass wet. 夜里一定下雨了,因为我看到草地很湿。

3.2 now that, in that 的比较:

now that 意思是"既然,由于",引导的原因状语从句常常置于主句之前。 in that 意思是"原因在于,是因为",引导的原因状语从句常常置于主句之后。

如: Now that you've finished the work you ought to have a good rest. 既然已完成了工作,你就应该好好休息一下。

This book is different from that book in that this one is about chemistry and that one about history. 这本书不同于那本,因为这本是有关化学的,而那本是有关历史的。

3.3 其他表示原因的方式

除了状语从句以外,一些介词短语同样可以表示原因,这些常用短语有: because of, thanks to, due to, owing to。

> 4. **条件状语从句**分为真实条件从句和非真实/虚拟条件从句。

常用引导词有: if, unless = if… not (除非,要不是), on condition that = if (条件是,如果……;在……条件下,若……则), suppose (that) / supposing (that) (如果……,假设……,其功能相当于if), so/as long as (只要), provided that, providing that (以……为条件,假如), suppose/supposing (that) (猜想,以为,假定), assuming that (假设), given (that) (在……的情况下), but that (要不是)等。

4.1 if, unless = if... not (除非,要不是), on condition that = if (条件是,如果……;在……条件下,若……则)

If I were you, I would invite him to the party. 如果我是你,我就会邀请他参加聚会。 I would have arrived much earlier if I had not been caught in the traffic.

如果没有堵车, 我会到得早一点儿。

You will fail to arrive there in time unless you start earlier.

如果你不早点动身, 你就不能及时赶到那儿。

Unless he studies hard he will never pass the examination.

→If he doesn't study hard, he will never pass the examination.

除非他努力学习,不然他将不能通过考试。

I will lend you the book on condition that you return it on Monday.

如果你能在星期一把书还给我,我可以把这本书借给你。

- 4.2 as long as 和 so long as 的用法和区别:
- ① as long as 和 so long as 均可表示"只要",用于引导条件状语从句,两者没什么区别。

如: I don't care so /as long as she lets me be with her son.

只要她让我和她儿子在一起,我就不在乎。

You can take my car as / so long as you drive carefully.

你可以用我的汽车,只要你小心点儿开。

② 当 as long as 用于本义表示"与……一样长"时,与 so long as 在用法上是有区别的,即 as long as 可用于肯定句或否定句,而 so long as 只用于否肯定,不用于肯定句。

如: It took three times as long as I had expected.

这件事比我预料的多花了两倍的时间。

It didn't take as /so long as I expected.

这件事花的时间比我预料的短。

4.3 provided that 和 providing that 的用法和区别:

provided that 意思是:假设,万一,倘若。一般被修饰的部分和句子主语为被动关系。 providing that 意思是:假设,万一,倘若。一般被修饰的部分和句子主语为主动关系。

如: Providing that you exercise due care, there is no reason why you shouldn't live to a great age. 只要你适当地注意锻炼, 你就可享有很长的寿命。

I will go providing that my expenses are paid.

要是我的费用有人代付我就去。

I will lend the money to you provided that you return it next month.

如果你下个月还我,我就把钱借给你。

You may go out providing you do your homework first.

只要你先做家庭作业,就可以出去。

4.4 suppose/supposing (that) (猜想,以为,假定), assuming that (假设)。

Suppose/Supposing (that) we miss the train, what shall we do?

如果我们误了火车, 该怎么办?

Suppose/ Supposing (that) I don't have a day off, what shall we do?

假如我没有休息日,我们该怎么办?

Assuming that the proposal is accepted, when are we going to get the money?

假设这个建议被接受了, 我们什么时候能拿到钱?

- 4.5 given / given that 的意思是一样的,都是指"在……的情况下",但是使用情境不同。
 - ① given 用作介词,表示原因,意思为"考虑到";表示假设,意思为"假设,假如"。
 - 如: Given more time, they'll probably agree. 如果给他们更多时间,他们也许会同意。 Given his age, he has done a good job. 考虑到他的年龄,他已经做得不错了。
 - ② given that 可以引导从句。

如: Given that he is ill, he has done a good job.

考虑到他得病了,他已经做得不错了。

Given that they are inexperienced, they've done a good job.

考虑到他们缺乏经验,他们已经做得很好了。

- 4.6 but that (要不是), 常用于虚拟语气, that 从句用"(should)+动词原形"结构。
- 如: He would have died but that they sent him to hospital in time. 要不是他们及时把他送到医院,他就死了。

注意 主句是一般将来时,从句可用一般现在时表示将来的事情。

- **≫** 5. 目的状语从句常用下列引导词: in order that, so that, lest, for fear that, in case 等。
- 5.1 in order that, 与 so that 两个连词的意思都为"以便……,为了……",引导的状语从句中用情态动词, in order that 比 so that 正式。
 - 如: In order that everybody should hear him, he spoke loudly.

为了让每个人都听见他说话,他说话声音很大。

We talk quietly in order that we should not disturb the other passengers.

我们安静地交谈, 以免打扰其他乘客。

He spoke slowly so that he could be heard clearly. = He spoke slowly so as to be heard clearly. 他讲得很慢,以便别人能听得清。(被别人听清楚)

So that everyone could see, the taller children stood at the back.

为了让大家都看得见,个子高的孩子站在了后面。

注意 so that 引导的目的状语从句可移至主句前,但结果状语从句不可以。如:

I always write carefully so that I may make my meaning clear.

我总是写得很仔细, 以便把我的意思表达清楚。

- 5.2 **lest, for fear that 与 in case** 引导的目的状语从句中的谓语动词要用(should)+动词原形,它们本身带有否定意义,相当于 in order that...not 或 so that...not。
 - 如: The boy hid himself behind the tree in case/ for fear that his father should see him. 那个男孩躲在树后以防/唯恐他父亲看见他。

Take your raincoat in case/lest it should rain. 带上你的雨衣以防下雨。

- > 6. 结果状语从句常用下列引导词: so...that..., such...that...。
- 6.1 引导结果状语从句的从属连词有: so...that..., such...that..., 在非正式文体中, that 可省略。主要的结构形式有:
 - so + 形容词/副词 + that 从句

so+形容词+a/an+单数可数名词+that 从句

so + many/much/few/little + 名词 + that 从句

such + a/an + 形容词 + 单数可数名词 + that 从句

such + 形容词 + 复数可数名词 + that 从句

such +形容词 +不可数名词 + that 从句

He was so angry that he couldn't say a word.

他气得说不出话来。

She made so good a meal that we all ate far too much.

她做的饭菜那么好吃,结果我们都吃得太多了。

It was so good an exhibition that I went to see it several times.

展览那么好, 我去看了好几次。

He is such a clever boy that everybody likes him.

他是个非常聪明的男孩、大家都非常喜欢他。

He was such an honest man that he was praised by the teacher.

他非常诚实,因而受到了老师的表扬。

They are such interesting novels that I want to read them once again.

这些小说非常有趣, 我想再读一遍。

He has made such great progress that the teachers are pleased with him.

他进步得很快,老师们对他感到很满意。

注意 ① 如果 such 后边的名词前由 many, much, few, little 等词所修饰的话,则不用 such 而用 so。如:

He had so many falls that he was black and blue all over.

他摔了很多跤, 以至于全身上下青一块, 紫一块的。

He had so little education that he was unfit for this job.

他所受的教育很少,不适合做这个工作。

② 其中 such that 可以用于预指后文。如:

His behavior is such that everybody dislikes. 他的行为大家都不喜欢。

The damage was such that it would cost too much money to repair.

损坏得很严重,要用很多钱才能修好。

🕒 so...that...,such...that...的区别主要有三个 :

- ① so + 形容词 + a/an + 名词 + that such + a/an + 形容词 + 名词 + that;
- ② 当形容词后跟名词复数或不可数名词时,只能用 such:
- ③ 当名词前有 many, few, much, little 修饰, 只能用 so。

6.2 当 so, such 位于句首时主句要倒装。

如: So cold was the weather that we had to stay at home. 天气太冷, 我们只好待在家里。 So loudly did he speak that even people in the next room could hear him.

他讲话声音那么大、隔壁屋里的人都听得见。

Such a nice man did he seem that we all believe him.

他像个很和蔼的人, 所以我们都相信他。

6.3 so 与 such 的区别:

so与 such 都可以用来表示程度, 意思是"如此,这样", 但用法却各不相同。

such 是形容词,用来修饰名词,名词前有无形容词都可以; so 是副词,用来修饰形容词或副词,形容词后可以省略名词。

如: He is such a (big) fool. 他真是个大傻瓜。 He is so foolish (a man). 他真是个大傻瓜。

6.4 单数名词前有不定冠词和形容词时, so 与 such 位置不同。

前者为: so + 形容词 + 冠词 + 名词

后者为: such + 冠词 + 形容词 + 名词:

如: I know such a clever boy. 我认识一个非常聪明的男孩。 I know so clever a boy. 我认识一个非常聪明的男孩。

6.5 so 后即使有形容词,也不能修饰复数名词或不可数名词,而 such 则可以。

如: They are such useful books. 这些书非常有用。

He gave us such good food. 他给了我们很多美食。

▶ 7. 让步状语从句常用下列引导词: though, although, even though, while, as, no matter what (where, how, when 等), whatever, wherever, whenever。

如: Though he is young, he knows a lot. = Young as he is, he knows a lot.

尽管他很年轻、但是他知道的很多。

Although my uncle is old, he looks very strong and healthy.

我的叔叔虽然老了,但他看上去很健壮。

Even if/Even though it is raining, we'll go. 即使天下雨, 我们也要去。

Wherever you go, I will be right here waiting for you.

不管你去那里, 我依然会在这里等你。

No matter who does it, I will not agree. = Whoever does it I will not agree.

无论是谁做,我都不会同意。

While Barbara has many friends, she often feels lonely.

虽然巴拉拉有很多朋友,她却经常感到孤独。

其中 though, as 状语从句常常倒装。其基本句型为:

名词 + as/though + 主语 + 系动词,如果表语是单数可数名词,则该名词提前时省去 冠词:

形容词/副词 + as/though + 主语 + 系动词;

动词原形 + though + 主语 + 情态助动词。

如: Child as he was, he could speak English. 尽管他是个孩子, 但是他能说英语。

Happy as they were, there was something missing.

尽管他们很快乐,但总缺少点什么。

Hard as I tried, I still couldn't persuade him. 虽然我很努力, 但还是说服不了他。

Try as he would, he could not lift the rock.

尽管试过多次了,他仍不能搬动那块石头。

7.1 这类倒装的让步状语从句可用 as, though 来引导,但不能用 although 来引导;但是,不倒装的让步状语从句则可用 though, although 来引导,而不能用 as 来引导。也就是 although 引导让步状语从句时不能倒装, as 引导让步状语从句时必须倒装,而 though 引导让步状语从句时可以倒装也可以不倒装。

如:虽然很晚了,但我们还是继续工作。

正: Late as (though) it was, we still went on working.

虽然已经晚了, 我们还是继续工作。

正: Though (Although) it was late, we still went on working.

误: Late although it was, we still went on working.

误: As it was late, we still went on working.

7.2 上面提到的倒装结构有时也可用来表示原因,区分的办法主要看句子的内容: 让步状语从句的内容大多数与主句在意义上相反,而原因状语从句则与主句之间有因果关系。比较:

Tired as he was, he sat up late studying at night.

昨晚他虽然很疲倦了, 但还是学习到很晚才睡。(表示让步)

Tired as he was, he went to bed early.

因为很累,所以他睡得很早。(表示原因)

Young as he was, he was equal to the task.

他虽年轻,却能胜任这顶工作。(表示让步)

Young as he was, he was not equal to the task.

他因为年轻,所以不能胜任这顶工作。(表示原因)

▶ 8. 方式状语从句常用下列引导词: as, just as, the way, as if/though。

如: I have to do as my boss told me. 我要接我老板告诉我的那么做。

Leave it as it is. 保持原状,不要动它。

As a man lives, so he dies. 正如人能活,也能死。

She went to the beach with me just as she had promised me to do.

正如她许诺我的那样,她和我去了海边。

She played the piano the way /as the old pianist had taught her.

她用老钢琴家教她的方法 (方式) 弹钢琴。

The little girl looks as if she's going to cry. 这个小女孩看起来好像要哭了。

- 8.1 as 引出方式状语从句, 当从句和主句的谓语一致时, 从句的谓语可用 do 或 be 代替, 以免重复, 有时要倒装。
 - 如: She's unusually tall, as are both her parents. 她长得特别高,她的双亲也是如此。
 - 8.2 口语中 like 也可用作连词,引导方式状语从句。
 - 如: Do it like he does. 照他那样做。
 She can't cook like her mother does. 她菜做得没有她妈那样好。
- **≫** 9. 比较状语从句常用下列引导词: as ... as..., not so/as...as..., than, the more... the more... (越……越……)。
 - 如: He doesn't work as hard as she (does). 他工作不像她那样努力。

The work is not so difficult as you imagine. 这份工作不像你想象的那么困难。

You look younger than you are. 你看上去比你的实际年龄要年轻。

The more you study, the more knowledge you can get.

你学的知识越多, 你的知识越丰富。

as 的主要用法:

英语中 as 一词,词性繁多,用法复杂,搭配力强,是英语考试中的常见考词。其用法总结如下:

1. 用在 as...as 结构中, 第二个 as 是连词, 它往往连接一个不完整的从句, 表示比较, 意为"和……一样, 像……一样", 如:

He recites as much of the poem as he could remember. 他把诗中记得住的都背诵了出来。 She's as good an actress as she is a singer. 她当演员和当歌手一样出色。

2. 引导时间状语从句, 意为"当······的时候, 一边······一边······,随着"。如: She sang as she worked. 她一边工作一边唱歌。

You will grow wiser as you grow older. 随着年龄的增长,你会变得越来越聪明。

3. 引导原因状语从句, 意为"因为, 既然", 常位于句首, 如:

As you are tired, you had better rest. (既然) 你累了,最好休息一下。

4. 引导方式状语从句, 意为"像……, 正如, 按照"。如:

Do it as I told you. 按我说的做。

Run as I do. 像我这样跑步。

Leave it as it is. 保持原状,不要动它。

5. 引导让步状语从句时 as 位于形容词或副词之后表示让步倒装, 意为"虽然"。如: Rich as he is, he is not happy. 虽然他富有, 但他却不幸福。

Much as I like you, I couldn't live on you. 尽管我很喜欢你, 但我不能靠你生活。

Try as he would, he could not lift the rock. 尽管试过很多次了, 但他仍不能搬动那块石头。

6. 引导比较状语从句,一般用于 as...as 或 so...as 结构中。如:

Sometimes ignorance is as dangerous as conceit. 有时候无知和骄傲一样危险。

They believe businesses in other countries are not as competitive as those in America.

他们认为其他国家的企业不如美国的企业有竞争力。

7. 引导限制性定语从句,与 the same, such 连用,形成 the same...as, such...as 结构,关系代词在从句中做主语、宾语或表语,关系副词 as 在从句中做状语。如:

I don't like such people as were invited by him last night. (as 做主语)

我不喜欢昨晚他邀请的那些人。

This is the same book as I read last week. (as 做宾语)

这本书和我上周读的那本是一样的。

My hometown does not look the same as it was several years ago. (as 做表语)

我的家乡看上去和几年前不一样了。

Their society works in much the same way as human society. (as 做状语)

它们的社会运转与人类社会一样。

8. 引导非限制性定语从句,可放在句首,句中、句末。

As we all know, most children like to play with animals. (as 做主语)

众所周知,大多数孩子都喜欢和动物玩耍。

As is known to all, the economy of China is developing fast.

众所周知,中国经济正飞速发展。

9. 引导插入语。

The difference, as I see it, is one of method and not of principle.

这种差异,在我看来,在于方法而不是原则。

This idea must be, as it appears to me, cast away.

这种观点,在我看来,必须抛弃。(在我看来,这种观点必须抛弃。)

10. 由 as 构成的常用固定短语。

as soon as 一·····就

as to 关于. 至于

so/as far as I know 就我所知

as well 也

as a matter of fact 事实上

as/so long as 只要

as much/many as 多达……

as a result/as a result of 由于……的结果

as well as 不妨……也好

so/as far as...is concerned 就……而言

Grammar Test 1:

1. The girl _____ mother is a teacher studies very hard.

A. which

B. that

C. its

D. whose



| 2. | you return the | nose books to the library | imm | nediately you will h | ave | to pay a fine. |
|-----|---|---------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|-------|----------------------|
| | A. Until | B. Unless | C. | If | D. | Provided |
| 3. | Japan, was | isolated from the rest of | worl | d for nearly three l | hunc | dred years, has now |
| | taken its place as a me | ember of a world commun | nity. | | | |
| | A. where | B. which | C. | that | D. | it |
| 4. | fails to finisl | h the task given should l | be cr | riticized. | | |
| | A. Any one | B. Any one who | C. | Anyone who | D. | Anyone which |
| 5. | Evidence came up | specific speech s | sound | s are recognized by | y ba | bies as young as six |
| | months old. | | | | | |
| | A. what | B. that | C. | whose | D. | which |
| 6. | is known to | the world, Mark Twain | is on | e of the greatest A | meri | ican writers. |
| | A. As | B. That | C. | Which | D. | It |
| 7. | he refuses to | o attend the meeting to h | be he | eld tomorrow morni | ng? | |
| | A. What if | B. Only if | C. | Even if | D. | As if |
| 8. | The mere fact | _ most people believe nu | uclea | r war would be mad | lnes | s does not mean that |
| | it will not occur. | | | | | |
| | A. what | B. which | C. | that | D. | why |
| 9. | Human beings are diffe | erent from animals | | they can make use | of | languages. |
| | A. whereas | B. in that | C. | because of | D. | consequently |
| 10. | There is hardly an en | vironment on earth | | _ some species of | anir | nal or other has not |
| | adapted successfully. | | | | | |
| | A. to which | B. wherever | C. | so that | D. | as to |
| 11. | He that he | didn't want to have anyt | thing | to do with the mat | ter. | |
| | A. made clean | | В. | made it being clea | ar | |
| | C. made it clear | | D. made it to be clear | | | |
| 12. | Mary bought a new dr | ress last week, | _ wa | s very high. | | |
| | A. the price of which | | B. which price | | | |
| | C. price of which | | D. | the price | | |
| 13. | seems true | e that for the last fifty | years | s the earth has be | en | warming up by two |
| | degrees. | | | | | |
| | A. What | B. This | C. | That | D. | It |
| 14. | The reason he wants to take a leave of absence is | | | | | |
| | A. because he is need | ding a complete rest | В. | because he needs | a co | omplete rest |
| | C. that he needs a co | omplete rest | D. | because a comple | te re | est is needed by him |
| 15. | The reason why I plan | n to go is she | will | be disappointed if | I do | on't. |
| | A. as | B. that | C. | since | D. | for |
| 16. | TV is form | of entertainment that m | nany | children spend mo | re ti | me watching it than |
| | reading books | | | | | |

| | A. so popular a | B. a such popular | C. a so popular | D. | such popular a |
|-----|------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|--------|-----------------------|
| 17. | you are lea | wing tomorrow, we can | eat dinner together ton | ight. | |
| | A. Since | B. While | C. For | D. | Because |
| 18. | He will surely finish | the job on time | he's left to do it in l | nis ov | wn way. |
| | A. in that | B. in case | C. so long as | D. | as far as |
| 19. | difficulties | we may come across we' | Il help one another to | over | come them. |
| | A. Wherever | B. Whatever | C. However | D. | Whenever |
| 20. | They are discussing _ | to do next. | | | |
| | A. which | B. what | C. when | D. | that |
| 21. | I have no doubt | there will be plent | y of youngsters at the | party | |
| | A. what | B. which | C. that | D. | one |
| 22. | might be e | xpected, the response to | the question was very | mix | ed |
| | A. That | B. What | C. As | D. | It |
| 23. | is generally | accepted, economic gro | wth is determined by t | he sn | nooth development of |
| | production. | | | | |
| | A. What | B. That | C. As | D. | It |
| 24. | A few years ago, the | belief became general _ | orange juice | and 1 | nilk should never be |
| | drunk at the same me | eal. | | | |
| | A. that | B. so that | C. and that | D. | now that |
| 25. | The children stay in t | he unit family | they grow up and ma | rry. | |
| | A. because | B. once | C. after | D. | until |
| 26. | Mary had only a one- | week vacation this year | her colleagu | es ha | ad more time off. |
| | A. in spite that | | B. expect | | |
| | C. despite the fact th | at | D. despite | | |
| 27. | I don't think the stud | ents are short of paper. | But I'll leave some to t | hem | they are. |
| | A. unless | B. until | C. provided | D. | in case |
| 28. | Such electron tubes _ | in a radio set a | are also found in a TV | set. | |
| | A. that we use | B. as we use | C. as we use them | D. | that we use them |
| 29. | four years | since John left school an | d found a job in a car | facto | ory. |
| | A. They have been | B. It is | C. It was almost | D. | Those are |
| 30. | Although h | appened in that develop | ed county sounds like | scie | nce fiction, it could |
| | occur elsewhere in th | e world. | | | |
| | A. this | B. what | C. how | D. | it |
| | Keys | | | | |
| | 1—5 DBBCB | 6—10 AACBA | 11—15 CAI |) (I | 3 |
| | | 21—25 D.C.C.A.I | | | |

| G | Frammar Test 2: | | | <u></u> |
|----|-----------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. | you are | free tonight, why not dr | op in and play chess w | |
| | A. For | B. In that | C. Because | D. Now that |
| 2. | we have | e begun talking about it, | I'd better tell you the | truth. |
| | A. Now that | B. For now | C. Since that | D. Since this |
| 3. | The video industry | is developing so rapidly | that almost anything | is written will be out |
| | of date by the time | e it is printed. | | |
| | A. as | B. which | C. that | D. what |
| 4. | Nobody had ever | escaped such terrible ac | cident; I am really d | oubtful he is still |
| | alive. | | | |
| | A. that | B. whether | C. what | D. when |
| 5. | Scarcely had they | settled themselves in their | r seats in the theater | the curtain went up. |
| | A. that | B. when | C. before | D. as soon as |
| 6. | A man cannot be r | eally happy if | he enjoys doing is ignor | red by society as of no value. |
| | A. that | B. when | C. all what | D. what |
| 7. | He has such a fier | rce dog no one | dares to go near his h | iouse. |
| | A. as | B. which | C. that | D. while |
| 8. | The reason | I'm writing is to tell | you about my examina | tion results. |
| | A. because | B. and | C. why | D. for |
| 9. | He will never forge | et the days he | spent with his grandm | a. |
| | A. that | B. when | C. where | D. on which |
| 10 | . Look! The tree, | the branchesa | are almost bare, is a v | ery old one in the area. |
| | A. whose | B. in which | C. of which | D. which |
| 11 | . She is pleased wi | th what you have given h | ner and you | have told her. |
| | A. that | B. which | C. all what | D. all that |
| 12 | . Beer is the mos | t popular drink among | male drinkers, | overall consumption is |
| | significantly high | er than that of women. | | |
| | A. which | B. whose | C. that | D. what |
| 13 | . The residents, $_$ | had been damag | ged by the flood, were | given help by the Red Cross. |
| | A. all their home | es | B. all of whose home | |
| | C. all whose hon | nes | D. all of their homes | |
| 14 | . It was quite so | me time the | president managed t | to save his firm from near |
| | bankruptcy. | | | |
| | A. before | B. that | C. when | D. until |
| 15 | . I prefer his plan | to yours, it is | more practical and eas | sier to be carried out. |
| | A at that | B. for that | C. in that | D. with that |

| 16. | The two noisy yo | oung men shou | ald not be admitted to | the conference are protesting | | | | | | |
|-----|--|--|------------------------|---------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| | loudly to the ste | wards. | | | | | | | | |
| | A. whom | B. who | C. whose | D. which | | | | | | |
| 17. | Jane will not len | d you the book because s | she is fearful | _ you will forget to return it. | | | | | | |
| | A. if | B. whether | C. that | D. so that | | | | | | |
| 18. | The young girl fi | inished her work successf | ully,impres | ssed us most. | | | | | | |
| | A. which | B. that | C. it | D. so that | | | | | | |
| 19. | The old woman v | The old woman was sure that the information could be of some help to took over the | | | | | | | | |
| | job. | | | | | | | | | |
| | A. anyone | B. whoever | C. those | D. the person | | | | | | |
| 20. | Here came the t | wo mysterious fellows | were the cause | of Jane's fears. | | | | | | |
| | A. whom | B. and | C. that | D. who | | | | | | |
| 21. | (1), | we all went to the park. | | | | | | | | |
| | (2), | and we all went to the p | ark. | | | | | | | |
| | A. Being a fine day | | B. Because the fine | day | | | | | | |
| | C. It was a fine | day | D. It being a fine da | у | | | | | | |
| 22. | (1) They have invited us to visit their country, is very kind of them. | | | | | | | | | |
| | (2) They have invited us to visit their country, and is very kind of them. | | | | | | | | | |
| | A. that | B. it | C. which | D. what | | | | | | |
| 23. | (1) is known to us all is that the earth goes around the sun. | | | | | | | | | |
| | (2) is known to us all that the earth goes around the sun. | | | | | | | | | |
| | (3) | is known to us all, the ea | arth goes around sun. | | | | | | | |
| | A. Which | B. It | C. As | D. What | | | | | | |
| 24. | (1), | she knows a lot of things | s. | | | | | | | |
| | A. So young the | e girl is | B. Young as the girl | is | | | | | | |
| | C. Young so the | e girl is | D. As young the girl | is | | | | | | |
| | (2), | she isn't fit for the job. | | | | | | | | |
| | A. As the girl is | s too young | B. Too young as the | girl is | | | | | | |
| | C. As a young g | girl | D. So young the girl | is | | | | | | |
| 25. | (1) I have never | er seen such a clever mar | n he. | | | | | | | |
| | (2) He made s | uch an excellent speech _ | everyone res | pected him. | | | | | | |
| | A. like | B. as | C. that | D. and | | | | | | |
| 26. | | is well known to all, the | | | | | | | | |
| | (2)i | is well known to all that t | he earth is round. | | | | | | | |
| | A That | B with | C. It | D As | | | | | | |

| 27. | (1) Is this the day you visited the modern equipment | last year? | | | | | | |
|-----|--|------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| | (2) Is this the day you spent together last year? | | | | | | | |
| | (3) Is this day you spent together last year? | | | | | | | |
| | (4) Is this the day you stayed in Beijing last year? | | | | | | | |
| | A. what B. that C. when | D. the one that | | | | | | |
| 28. | (1) Is this the factory you worked three years ago? | | | | | | | |
| | (2) Is this factory you worked three years ago? | | | | | | | |
| | (3) This is the factory we visited last year. | | | | | | | |
| | (4) This is the factory my father is working at. | | | | | | | |
| | A. where B. which C. the one where | D. in which | | | | | | |
| | (5) This is the factory produced color TV sets. | | | | | | | |
| | (6) This is the factory color TV sets are produced. | | | | | | | |
| | A. where B. / C. that | D. which | | | | | | |
| 29. | (1) The reason he has been such a success is he new | er gives up. | | | | | | |
| | (2) The reason I burst into tears is that I don't want to part from my mother. | | | | | | | |
| | (3) The reason he told us sounds reasonable. | | | | | | | |
| | A. because B. that C. for | D. why | | | | | | |
| 30. | (1) Can you tell me the way you did the job? | | | | | | | |
| | (2) Can you tell me the way leads to the station? | l me the way leads to the station? | | | | | | |
| | (3) He did it in the same way you told him? | | | | | | | |
| | A. how B. which C. as | D. in which | | | | | | |
| ОП | Keys | | | | | | | |
| | 1—5 DACBB 6—10 DCCAC 11—15 DBB | A C 16—20 B C A B D | | | | | | |
| | 21 D C 22 C B 23 D B C 24 B A | 25 B C 26 D C | | | | | | |
| | 27 CBDC 28 ACBBCA 29 BDB | 30 DBC | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| 15 | Constant dripping wears away the stone. | | | | | | | |
| | 锲而不舍,金石可镂。 | | | | | | | |
| | For man is man and master of his fate. | | | | | | | |
| | 人就是人,是自己命运的主人。 | | | | | | | |
| | While there is life there is hope. | | | | | | | |
| | 一息若存,希望不灭。 | 1 | | | | | | |
| | The good seaman is known in bad weather. 惊涛骇浪,方显英雄本色。 | | | | | | | |
| | W.A.A. W.A.C. A. V. T. V.C. A. U. C. D. | | | | | | | |

第四节

虚拟语气

概念:英语用不同的谓语动词形式表示说话人的不同意图,这种形式称为语气。英语中有三大语气:

陈述语气:陈述一个事实,或提出一种看法,有肯定、否定、疑问、感叹等形式。如: He is late for class. 他上课迟到了。

He is interested in classical music. 他喜欢古典音乐。

祈使语气:用来表示请求、邀请、命令、警告或劝告等(常用动词原形) Keep off the grass. 勿踩踏草地!

虚拟语气:表示说话人所说的不是事实,而是一种假设、愿望、怀疑或者推测。

如: I would study hard if I were you. 如果我是你,我会努力学习。

虚拟语气是一种特殊的谓语动词形式,主要用来表示一种假设的情况或主观的愿望,是一种表示非真实情况或主观设想的动词形式。

▶ 1. 条件句中的虚拟语气

由 if 引导的虚拟条件句可表示一种假设的情况或主观愿望。其主句、从句的谓语部分用法如下:

| | if 从句时态 | 主句时态 |
|-------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 与现在相反 | did/were (不用 was) | would/should/could/might do |
| 与过去相反 | had done | would/should/ could /might have done |
| 与将来相反 | did/were to do/should do | would/ should/ could/might do |

1.1 与现在事实相反

If I were you, I would consider their proposal. 如果我是你,我会考虑他们的建议。

1.2 与过去事实相反

She would have come if she hadn't been so busy. 如果不是那么忙,她会来的。

If he had been here, he might have been able to help us.

如果他在这儿,他也许能帮助我们。

The conference wouldn't have been so successful if we hadn't made enough preparations. 如果我们没准备充分,会议不会这么成功。

1.3 与将来事实相反

If he came tomorrow, he wouldn't allow you to work with us.

如果他明天来,他将不会允许你和我们一起工作。

If there should be an accident, it would be a tragedy.

如果发生事故,那将是一场悲剧。

If it were to rain tomorrow, the game would be put off.

如果明天下雨, 比赛将推迟。

If I were to do it, I would do it in a different way.

如果我做这件事,我会用不同的方式做。

1.4 如果 if 条件句中的谓语动词中含有 were, had 或 should, 有时可省略 if, 将助动词提到主语前面。

如: Were I you, I wouldn't feel sorry. —If I were you, I wouldn't feel sorry.

如果我是你,我不会感到难过。

Had he come a little earlier, I might have met him.

如果他早一点来,我有可能见到他。

Had the doctor been available, the child would have been saved.

如果有医生的话、孩子就会得救。

Were he to leave tomorrow, I would go with him.

如果他明天走,我就和他一起去。

Should it rain tomorrow, we could stay at home.

如果明天下雨, 我们可以待在家里。

Had it not been for your laziness, you could have finished the assignment by now.

要不是你懒惰、你本可以完成作业的。

1.5 错综时间虚拟条件句中的虚拟语气

在使用虚拟语气的复合句中,有时主句和从句的谓语动词的动作所发生的时间不一致,这种情况叫作错综时间条件句。在错综时间条件句中,主句和从句应根据各自的时间 状语选用适当的虚拟语气形式。

如: If I <u>had taken</u> my raincoat when I came out this morning, I <u>would not</u> be wet now. (过去—现在)

如果我今天早上出来的时候带上雨衣, 现在我就不会被淋湿了。

If I were you, I wouldn't have missed the film last night. (现在—过去)

如果我是你,我就不会错过昨晚的电影了。

If the ship <u>had left</u> at noon, it <u>would be passing</u> through the canal now. (过去—现在进行) 如果船中午离开的话,现在就要经过运河了。

If they <u>had left</u> home in early morning, they <u>would arrive</u> in half an hour. (过去—将来) 如果他们清早离开家,半小时后就到了。

If you hesitated this moment, you might suffer in future. (现在一将来)

如果你此刻犹豫不决,你将来会吃苦头的。

If Mary <u>should arrive</u> today, she might <u>have started</u> three days ago. (将来—过去)如果玛丽今天到,她可能是三天前就出发了。

≥ 2. 含蓄虚拟条件句中的虚拟语气

含蓄虚拟条件句指没有明确的条件从句的虚拟语气句,其条件一般用介词短语分词短语、或并列句表达,这时主句的时态要求与含有条件从句的主句相同。常用于这种情况的词或短语有:with,without,otherwise,but for,but that, in the past, or, supposing, suppose 等。

如: Under different circumstances, I would have said yes.

要是在不同的情况下, 我会说是的。

Without his aid, I couldn't have finished the task on time.

要是没有他的帮助, 我就无法按时完成任务。

She wasn't feeling well. Otherwise, she wouldn't have left the meeting so early.

她觉得不舒服。否则,她就不会这么早离开会场。

But for the rain, we would have had a pleasant journey.

要不是下雨, 我们的旅途会很愉快。

But that he saw it (= If he had not seen it), he would not have believed it.

要不是他亲眼看见,他就不会相信。

≥ 3. 名词性从句中的虚拟语气

名词性从句中的虚拟语气大都与谓语动词有关,一般来说,这些标志词常表示建议、请求、命令、主张等意思。同时注意名词性从句中的虚拟语气形式 should do, 其中 should 可以省略,但不能用其他词汇代替。

- 3.1 suggest, propose, order, demand, require, command, request, desire, beg, insist, urge, advise, decide, move (建议), recommend, deserve, determine, prefer, vote (建议), ask 等词后面的宾语从句中常使用虚拟语气。
 - 如: He requested that all members (should) attend the meeting.

他要求全体成员出席会议。

We urged that she (should) reconsider the offer, but failed.

我们敦促她再考虑一下这个建议, 但是没有成功。

- 3.2 insist 的用法: 其后可接 that-从句, 但要根据意思的不同分为两种情况:
- ① 表示"坚持要,一定要",从句所指的一般是尚未实现的事实,此时谓语通常用虚拟语气(即 should + 动词原形),而且引导词 that 一般不省略(尤其是当已经省略 should 时)。
 - 如: The detective insisted that he should have a look. 警探坚持要查看。
 I insisted that he (should) go with us. 我坚持要他和我们一块儿去。

- ② 表示"坚持说,坚持认为",从句所指的通常是已经发生的事或已经存在的状态,谓语一般用陈述语气,引导词 that 可省略。
 - 如: He still insisted he wasn't there at the time. 他仍然坚持说他当时不在那儿。
 John insisted that he heard somebody in the house. 约翰坚持说他听到房子里有人。
 He insisted that he was not ill, but the doctor insisted that he should take the medicine.
 他坚持说他没有病,但医生却坚持要他服药。
 - 3.3 suggest 的用法:

我们建议他去向老师道歉。

- ① 意思为"建议",可接 that 宾语从句, that 从句用"should+动词原形", should 可以省略。
 - 如: She suggested that the class meeting (should) not be held on Saturday. 她建议周六的班会取消。
 We suggested that he (should) go and make an apology to his teacher.
 - ②有"暗示,表明"的意思,其主语往往是事物,而不是人。
 - 如: The decision suggested that he might bring his family. 这个决定表明他可以把家属带来。

 The expression on his face suggested that he was very angry. 他脸上的表情表明他很生气。
 - 3.4 主语从句中的虚拟语气主要用在以下两种结构中:
- ① It's +表示"愿望,请求,建议,命令"的动词过去分词 + that 从句,从句中用 "should + do, should"可以省略。

It's proposed / required / suggested / desired / ordered / decided / arranged / recommended that...

- 如: It is proposed that we should get everything ready by tonight. 建议我们在今晚之前把一切准备好。

 It is required that every student (should) work hard.

 (尽管主语有 every 修饰, 但是 that 从句的谓语动词用 work, 而不用 works。)
 要求每一个学生都 (应该) 努力学习。
- ② It is + 表示"重要,有必要,吃惊,难以相信"的名词或形容词 + that 从句,从句中用"should + do", should 可以省略。

It's necessary / important / natural / essential /impossible / strange / incredible / advisable / vital / crucial / pity / surprise /wonder that ...

如: It is necessary that he (should) be sent to prison at once. 必须将他立即送进监狱。 It is important that we (should) learn English well. 我们学好英语是很重要的。 It's a real surprise that the economy in that region (should) develop so fast. 令人惊讶的是,那个地区的经济发展速度如此之快。

- 3.5 表示"愿望,请求,建议,命令"的名词后的表语从句和同位语从句中同样要使用"should + do"形式, should 可以省略。表示这些概念的标志词如下: suggestion, idea, plan, proposal, recommendation, advice, decision, instruction, insistence, preference, necessity, requirement, demand, resolution, motion, desire等。
 - 如: The professor gave orders that the test (should) be finished before 10:30. 教授命令测试在 10:30 之前完成。

His proposal is that the dam (should) be built at the foot of the mountain.

他的建议是把大坝建在山脚下。

What is of importance is that our representations (should) be sent to the conference. 重要的是我们的陈述 (应该) 被发送到会议上。

≥ 4. 其他状语从句

- 4.1 在由 in case, for fear that, lest 引导的目的状语从句中谓语常使用虚拟语气,形式为: (should) do。
 - 如: Here is some money in case you (should) need it.

这里有一些钱、以备不时之需。

He is working hard for fear that he (should) fall behind.

他正在努力工作, 唯恐落在后面。

The driver looked over the engine carefully lest it (should) go wrong on the way. 司机仔细检查了发动机,以免途中发动机发生故障。

4.2 as if/as though 引导的方式状语从句中的虚拟语气用法如下:

| | as if/as though 引导的从句时态 | | | | |
|-----------|-------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| 表示与现在事实相反 | 一般过去时 did/were | | | | |
| 表示与过去事实相反 | 过去完成时 had done | | | | |
| 表示与将来事实相反 | would/could/might + do | | | | |

如: He acts as if he were an expert.

他表现得就像个专家。

He appeared as if /as though he had known nothing about it.

他显得好像对这件事一无所知。

He opened his mouth as if he would say something.

他张开嘴,好像要说什么似的。

如果 as if 从句中的动作是极有可能发生的事情,则从句的谓语动词使用陈述语气。

- 如: It looks as if it is going to rain. 天看起来好像要下雨了。

 It seems as if he has been to America. 他好像已经去过美国了。
- 4.3 让步状语从句中的特殊虚拟语气用法如下:

Everything around us, be it air or water, (whether it should be air or water) is matter.

我们周围的一切, 无论是空气还是水都是重要的。

Be he rich or poor, she will marry him all the same.

不管他贫穷还是富有,她都决定嫁给他。

Be it good or bad, we will set off as we have planned.

不管天气是好还是坏, 我们都会按计划出发。

Whatever/No matter what you may say, I'll do what I have planned.

不管你说什么, 我都会按照我的计划去做。

- \gg 5. It is (about, high) time that...意思为"是该……的时候了"。that 可省略, time 可由 high, about 修饰,从句中的谓语动词有两种形式,用动词的过去式(be 用were);或者用"should+动词原形(should 不能省略)"。此句型为虚拟语气句型,表示"现在某人该做某事了"。含有"该事早该去做而未做,现在去做似乎都为时已晚"的意思。
 - 如: It's time (that) we went to bed. 我们该去睡觉了。

It's high time that the article were published. 该是发表这篇文章的时候了。

It's time you should do cleaning. 你该去打扫卫生了。

It's high /about time that he stopped smoking. 他该戒烟了。

It seems to be high time that our argument were put to an end. 我们的争吵该结束了。

- ① It's time for + n. 意思为"该是(干)……的时候了"。
- 如: Boys and girls, it's time for class. 同学们,该上课了。
- ② It's time + (for sb.) to do sth. 意思为"该是(某人)干……的时候了"。
- 如: It's time for you to clean the classroom. 该是你打扫教室的时候了。
 It's time to go to school. 该去上学了。
- ③ It's + the + 序数词 + time + to do sth. / It's + the + 序数词 + time + that 从句表示 "某人 第几次做某事"。
 - 如: It is my first time to write a letter in English. 这是我第一次用英语写信。 It is my first time that I've even written letters. 这是我第一次写信。

> 6. 其他形式的虚拟语气

6.1 would rather that...宁愿, 但愿(最好,可能性极小) = would sooner that /had rather that /would just as soon。

| | that 从句时态 |
|--------------|----------------|
| 表示与现在事实相反的愿望 | 一般过去时 did/were |
| 表示与过去事实相反的愿望 | 过去完成时 had done |
| 表示对将来的愿望 | 一般过去时 did/were |

He would rather it were winter now. 他宁愿现在是冬天。

Jim would rather that Tom had gone to the class. 吉姆宁愿汤姆去上课了。

I would rather that you called me tomorrow. 我宁愿你明天打电话给我。

would rather that...与 would rather ...than...的区别:

would rather that 后面接从句, 意思为"宁愿·····"; would rather ...than ... / would ... rather than ... 意思为"宁愿······而不······"。后接省去 to 的动词不定式。

如: We would rather rent the house than buy it outright.

我们宁愿租这所房子而不是直接买下它。

Would rather die than surrender. 宁死不投降。

I'd rather play tennis than swim. 我宁愿打网球也不愿游泳。

6.2 wish 表示强烈的主观愿望,其宾语从句常用虚拟语气。

| | that 从句用时态 |
|--------------|----------------------------------|
| 表示与现在事实相反的愿望 | 一般过去时 did/were |
| 表示与过去事实相反的愿望 | had done 或 could/would have done |
| 表示对将来的愿望 | would/could/should/might do |

I wish I were 30 years younger.

要是我年轻30岁就好了。/ 我多么希望我年轻30岁。

I wish I could see him now. 我希望现在能见到他。

I wish you hadn't told me all this. 我真希望你没告诉我这一切。

She wished she could have been there yesterday. 她真希望昨天能去那儿。

I wish she would come tomorrow. 我希望她明天来。

6.3 if only 与 wish 一样,不过比 wish 有更强烈的感情色彩。

如: If only the explosion had not happened! 要是爆炸没有发生就好了!

If only you hadn't done that! 要是你没做那件事就好了!

If only I were you! 但愿我是你! / 我要是你就好了!

6.4 If it were not for... 意思为"要不是……,如果没有……",表明与现在事实相反的假设;

If it had not been for...意思为"要不是……,如果当时没有……",表示与过去事实相反的假设。

如: If it were not for the rain, the crops should (would) die.

天要是不下雨, 庄稼就死了。

If it had not been for the leadership of the Party, we could not be living a happy life today. 要不是党的领导,我们今天就不能过上幸福的生活。

| G | Grammar Test: | | | |
|----|-----------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. | But for the traffic jam thi | s morning, I | _ late for the meeting | |
| | | B. wouldn't be | | D. hadn't been |
| 2. | Under another social syst | | | |
| | A. would have caused | B. will cause | C. will have caused | D. have caused |
| 3. | This great change | in China without ε | ı solid agricultural fou | ndation. |
| | A. will not take place | | B. cannot take plac | |
| | C. couldn't have taken p | lace | D. doesn't take plac | ce |
| 4. | If Tom had worked harde | er before the exam he | the exam. | |
| | A. must have got through | | B. would get throug | ;h |
| | C. would have got through | gh | D. won't get through | h |
| 5. | If I hadn't stood under th | e ladder to catch you | when you fell, you _ | now. |
| | A. couldn't have smiled | | B. wouldn't be smil | ing |
| | C. didn't smile | | D. won't be smiling | |
| 6. | Jack wishes that he | business instead | of history when he wa | as in university. |
| | A. studied | | B. study | |
| | C. had been studying | | D. had studied | |
| 7. | Sometimes I wish I | in a different tim | e and a different plac | e. |
| | | | | D. would have lived |
| 8. | The millions of calculation | ons involved, had the | y been done by hand | , all practical |
| | value by the time they w | ere finished. | | |
| | A. had lost | B. would have lost | C. would lose | D. should lost |
| 9. | right now, she | e would get there on Si | unday. | |
| | A. Would she leave | | B. If she leaves | |
| | C. Were she to leave | | D. If she had left | |
| 10 | . Look at the terrible situ | ation I am in! If only | I your advi | ce. |
| | | B. had followed | C. would follow | |
| 11 | Many a delegate was i | n favor of his propose | al that committee | to investigate the |

| | incident. | | | | | |
|-----|--------------------------|---------------------------|------|--------------------|---------|-----------------------|
| | A. was set up | B. were set up | C. | set up | D. | be set up |
| 12. | Allen's uncle insists _ | in this small ho | tel. | | | |
| | A. staying not | | В. | not to stay | | |
| | C. that he would not | stay | D. | that he not stay | 7 | |
| 13. | The suggestion that th | e mayor the p | rize | was accepted by | every | one. |
| | A. would present | B. present | C. | presents | D. | ought to present |
| 14. | It is important that the | e hotel receptionist | | _ that guests are | registe | ered correctly. |
| | A. make sure | B. has made sure | C. | made sure | D. | must make sure |
| 15. | It is essential that the | se application forms | | _ back as early | as pos | ssible. |
| | A. must be sent | B. will be sent | C. | are sent | D. | be sent |
| 16. | That tree looked as if | it for a long to | ime. | | | |
| | A. hasn't watered | | В. | hadn't been wa | tered | |
| | C. didn't water | | D. | wasn't watered | | |
| 17. | He speaks Chinese as | fluently as if he | 8 | Chinese. | | |
| | A. were | B. had been | C. | is | D. | has been |
| 18. | The mad man was put | in the soft-padded cell l | lest | he hii | mself. | |
| | A. injure | B. had injured | C. | injured | D. | would injure |
| 19. | The young driver look | ed over the engine carefu | ılly | lest it | on th | e way. |
| | A. goes wrong | B. should go wrong | C. | went wrong | D. | would go wrong |
| 20. | "You are very selfish. | It's high time you | | _ that you are no | t the m | nost important person |
| | in the world," Edgar | said to his boss angrily. | | | | |
| | A. have realized | B. should realize | C. | realize | D. | realized |
| 21. | It's already 5 o'clock | now. Don't you think it's | abo | out time | _ ? | |
| | A. we are going home | <u>)</u> | В. | we go home | | |
| | C. we went home | | D. | we can go hom | e | |
| 22. | John's pale face sugge | ested that he il | l, a | nd his parents s | uggeste | ed that he |
| | a medical examination. | | | | | |
| | A. be; should have | B. was; has | C. | should be; had | D. | was; have |
| 23. | The manager would ra | ther his daughter | | in the same office | ee. | |
| | A. had not worked | B. not to work | C. | doesn't work | D. | did not work |
| 24. | Wouldn't you rather yo | our child to be | ed e | arly? | | |
| | A. go | B. went | | | D. | goes |
| 25. | We didn't know his te | lephone number, otherwi | ise, | we h | im. | |
| | A would have teleph | oned | В | must have teler | honed | |

| | C. would telephone | D. | had telephoned | | |
|-----|---|--------|---------------------|-------|------------------------|
| 26. | But for the English examination, I | to th | e concert last Sund | lay. | |
| | A. would have gone B. have gone | C. | go | D. | went |
| 27. | , we will set off as we planned. | | | | |
| | A. Were it good or bad | В. | Be it good or bad | | |
| | C. Being good or bad | D. | Whether good or | bad | |
| 28. | It is highly desirable that every effort | _ to | reduce pollution in | n Be | eijing. |
| | A. was made B. be made | C. | will be made | D. | would be made |
| 29. | I can't speak Japanese, but I do wish I | | | | |
| | A. can B. could | C. | had | D. | spoke |
| 30. | It turned out what her father left her was the pl | lain 1 | ring her mother had | l be | en wearing when she |
| | was alive. She happier if it had bee | en di | amonds. | | |
| | A. mustn't have B. couldn't have | C. | shouldn't be | D. | couldn't have been |
| 31. | I was ill that day, otherwise I $_$ part | in th | ie parade. | | |
| | A. would take B. would have taken | C. | took | D. | had taken |
| 32. | Please accept my sincere thanks y | our l | nelp, I would not l | nave | succeeded. |
| | A. Because of | C. | But | D. | But for |
| 33. | I wish Susan knew how to apply grammatical r | ules | properly and | | _ the fact that she is |
| | nearly always in the wrong. | | | | |
| | A. recognize B. recognized | C. | recognizing | D. | to recognize |
| 34. | If I had been to the party last week, I | s | sorry for it now. | | |
| | A. would not be feeling | В. | wouldn't have felt | | |
| | C. mustn't feel | D. | should have felt | | |
| 35. | , I will marry him all the same. | | | | |
| | A. Were he rich or poor | В. | Being rich or poor | r | |
| | C. Be he rich or poor | D. | Whether rich or p | oor | |
| 36. | Things might have been much worse if the mo | ther | on her 1 | right | to keep the baby. |
| | A. had insisted B. was been insisting | C. | insisted | D. | would insist |
| 37. | If there were life on Mars, such life forms | | unable to surviv | e oı | n earth. |
| | A. would be B. are | C. | will be | D. | should |
| 38. | If the whole operation before hand, a gr | eat d | eal of time and mon | iey v | would have been lost. |
| | A. was not planned | В. | has not been plan | ned | |
| | C. had not been planned | D. | were not planned | | |
| 39. | It is strange that such a thing in you | ur sc | hool. | | |
| | A. will happen B. should happen | C. | happens | D. | happened |

| 40. | But that you helped me, I the French | ch e | xamination. | | |
|-----|--|----------------------------------|----------------------|-------|-----------------------|
| | A. couldn't pass | B. couldn't have passed | | | |
| | C. didn't pass | D. | can't pass | | |
| 41. | Everything if Albert hadn't called the | ne fii | re brigade. | | |
| | A. will be destroyed | В. | will have been de | stro | yed |
| | C. would be destroyed | D. | would have been | dest | royed |
| 42. | Supposing this ship, do you think | ther | e would be enough | h lif | e jackets for all the |
| | passengers? | | | | |
| | A. was sinking B. has sunk | C. | were to sink | D. | sunk |
| 43. | The teacher suggested that each student | | a plan for the vac | atio | n. |
| | A. made B. make | C. | makes | D. | will make |
| 44. | Frankly, I'd rather you anything ab | out i | it for the time bein | g. | |
| | A. do B. don't do | C. | didn't do | D. | will not do |
| 45. | It's high time you | | | | |
| | A. start to work B. would start to work | C. | started to work | D. | had started to work |
| 46. | It is imperative that you there in pe | rson | | | |
| | A. are B. were | C. | be | D. | will be |
| 47. | The atomic structure is,, a miniatu | re so | olar system. | | |
| | A. as it were B. as if they were | C. | as it were | D. | as if are |
| 48. | We required that the machine parts | cast | t iron. | | |
| | A. is made of B. be made from | C. | be made of | D. | is made by |
| 49. | The management urged that the cost of produc | tion | · | | |
| | A. to be further reduced | В. | was further reduce | ed | |
| | C. be further reduced | D. should further reduced | | | |
| 50. | I wish our teacher to give another to | est. I haven't got prepared yet. | | | |
| | A. isn't going B. weren't going | C. | will not going | D. | could have gone |
| 51. | I'd just as soon rudely to her. | | | | |
| | A. that you won't speak | В. | your not speaking | | |
| | C. you not speak | D. | you didn't speak | | |
| 52. | It is required that the machine as fr | eque | ently as necessary. | | |
| | A. be oiled B. must be oiled | C. | is oiled | D. | will oil |
| 53. | His English teacher recommends that he | | a regular degree | prog | ram. |
| | A. begins B. begin | C. | will begin | D. | is beginning |
| 54. | We prefer that the plan before being | g pu | t into execution. | | |
| | A. is fully discussed | В. | must be fully disc | eusse | ed |
| | C. be fully discussed | D. | will be fully discu | isseo | d |

| 55. | What do you think of | his proposal th | at improveme | ents i | n the old type of vacu | um | |
|--------------|--|------------------|----------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|----|--|
| | cleaner? | | | | | | |
| | A. be made | | В. | will be made | | | |
| | C. would be made | | D. | will have to be | made | | |
| 56. | The doctor's advice is | that the patient | al | oout his real phys | sical condition. | | |
| | A. be not told | B. not be told | C. | will not be told | D. must not be told | | |
| 57. | They thought it desira | ble that an arme | ed guard | in readine | ss. | | |
| | A. stands | B. stand | C. | stood | D. would stand | | |
| 58. | The driver looked over | r the engine car | efully lest it | on the | way. | | |
| | A. goes wrong | B. go wrong | C. | went wrong | D. would go wrong | | |
| 59. | the fog, we | e should have re | eached our de | stination. | | | |
| | A. Because of | B. In spite of | C. | In case of | D. But for | | |
| 60. | He is working hard fo | r fear that he _ | to pa | ass the exam. | | | |
| | A. fails | B. may fail | C. | should fail | D. would fail | | |
| | Keys | | | | | | |
| | IXCJS | | | | | | |
| | 1—5 AACCB | 6—10 | DBBCB | 11—15 | D D B A D | | |
| | 16—20 B A A B D | 21—25 | C D D B A | 26—30 | ABBBD | | |
| | 31—35 B D B A C | 36—40 | ААСВВ | 41—45 | D C B C B | | |
| | 46—50 C C C C B | 51—55 | D A B C A | 56—60 | A B B D C | | |
| [,-] | | | | | | ` | |
| 1 | A rolling stone gathers no moss. | | | | | | |
| i | 滚石不生苔,转业不聚财。 As a man sows, so he shall reap. | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | .得瓜,种豆得 vor doog not me | | | 1 | |
| i | A single flower does not make a spring. 一花独放不是春,百花齐放春满园。 A snow year, a rich year. | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 瑞雪兆丰年。 | | | | | | |
| \ | | | | | | J | |
| | | | | | | | |

非谓语动词

第五节

概念: 非谓语动词指的是在句中起名词、形容词或副词作用的动词形式,而不是做谓语的动词形式。动词的非谓语形式分为动词不定式、动名词、分词。

○ 一、动词不定式: (Infinitive)

▶ 1. 定义及几种形式

动词不定式是英语中三种非谓语动词的一种,分带 to 的动词不定式和不带 to 的动词不定式两种。

动词不定式有以下几种形式:

| | 主动语态 | 被动语态 |
|-------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 一般式 | to study | to be studied |
| 进行式 | to be studying | |
| 完成式 | to have studied | to have been studied |
| 完成进行式 | to have been studying | |

- 1.1 一般式表示动作或状态与谓语动词表示的动作同时发生或在其之后发生。
- 如: I'm glad to see you. 很高兴见到你。 We hope to visit you someday. 我们希望有一天能去拜访你。
- 1.2 进行式表示在谓语动作发生时动词不定式的动作正在进行。
- 如: The train seems to be moving. 火车似乎在动。
 I'd rather read than watch TV. The programs seem to be getting worse all the time.
 我宁愿看书也不愿看电视,电视节目似乎越来越糟。
- 1.3 完成式表示动词不定式动作在谓语动作之前发生。
- 如: I'm sorry to have missed the film. 我很遗憾错过了那部电影。
 The ancient Egyptians are supposed to have sent rockets to the moon.
 古埃及人本想向月球发射火箭的。
- 1.4 完成进行式表示截至谓语动作发生之时,不定式的动作从过去某一时刻开始一直在进行。
 - 如: He is said to have been working instead of studying in the U. S. A. 据说他一直在工作,而不是在美国学习。

≥ 2. 动词不定式的主动语态与被动语态

当动词不定式的逻辑主语是动词不定式表示动作的承受者时用其被动语态,这时要看看句中有没有出现动词不定式动作的执行者。若有则用主动语态。若无则用被动语态。

看句中有没有出现动词不定式动作的执行者,若有则用主动语态,若无则用被动语态。如: The box is too heavy for me to carry. 这箱子太重,我搬不动。

No one hopes to be laughed at like that. 没有人希望像那样被人嘲笑。

Mr. Johnson preferred to be given heavier work to do. 约翰逊先生喜欢被委以重任。 不过,某些形容词后面的动词不定式通常用主动式表示被动含义。 English is very difficult to speak. 英语很难讲。

The magazine is interesting to read. 这本杂志读起来很有趣。

有时,动词不定式虽然用了主动形式,却表达被动意义。

如: I have a few words to say. 我有几句话要说。 English is difficult to learn. 英语很难学。

≫ 3. 动词不定式所做的成分

动词不定式不可以做谓语,但可以做主语、宾语、宾补、定语、表语、状语,还可以 有自己的逻辑主语。

- 3.1 动词不定式做主语
- ① 动词不定式直接做主语:

To hesitate means failure. 犹豫不决就意味着失败。

To do this is to cut the foot to fit the shoe.

这样做是削足适履。(主语和表语均用动词不定式)

For him to admit his mistakes is not easy. 要他承认错误是不容易的。(带逻辑主语)

To be working all day long is a bore. 整天干活使人厌倦。(动词不定式进行式)

To have known you is a privilege. 认识了你真是荣幸。(动词不定式完成式)

② 动词不定式做主语时常用 it 做形式主语 (但不可用 that 做形式主语),动词不定式则移至谓语之后,这种情况多见于口语中。**常见句型为:** It is/was + **形容词** + of/ for sb. + to do sth.。

动词不定式的逻辑主语一般由介词 for 引导。如果是表示人的性格品质、行为特征的形容词(kind, thoughtful, considerate, greedy, generous, honest, modest, polite, rude, cruel, selfish, lazy, wicked, wrong, foolish, wise, clever, careless, careful, courageous, brave, silly, stupid, good, nice等)做表语时动词不定式的逻辑主语由 of 引导。

It's difficult for her to answer such a complicated question in English.

对她来说很难用英语回答这样一个复杂的问题。

It is necessary for him to return the book immediately. 他有必要立刻把书还回来。

It's clever of you to have invented such a device. 你发明这样一个装置很聪明。

It's foolish of them to believe like this. 他们相信这件事很愚蠢。

- 3.2 动词不定式做宾语
- ① 后跟动词不定时做宾语的动词有: begin / start, manage, agree, refuse, plan, tend, try, pretend, fail, hope, wish, promise, choose, prepare, decided, afford, determine, aim, ask, claim, intend, attempt, expect, desire, guarantee, endeavor, long, mean, offer, pledge, proceed, prove, resolve, request, wait, would like。
 - 如: I meant to give you this book today but I forgot.

我本来打算今天给你这本书,可是我忘了。

The boys attempted to leave for camping but were stopped by their parents.

男孩们尝试离开这里去野营,但是被父母们阻止了。

- ② 后面省略 to 的动词不定式做宾语的短语有: had better / best (not) do, would rather do than do, rather than do, would sooner/would just as soon do, may/might as well do 等。
 - 如: Would rather die than surrender. 宁死不降。

Rather than run the risk of losing the job Johnson came to terms with them.

不愿意冒险丢掉工作,约翰逊对他们妥协了。

Since you've read the books we might as well sell them.

既然你已看过这些书了, 我们不如把它们卖了。

- ③ 某些特定动词 consider, know, imagine, think, remember, understand, learn, forget (表思维活动); see, hear, feel (感官动词) 等后面要求用"动词+wh-疑问副词+动词不定式"结构,也属于动词不定式做宾语。
 - 如: They asked how to get to the railway station. 他们问怎样去火车站。
 - 3.3 动词不定式做宾语补足语
- ① 用于"谓语动词+宾语+动词不定式"结构的动词有25个主要常用动词,易记口诀如下:

三个希望两答应, hope, wish, expect, agree, promise

两个要求莫拒绝。demand, ask, refuse

设法学会做决定, manage, learn, decide/determine

不要假装在选择。pretend, choose/select

打算提出两计划, intend, offer, plan, mean

申请失败负担起, apply, fail, afford

准备愿望又碰巧。prepare, desire, happen

另外还有动词: force/compel/oblige, tell, advise, convince, allow, require, beg, bear, cause, warn, promise, persuade, forbid, like, encourage, enable, order, permit, urge, remind, inform, invite, want 等。

如: Please remind me not to be late for the meeting. 请提醒我开会别迟到了。

His conscience compelled him to confess. 良心迫使他坦白。

The thief was forcing him to drive a bomb to Downing Street.

小偷强迫他送一颗炸弹去唐人街。

② 某些动词所带的复合宾语结构中,动词不定式结构要求是"谓语动词+宾语+to be...",如:类似的动词有: declare, discover, think, prove, suppose, find, know, imagine, judge, understand, consider等。

如: I know him to be a liar. 我知道他是个骗子。

I suppose him to be away from home. 我猜测他不在家。

I consider him (to be) my best friend. 我把他视为我最好的朋友。

说明: think, consider, find 后可省 to be。

We all think him dead. 我们都以为他死了。

- ③ 后接省略 to 的动词不定式做宾补的动词: 一感 feel; 二听 listen to, hear; 三让 make, let, have; 四看 see, watch, notice, observe; 半帮助 help。
 - 如: At first I was nervous but soon he made me feel at ease.

起初的时候我感觉很紧张, 但是不久他就让我感到很放松。

We observed the storekeeper close the door early that day.

我们观察到店主那天早早地关门了。

I enjoy helping my mother (to) do housework. 我很愿意帮妈妈做家务。

注意 被动语态中, to 不能省略。

He was seen to take the money. 有人看见他拿钱了。

He was made to leave school by his father's death. 他父亲的离世使得他不得不辍学。

- ④ 在下列结构后常用不带 to 的动词不定式: had better, would rather, do nothing but, why not。
 - 如: I'd better go now, or I'll miss the train. 我最好现在就走, 否则就赶不上火车了。

 If you'd rather be alone, we'll all leave here. 如果你宁愿独自待着, 那我们都离开这儿。
 - 3.4 动词不定式做定语

动词不定式做定语可修饰名词、代词。具体用法可分以下几种:

- ① 被修饰的名词前有序数词、形容词最高级或 next, last, only 等限定词时常用动词不定式做后置定语。
 - 如: He was the first man to set foot on the moon. 他是第一位登上月球的人。 She is the only one to survive the crash. 她是这次失事中唯一的幸存者。
- ②常常用动词不定式做定语的名词: ability (能力), ambition (志向), anxiety (期望), attempt (尝试), curiosity (好奇心), decision (决定), desire (愿望), disposition (意向), failure (未能), freedom (自由), inclination (爱好, 倾向), mind (愿望), obligation (义务), offer (主动提供), permission (允许), plan (计划), promise (许诺), refusal (拒绝), reluctance (不愿), temptation (诱惑), tendency (倾向), willingness (愿意), wish (愿望), yearning (渴望)等。
 - 如: A characteristic of the camel is its ability to live for a long time without water. 骆驼的特点是不喝水也能活很长时间。

His ambition to become the world swimming champion was understandable.

他想成为世界游泳冠军的野心是可以理解的。

Her anxiety to go was obvious. 她想去是很明显的。

All their attempts to reach the summit failed.

他们攀登顶峰的所有尝试都失败了。

My teacher influenced my decision to study science.

我的老师对我学理科的决定起了影响作用。

His desire to do it blinded him to all the difficulties.

他想做那件事的欲望使他看不到所有的困难。

There was a general disposition to ignore the problem. 人们一般都忽视了这个问题。

His failure to react quickly enough caused the crash.

他由于反应不够迅速而导致了撞车。

动词不定式做定语与被修饰的中心词之间存在逻辑上的主谓关系、动宾关系、同位关系或动状关系。

如: Attention, please. I have a few words to say. (动宾关系)

请注意,我说几句话。

He is always the first person to come. (主谓关系)

他总是第一个到达的人。

Their decision to give up the experiment surprised us. (同位关系)

他们放弃这个实验的决定使我们吃惊。

We need somewhere to sleep. (动状关系)

我们需要睡觉的地方。

- ③ 若该动词不定式中的动词是不及物动词时,动词不定式结尾表示动宾关系的介词不要去掉。
 - 如: I haven't got a chair to sit on. 我没有椅子坐。 Children use pencils to write with. 孩子们用铅笔写字。
 - ④ "介词 + which + 动词不定式"这一结构也可以做定语, which 代替前面的中心词。
 - 如: I believe that is a proper standard by which to judge people.

我认为那是衡量人的一个合适的标准。

You have a number of topics from which to choose. 你有许多题目可以选择。

- 3.5 动词不定式做表语
- ① 通常说明或解释主语的内容,表示目的,也可表示将来的动作。
- 如: The next step is to make sure that you know exactly what is required.

下一步你要弄清楚你真正需要的是什么。

My dream is to become a teacher. 我的梦想是当一名老师。

The purpose of education is to develop a fine personality in children.

教育的目的是发展儿童完美的品格。

- ② "be + to do sth."表示按计划安排要做的事或表示命令、要求或用来征求意见。
- 如: We are to meet at the school gate at six. 我们打算 6 点钟在学校门口会面。 The highway is to be opened in October. 高速路于 10 月份开通。
- ③可用主动形式表示被动意义。
- 如: She is to blame. 她应该受到责备。

A great deal is yet to do. 还有许多事要做。

Something is still to find out. 有些东西还有待查明。

- 3.6 动词不定式做状语
- 一般来说动词不定式在句中通常做目的、原因和结果状语。
- ① 动词不定式做目的状语可以放在句首,也可以放在句末。放在句首时,需要用逗号与句子隔开,放在句末时不需要隔开。
 - 如: To catch the first bus, Li Lei started out early.

为了赶上早班公共汽车,李雷很早就出发了。

Mom opened the window to let some fresh air in. 妈妈敞开窗户通风。

注意为了强调,目的状语可以用 in order to do 或者 so as to do。in order to do 放在句子前后均可,而 so as to do 只能放在句子后面。

如: He went there early so as to / in order to get a good seat. 他去那里很早,以便找到个好座位。

In order to get a good seat, he went there early.

为了找个好座位, 他很早到那里。

In order not to wake the baby we went in quietly.

为了不吵醒小孩,我们轻轻地走了进去。

- ②原因状语往往要放在表示人的喜、怒、哀、乐等情感的形容词或分词之后: anxious, eager, dangerous, pleasant/happy/pleased/glad, hard, easy, difficult, strange, surprised, ready, likely, sure, certain, sorry, bored, usual, common, useless, lucky/fortunate, prepared, supposed 等, 用在"be + adj. + to do"结构中, 注意不要用逗号隔开。
 - 如: That is not likely to happen. 这种情况不太可能发生。

He was fortunate enough to have a good income. 他很幸运,有很好的收入。

It is useless to argue with them. 和他们争论是没有用的。

I am glad to see you. 我很高兴见到你。

Many people are content to live a simple life. 许多人满足于过简单的生活。

He was supposed to have left for Italy last week. 他本该上周去意大利的。

③ 动词不定式做结果状语,注意下面几种情况: only to do 表示"出人意料、意想不到的结果"。

如: We hurried to the railway station only to find the train had left. 我们匆匆忙忙赶到火车站、却发现火车开走了。

enough to do, too...to do 结构,这两个结构可以换用。

如: The boy isn't old enough to go to school. = The boy is too young to go to school.

在 so (such)...as to do 结构中, 意为: "如此……以致……"。

如: I am not such a fool as to believe a cheat. 我非常傻,相信一个骗子。 He is so kind as to help the old lady off the bus. 他非常善良,帮助一位老妇人下公交车。

- ④ 一般说来不定式做状语的逻辑主语必须是主句主语,主句主语和不定式的动词之间存在着动作上的主谓和动宾关系。因此不定式短语做状语可以转化为相应的状语从句。
 - 如: In order not to be heard they talked in a low voice. =

They talked in a low voice in order that (so that) they should not be heard. (目的状语) 为了不被听见,他们说话的声音很低。

Many people are content to live a simple life. = Because many people live a simple life, they are content. (原因状语)

因为很多人过着简单的生活、所以他们很容易满足。

His father went to Taiwan in 1949, never to be heard from. =

His father went to Taiwan in 1949 so that he wasn't be heard from. (结果状语) 他的父亲 1949 年去了台湾,因此他再也没有收到父亲的来信。

≥ 4 . 含有 but 的句型:

- 4.1 There is / have nothing to do but do, (can) do nothing but do, have no alternative/choice but to do 意思为"除了做……别无选择", but 前有 do, but 后的不定式省略 to; but 前没有 do, but 后的不定式带 to, 即:有 do 省 to,没 do 带 to。
 - 如: He does nothing but wait. / He did nothing but wait. (有 do 无 to) 他除了等,什么也不做。

I have nothing to do but sleep all the time. (有 do 无 to)

我除了睡觉,没有别的事可做。

I have nothing to deal with but to read the newspaper. (没有 do 要加 to)

我除了看报纸,没有什么要处理的。

He had no alternative/choice but to agree. 他别无选择,只好同意。

There is no choice but to wait. 除了等待,别无选择。

4.2 can't but do 意思为 "不得不"; can't help but do (= can't help doing sth.) 意思为 "禁不住,忍不住,情不自禁"。

如: She can't but do the housework. 她不得不做家务。

She can't help but wonder what he was thinking. 她不禁琢磨他在想些什么。

He is so poor and has no choice but to drop school.

他太穷了,没有别的选择,只有辍学了。

≥ 5. 句型转换:

句型 "It is said/reported/thought/supposed that sb..." 可以转换成

(to do (现在和将来时态)

sb. is said/reported/thought/supposed to be doing (正在进行时态) to have done (过去时态)

用例句分析该句型的转换:

They say that Mary is very happy in London. (宾语从句) 他们说玛丽在伦敦很幸福。

- = It is said that Mary is very happy in London. (主语从句, it 是形式主语, that 是主语从句的连接词, Mary 是真正的主语) 据说玛丽在伦敦很幸福。
- = Mary is said to be very happy in London. (简单句, to be very happy in London 是主语补足语。) 据说玛丽在伦敦很幸福。

It is said that he is rich. = He is said to be rich. 据说他很富有。

It is believed that he is living aboard. =

He is believed to be living abroad. 据说他一直生活在国外。

It is said that he has moved to Chicago. =

He is said to have moved to Chicago. 据说他搬到了芝加哥。

It is known that the book has been translated into ten languages. =

The book is known to have been translated into ten languages.

众所周知,那本书被翻译成了10种语言。

- **▶ 6**. 独立的动词不定式具有插入语的性质,表示说话人的态度或看法。下面是常见用作插入语的动词不定式短语:
 - to be brief 简单地说
 - to be frank with you 坦白地对你说
 - to be honest 诚实地说
 - to be precise 准确地说
 - to do one justice 公平地说
 - to speak candidly 坦率地说
 - to make matters worse 更糟糕的是
 - to make a long story short 简单说/长话短说
 - to cut a long story short 简单地说

- to be sure 的确; 当然
- to be fair 说句公道话:公平而论
- to be truthful 诚实地说
- to tell/say/speak the truth 老实说/坦白地说
- to begin / start with 首先

to sum up 总之 to put it briefly 简而言之 so to speak 可以说 to put it mildly 说得委婉些 to put it another way 换个说法

To tell the truth, that is all I know about him. 说实话,这是我对他的全部了解。
To begin with, I would like to talk about my new plan. 首先,我想谈谈我的新计划。

> 7. there to be 结构

there be 的非谓语形式有两种,即 there to be 和 there being。

7.1 做主语

当作主语时,一般是 there being 结构,当句式中有 for 时,一般用 there to be。 There being a shop here is a great advantage. 这儿有个商店,真是方便极了。 It is impossible for there to be any more. 不可能再有了。

7.2 做宾语

如果是动词宾语,要看这个动词,我们学过有些动词后面只能接动名词,比如 mind, enjoy, appreciate 等词后面是必须加 doing 的形式;而这些动词同样适用于 there being,不能用 there to be。有些动词只能接不定式的,如 want, hope, would like 等,后面就接 there to be。常见动词有: expect, mean, intend want, prefer 等。

I don't mind there being a picture on the wall. 我不介意墙上有幅画。

We expect there to be no argument. 我们希望没有争吵。

Would you like there to be a picture on the wall? 你喜欢墙壁上挂一张画吗?

We don't want there to be any comrade lagging behind. 我们不希望任何一个同志掉队。

注意 做介词的宾语一般用 there being 句式,但当在 for 后时一般用 there to be 句式。

This depended on there being a sudden change. 需要有一个突然的改变。

The teacher was waiting for there to be complete silence.

老师在等着大家都安静下来。

They planned on there being another meeting. 他们打算再开一次会。

There is now some hope of there being a settlement of the dispute.

现在还有点希望可以解决这次争端。

7.3 做状语

用作状语的 there be 的形式通常用 there being 结构。

如: There being no buses, we had to walk home.

由于没有公共汽车, 我们不得不走着回家。

There being no nobody in the room, we realized that there was no use crying. 屋里没人,我们意识到哭喊是没有用的。

注意 如果句中出现 for 时应用 there to be。

It was too late for there to be any buses. 太晚了,没有公共汽车了。

7.4 用在 It be + adj. for...的结构中,只能接 there to be。

It is impossible for there to be any more chance. 不可能再有机会了。

It was too late for there to be any buses. 时间太晚,不会有公共汽车了。

We waited for there to be another opportunity. 我们期待着下一次机会。

○ 二、动名词 (Gerund)

英语中的动名词是由动词变化而来,它仍一方面保留着动词的某些特征,具有动词的某些变化形式,用以表达名词所不能表达的较为复杂的意念,另一方面动名词在句子的用法及功能与名词类似:在句子中可以做主语、宾语、表语、定语。它也可以被副词修饰或者用来支配宾语。它分为一般式和完成式,列表如下:

| | 主动语态 | 被动语态 |
|-----|-------------|------------------|
| 一般式 | doing | being done |
| 完成式 | having done | having been done |

> 1. 动名词的时态意义:

1.1 一般式:表示与谓语动词表示的动作同时发生或在其之后发生。

如: I am thinking of getting a new dictionary. (以后或将来)

我在考虑买一本新字典。

She is proud of being beautiful. (同时)

她对自己的容貌很自豪。

I approved of his taking part in the project. (同时或以后)

我同意他参加这个项目。

1.2 完成式:表示动作在谓语动作之前发生。

如: He gives people the impression of having spent all his life abroad.

他给人们这样一种印象:在国外生活了一辈子。

He denied having been there. 他拒绝在那儿。

≥ 2 . 动名词的被动语态:

动名词的主动语态表示主动行为,被动语态表示被动行为,动作的逻辑主语一般都可 以在句中找到。

2.1 被动式: 当动名词的逻辑主语是动名词动作的对象时, 该动名词要求用被动式。

如: I still remember being taken to the zoo for the first time.

我仍然记得第一次被带去动物园的时光。

He doesn't like being flattered. 他不喜欢被奉承。

- 2.2 完成被动式:兼有完成和被动双重特点。
- 如: I appreciated having been given the opportunity to study abroad two years ago. 我很感激有在国外学习两年的机会。

I heard of his having been chosen to be the coach of the team. 我听说他被选为这个队的教练。

罗3. 动名词可充当的句子成分:主语、宾语和表语。

- 3.1 动名词做主语
- ① 直接置于句首时谓语动词用单数。
- 如: Smoking is bad for health. 吸烟有害健康。
 Saying is easier than doing. 说着容易做着难。
- ② 做主语时常用于下列固定句型, it 是形式主语, 动名词是句子的真正主语。
- 如: It's no good/use/point doing...做……没有好处/用处。

There is no point /use/sense / harm(in) doing...做...没有用处/意义/坏处。 It's a waste of time doing...做……浪费时间。

It is no use crying over spilt milk. =

There is no point in crying over spilt milk.

对着洒了的牛奶哭泣是没有用的。(覆水难收。)

There is no point memorizing the theory without putting it into practice.

只记住理论而不将之付诸实践是没有意义的。

It's a mere waste of time discussing such questions.

讨论这些问题只不过是浪费时间而已。

3.2 动名词做宾语

- ① 常接动名词做宾语的动词有: admit 承认, avoid 避免, deny 否认, enjoy 享受, finish 完成, practice 练习、实践, resent 憎恨, anticipate 期望, appreciate 欣赏, suggest/propose 建议, keep 保持、坚持, escape 逃脱、逃离, mind 介意, dislike 不喜欢, resist 坚持, risk 冒险做……, involve 包含, 包括、涉及, permit 允许, favor 喜欢、赞成, postpone 耽搁, 延迟, delay 耽搁, 延迟, can't help 禁不住、忍不住, consider 考虑等。
 - 如: We do not permit smoking here. 此处禁止吸烟。

The students anticipate having a good time in Jinan. 学生们期望在济南玩得愉快。 He narrowly escaped being killed in the fire. 他从火灾中死里逃生。

I'm considering going abroad someday. 我一直考虑有一天出国。

② 常接动名词做宾语的动词短语有: can't stand, can't help, feel like (想做), leave

off, put off, keep on, give up, object to, contribute to, devote to, look forward to, fall to, resort to, lead to, add to, conform to, be accustomed to / be used to, be opposed to, be contrary to, attach importance to, in addition to, stick to, thanks to, the way/approach/solution/key to 等。

如: However, others strongly object to developing private cars.

不过, 其他人强烈反对发展私家车。

After he has retired, he will devote himself to gardening. 退休后,他将要致力于园艺。 He is accustomed to getting up early. 他习惯了早起。

The key to leading a meaningful life is to study every day.

过有意义生活的关键是每天学习。

I don't feel like walking very much today. 我今天不太想散步。

注意 这些短语后跟动名词的条件是在句子中做谓语,否则另当别论。如:

The train I'm looking forward to arrived two minutes ago.

- ③ 在复合句中,用 it 做形式宾语,将动名词短语放到后面。
- 如: I consider it a waste of time arguing about it. 我认为讨论这件事是浪费时间。
 He thought it absolutely senseless attempting the impossible.
 想做不可能做到的事,他认为是完全没有道理的。
- ④ 下列句型需要使用动名词做宾语:

have difficulty/trouble/problem (in) + doing

have fun/pleasure/a hard time /a good time + (in) doing

spend time/money(in) + doing

waste time(in) + doing

lose time(in) + doing

be busy(in) + doing

如: Students growing up from nursery school to college have trouble dealing with realities. 从幼儿园的小朋友到大学生在如何应付现实生活上都存在困难。

They had a hard time walking out of the grassland. 他们很难走出草原。

Don't lose time in doing your homework. 抓紧时间做作业吧。

He is busy preparing for the coming exams. 他正忙着准备即将到来的考试。

⑤ 动词 allow, advise, forbid, permit, recommend 等后可用动名词做宾语, 但若有人做间接宾语时,则后面用动词不定式。试比较:

We do not allow smoking in the lecture room. 报告厅里不允许吸烟。

We do not allow people to smoke in the lecture room. 报告厅里不允许吸烟。

I recommend going by subway. 我建议坐地铁去。

The doctor recommended Li Ming to take a few days' rest. 医生建议李明休息几天。

- ⑥ 在 need, want, require, deserve, demand, be worth 后面可用动名词或不定式做宾语, 但用动名词做宾语时, 用主动形式表达被动含义; 使用不定式做宾语时, 依然用被动形式表达被动含义。试比较:
 - 如: The book deserves mentioning. = The book deserves to be mentioned. 这本书值一提。
 The child wants looking after. = The child wants to be looked after. 这孩子需要照顾。
 The flower needs watering. = The flower needs to be watered. 这朵花需要浇水。
 - (7) 有些动词后面可以接不定式和动名词, 意义有变化:

如: What upset Linda is that her husband always forgets to buy her a present on her birthday. 让琳达伤心的是她丈夫总是忘了给她买生日礼物。(没买礼物)

The father forgot buying a present for his little son and bought another.

这位父亲忘记给他的小儿子买过礼物了,又买了另一个。(已经买过,忘了)

I regret having to turn down your proposal. 我很后悔拒绝你的建议。

I regret to say I can't go with you. 我很遗憾地跟你说我不能跟你一起去。

You don't mean to resign at once, do you? 你不打算立即辞职,是吗?

His silence to my request means refusing. 他对我的请求保持沉默就意味着拒绝。

3.3 动名词做表语

用来表示主语的内容。

如: My hobby is collecting stamps. 我的爱好是集邮。
The only thing that interests her is dancing. 她唯一感兴趣的是跳舞。
Seeing is believing. 眼见为实。

≥ 4 . 动名词的复合结构

动名词和它的逻辑主语构成了动名词复合结构。动名词的逻辑主语是代词时要用形容词性的物主代词:表示有生命的名词就用名词的所有格。

如: I don't mind your delaying making the decision as long as it is not too late. (物主代词) 我不介意你拖拖拉拉地做决定,只要还不是太晚。

Tom's refusing to accept the invitation upsets me. (名词的所有格)

汤姆拒绝接受邀请、让我很难过。

My father's falling ill worried mother greatly. 我父亲生病了, 我母亲非常担心。

I object to his (him) making private calls on the office phone.

我反对他用办公室电话打私人电话。

I don't like their (them) shouting at me. 我不喜欢他们对我大喊大叫。

确定逻辑主语的格的形式时须注意以下几点:

- ① 动名词复合结构做主语时一般用名词所有格或物主代词。
- 如: Nixon's visiting China marked a new era between U.S. and China diplomatic relations. 尼克松访问中国标志着中美外交关系进入一个新的时代。
- ② 在口语和非正式语体中,只要不是做主语,动名词复合结构中的逻辑主语常采用名词通格或人称代词宾格。
 - 如: The doctor does not mind me/my eating a little meat occasionally. 医生并不反对我偶尔吃一点肉。
 - ③ 如果逻辑主语是一个短语或有修饰语,一般用名词通格或人称代词的宾格的形式。
 - 如: The teacher insisted on the boy who threw the eraser apologizing. 老师坚持要那个扔掉橡皮的男孩道歉。

I insist on both of them coming in time. 我坚持要他们两个人准时来。

Do you remember Mary and her mother coming to see us last year? 你还记得去年玛丽和她妈妈来看我们吗?

- ④ 有生命的事物名词做逻辑主语时一般采用通格形式。
- 如: The suggestion of the meeting being put off was not adopted by the chairman. 延期召开会议的建议没有被主席采纳。

> 5. 介词 + 动名词 on /upon doing sth. 刚一做某事 (就……)

相当于 as soon as 引导的时间状语从句。

- 如: On arriving at the village, these college students went to help the farmers with their work.
 - = As soon as they arrived at the village, these college students went to help the farmers with their work.
 - 一到达村庄,这些大学生们就去帮农民们干活。

Upon going out of the room, Jack heard his cellphone ringing.

= As soon as he went out of the room, Jack heard his cellphone ringing. 刚走出房间, 杰克就听见他的电话响了。

≥ 6 . 连词 + 动名词

once doing 一旦做某事,相当于 once 引导的条件状语从句,可以看作是 once 条件状语从句的省略。

Once making a promise, you should try your best to fulfil it.

- = Once you have made a promise, you should try your best to fulfil it.
- 一旦你做出承诺, 就应该尽全力履行承诺。

注意 1. 使用 on/upon doing 和 once doing sth. 必须注意,后面句子主语就是前面 doing 动作的发出者。

2. 当后面句子主语与 once 后面的动词动作是被动关系时, 经常使用过去分词。如:

Once bitten, twice shy. 一朝被蛇咬十年怕井绳。

● 三、分词 (Participle)

分词是非谓语动词的三种限定形式之一,分为两种:现在分词 (-ing 分词)和过去分词 (-ed 分词)。

▶ 1. 分词的分类和构成形式:

现在分词的形式是"动词原形 + ing"; 规则动词的过去分词在动词原形后面加"-ed"。 分词否定式的构成是在分词前加 not。

如: running water 自来水

dripping taps 滴着水的水龙头

the exploited 被剥削阶级

fallen leaves 落叶

Not wanting to continue my service in the plant, I joined the army.

我不想继续在那家工厂做事、就入伍了。

≥2. 与动词不定式一样,分词也具有动词的特征,有时态和语态的变化。现在分词时态和语态的变化:

| | 主动 | 被动 | |
|-----|-------------|------------------|--|
| 一般式 | doing | being done | |
| 完成式 | having done | having been done | |

- 2.1 一般式说明分词表示的动作和句中谓语动词同时或之后发生。
- 如: Arriving at the station, he found the train had left. 到达车站时,他发现火车已经离开了。
- 2.2 完成式 having done 表示分词动作发生在句中谓语动作之前且具有主动意义。
- 如: Having completed one task, we start on another one.

完成一个任务之后, 我们开始了另一个任务。

Not having tried his best, he failed in the exam. 由于没有尽力,他考试不及格。

Having failed twice, he did not want to try again.

已经失败了两次,他不想再试一次。

Having dressed myself, I went to the office. 我穿好衣服, 去了办公室。

- 2.3 完成被动式 having been done,表示分词动作发生在句中谓语动作之前且有被动意义。
- 如: Having been badly damaged by the earthquake, the city had to be rebuilt.

城市被地震严重破坏, 需要重建。

Having been written in haste, the essay was not worth reading.

这篇文章写得仓促,不值得一读。

Having been beaten seriously, the enemy retreated. 敌人受严重打击,撤退了。

> 3. 可充当的句子成分:

分词具有动词的特征,同时又具有形容词和副词的特征,因而它在句中可以做定语、 表语、宾语补足语和状语等。

3.1 分词做定语

① 分词做定语时,现在分词与被修饰词之间有主动意义;过去分词与被修饰词之间有被动意义,其作用相当于一个定语从句。

如: A man getting up as soon as the cock crows is a hard-working man. =

A man who is getting up as soon as the cock crows is a hard-working man.

鸡鸣即起的人是勤奋的人。

Those living on a mountain live off the mountain. =

Those who are living on a mountain live off the mountain. 靠山吃山。

Money spent on the brain is never spent in vain. =

Money that/which is spent on the brain is never spent in vain.

智力投资永远也不会徒劳无益。

A word that/which was spoken is an arrow let fly. 说出的话就像射出去的箭, 收不回来了。

- ② 分词短语做后置定语时,也有非限制性的,对中心词做进一步附加说明,相当于一个非限制性定语从句,用逗号与中心词隔开。
 - 如: This book, written in simple English, is suitable for beginners. =

This book, which is written in simple English, is suitable for beginners.

本书是用浅显的英文写的、适合初学者。

This book, dealing with English composition, was written by a professor. =

This book, which deals with English composition, was written by a professor.

这本书讲英语写作, 是一位教授写的。

All the letters in the drawer, written in pencil, are from my brother.

抽屉里所有用铅笔写的信都是我哥哥写的。

3.2 分词做表语

下列系动词: be, get, become, look, sound, feel, keep, remain, grow, seem, appear 等后常用分词做表语。而作表语用的分词,许多是由能够表示人们某种感情或情绪的动词变化而来的。常见的分词如下:

现在分词: moving, interesting, encouraging, exciting, inspiring, boring, surprising,

puzzling, amusing, astonishing, missing, promising 等。

过去分词: moved, interested, discouraged, amused, astonished, frighten, excited, inspired, pleased, satisfied, tired, worried, completed, delighted, hurt, married, crowded 等。

- ① 现在分词做表语:一般表主动或主语的性质和特征。含有"令人……"的意思。主语多数情况下是物。
- ② 过去分词做表语:一般表被动或主语所处的状态。含有"感到……"的意思。主语多数情况下是人。

The theory sounds quite convincing. 这个理论听起来可信。

This book is interesting. 这本书很有趣。

We are interested in the book. 我们对这本书感兴趣。

The news sounds encouraging. 这个消息听起来令人鼓舞。

They got very excited. 他们非常激动。

His father seems pleased with his results. 他父亲似乎对他的成绩满意。

The door remained locked. 门锁着。

The situation proves encouraging. 形势是令人鼓舞的。

The music is much pleasing to the ear. 音乐优美悦耳。

She seems unthinking. 她看上去漫不经心。

3.3 分词做宾语补足语

分词只能在两类动词后做宾补:感觉、感官动词和使役、致使动词。现在分词表示正 在进行的主动意义,过去分词则表示已经完成的被动意义。

- ① 常用的感觉、感官动词有: see, observe, watch, hear, smell, listen to, look at, feel, find 等。
 - 如: She smelt something burning. 她闻到了糊味。

He heard his name called. 他听见 (别人) 叫他的名字。

I can hear a cat scratching at the window.我能听见猫在窗子上抓挠玻璃的声音。

She felt a great load taken off her mind. 她觉得思想上去掉了一个负担。

I found those students studying very hard. 我发现那些学生学习很刻苦。

She saw the thief caught by policeman. 我看见小偷被警察抓住了。

He noticed a woman in a black dress sitting across from him.

他注意到一个穿着黑色裙子的女人坐在他对面。

- ② 常用的致使、使役动词有: have, make, get, set, catch, start, leave, keep 等。
- 如: Many youngsters have their hair colored. 很多年轻人染发。

The boss had Tom running upstairs and downstairs all the time.

老板总是让汤姆楼上楼下跑个不停。

She still could not make herself understood in English.

她仍然不能用英语表达自己的意思。

He managed to get it done on time. 他设法按时完成了任务。

The joke set them all laughing. 这个笑话逗得他们哈哈大笑。

The teacher often caught him dozing off in class. 老师经常发现他在课堂上打瞌睡。

- ③ 做宾语补足语的分词如果表示正在发生的被动动作,前面要加 being。
- 如: She saw the wounded man being carried into the hospital.

她看见那个受伤的人正被送往医院。

He found himself being followed by a wolf. 他发现自己被一只狼跟着。

We watch the house being pulled down. 我们看着房子被拆毁。

④ 分词做宾补的特殊情况, make, set 的用法:

make 后的宾语补语只能用过去分词,不能用现在分词。

如: The teacher raised his voice so that he could make himself heard.

老师提高了嗓门,以便别人能听到他说话。

Can you easily make yourself understood in English?

你能用英语轻易地表达你的思想吗?

A statesman can make his influence felt through his speech and action.

政治家可以通过演讲和行动来发挥他的影响力。

He made the driver waiting for him outside. (误)

He had the driver waiting for him outside. (正)

他让司机在外面等他。

set 后的宾语补语通常是现在分词,不用过去分词(使行动起来做某事)。

如: Her words set me thinking deeply. 他的话使我陷入沉思。

His action set her wondering. 他的行为让她不解。

You can set each group repeating the sentence after you.

你可以让每个小组轮流跟你读这个句子。

3.4 分词做状语

分词做状语时句子的主语也是分词的逻辑主语,一般需要用逗号同其他成分隔开。分词可以做时间、原因、结果、让步、条件、方式和伴随等状语。

- ① 做时间状语相当于 when 引导的从句,这类状语通常放在句子的前半部分。
- 如: Hearing the news, they immediately set off for Shanghai.
 - = When they heard the news, they immediately set off for Shanghai.
 - 一听到这个消息,他们立刻出发去了上海。

Seen from the pagoda, the south foot of the Purple Mountain is a sea of trees.

从宝塔望去,紫金山南麓是一片林海。

Coming awake in the dark, I found myself lying in a strange house.

我在黑暗中醒来,发现自己躺在一所陌生的房子里。

注意: 若两个动作同时发生, 可在分词前用 when 或 while 表示强调。

When leaving the airport, they waved again and again to us.

离开机场时,他们向我们频频挥手致意。

② **做原因状语**相当于 as, since, because 引导的从句。这类状语多放在句子的前半部分。

如: Overcome with surprise, she was unable to utter a word.

她惊讶得说不出话来。

Being Sunday, the shops are overcrowded. =

As it was Sunday, the shops are overcrowded.

因为是星期日, 商店里人满为患。

Done in a hurry, his homework was full of mistakes.

做得很匆忙,他的家庭作业错误百出。

The doctor, not wanting to make the patient nervous, did not explain the seriousness of his illness. 医生不想使病人紧张,他没有解释病情的严重性。

③ 做结果状语相当于 so ... that 引导的从句:这类状语通常放在句子的后半部分。

如: He is always worrying about trifles, losing sight of his main objectives.

他总是担心琐事,失去了人生的主要目标。

He turned off the lamp, (thereby) seeing nothing.

他把灯关了, 所以什么也没看见。

A number of new machines were introduced from abroad, (thus) resulting in an increase in production. 从国外引进了很多新机器,因此产量增加了。

④ 做让步状语相当于 though, even if 等引导的从句。

Admitting what she has said, I still think that she hasn't tried her best. =

Although I admit what she has said, I still think that she hasn't tried her best.

虽然我承认她说了些什么,但我仍然认为她没有尽最大努力。

Wounded, the brave soldier continued to fight.

尽管受伤了, 勇敢的战士仍然继续战斗。

⑤ **做条件状语**相当于 if, unless 等引导的从句:

常见的引导条件状语的分词有: given, supposing (suppose), considering, provided, assuming 等。

如: Given another chance, I'll do it much better. =

If I am given another chance, I'll do it much better.

如果再给我一次机会,我会做得更好。

Supposing he is out, what shall we do? 假如他不在, 我们怎么办?

Considering the strength of the opponents, we did very well to score two goals.

考虑到对手的实力, 我们能进两个球就很好了。

I will lend the money to you provided that you return it next month.

如果你下个月还我,我就把钱借给你。

Assuming that you get a place at university, how are you going to finance your studies? 假设你在大学里找到了一个地方,你打算怎样支付你的学费?

Turning to the right, you will find a path leading to his cottage.

向右边走, 你会找到一条通向他小屋的小路。

- ⑥ 做方式或伴随情况状语时不能用状语从句替换,但可以写成并列句。
- 如: He walked down the hill, singing softly to himself. =

He walked down the hill and sing softly to himself. 他走下山去,轻轻地唱着歌。

He hurried to the hall, followed by two guards. =

He hurried to the hall and was followed by two guards.

他匆忙赶到大厅, 后面跟着两个卫兵。

She stood at the window watching the sunset. 她站在窗前看日落。

Love is a beautiful song, bringing us wild joy and happiness.

爱是一首美丽的歌, 带给我们欢乐和幸福。

He lay on the river bank, feeling the warmth of the sun against his face.

他躺在河岸上, 感受到温暖的太阳照射在他的脸上。

The deer silently crossed the fields, half hidden in the mists of the fall mornings.

小鹿静静地走过田野, 隐没在秋日清晨的薄雾中。

- ⑦ 分词短语做状语时,有时前面可用一个连词表示强调,或出于表达需要,常用的连词: when, while, after, before, if, though, whether...or, unless, as if 等。
 - 如: When compared with the size of the whole earth, the highest mountain in the world is not high. = When it is compared with the size of the whole earth, the highest mountain in the world is not high.

与整个地球的大小相比,世界上最高的山也就并不高了。

After taking the medicine, she felt better. = After she took the medicine, she felt better. 吃了药后,她感觉好些了。

Whether sleeping or walking, he always thinks of her.

无论是睡觉还是走路, 他总是想起她。

Although born a girl, she was treated as a boy. 尽管她是个女孩, 但被当作男孩对待。

The river is flowing peacefully, as if murmuring a never-ending story.

河水静静地流淌着, 仿佛在诉说一个永不停息的故事。

The man will die unless operated on at once. 除非马上动手术, 否则他会死的。如果这些连词后的分词是 being 或含有 being,则 being 常常省略。

如: When (being) alone, she will think of the past. 当她独自一个人时, 她会想起过去。 Though (being) a wealthy man, John is always plain-dressed.

约翰虽然是个有钱人,但总是衣着朴素。

As if (being) frightened, the horses began to run like mad.

马好像受惊了, 像疯了似的开始乱跑。

注意 一般情况下,做状语的分词的逻辑主语就是句子的主语。试判断:

1. Turning around, an old woman was seen walking towards the river. (误) Turning around, we saw an old woman walking towards the river. (正) 转过身,我们看见一位老妇人朝河边走去。

在第一句中,分词短语 turning around 的逻辑主语显然不是句子的主语,即 turning around 这个动作根据句意不可能是 an old man 发出的,因此用法不当。

再比较:

- 2. Seen from the hilltop, he was delighted to see a wonderland. (误) Seen from the hilltop, the valley looked like a wonderland. (正) 从山顶上看,山谷像一个仙境。
- 3. When using this machine, the instructions must be read first. (误) When using this machine, you/we must read the instructions first. (正) 在使用这台机器时,你/我们必须先阅读说明书。

≥ 4 . 分词的独立结构

分词做状语时,其逻辑主语与句子的主语应该一致。否则,分词应有自己的逻辑主语,构成分词的独立结构,也叫独立主格。做状语时可以表示时间、原因、条件、方式或伴随情况等。

- 4.1 逻辑主语 + 现在分词,这种结构表示主动意义。
- 如: Weather/Time permitting, we shall go there on foot. (表条件, = If weather/time permits, we shall go there on foot.) 如果天气/时间允许, 我们步行去那里。

Mary coming back, they discussed it together. (表时间, = When Mary come back...) 玛丽回来的时候,他们一起讨论了这个问题。

Nobody having any more to say, the meeting was closed. (表原因, = Since nobody had any more to say...) 没有人再发言了,会议结束了。

She walked along the path, her daughter following close behind. (表伴随情况, = ... and her daughter followed close behind.) 她沿着小路走, 女儿跟在她的后面。

Alice looked up at her father, tears pouring down her face.

爱丽丝抬头看着她的父亲, 眼泪顺着脸流下来。

John being away, she became a bit frightened. 约翰不在,她开始有些害怕。

The heavy frost coming on, dead leaves lay thick on the ground.

枯叶落尽, 白霜将至。

- 4.2 逻辑主语+过去分词,这种结构表示被动意义。
- 如: This done, they went home. (表时间, = When this was done...) 事情做完了, 他们回家了。

Everything/All taken into consideration, his plan seems to be more workable.

(表条件, = If everything/all is considered...)

所有事情考虑在内, 他的计划似乎更可行。

Good luck given, I will earn more money than all of you.

(表条件, = If good luck is given... = Given good luck...)

给我好运气, 我会比你们所有人挣的钱都多。

- 4.3 逻辑主语 + 分词的完成式或分词的完成被动式,这种结构表示先完成动作的主动意义或先完成动作的被动意义。
 - 如: The moon having risen, they took a walk in the fields. (表时间, = When the moon had risen...) 月亮升起来了, 他们在田野里散步。

The earthquake having destroyed everything, they became homeless.

(表原因, = Because the earthquake had destroyed everything...)

地震摧毁了一切、他们无家可归。

So much money having been wasted, he will be punished.

(表原因, = Because so much money has been wasted...)

这么多钱被浪费了, 他会受到惩罚的。

All flights having been cancelled because of the snowstorm, we decided to take the train. 由于暴风雪,所有航班都取消了,我们决定乘坐火车。

The plan having been made, what is important is to put it into practice.

计划已经制订了, 重要的是付诸实施。

4.4 with/without + 逻辑主语 + 分词,独立结构中的逻辑主语前有时可以加 with 或without (多数情况下,with 能省略,without 不能省略),做伴随状语。

比较: With/without + 逻辑主语 + 现在分词→主动意义 (正在进行或发生) With/without + 逻辑主语 + 过去分词→被动意义 (已经完成)

如: With night coming on, they went home. 夜幕降临,他们回家了。

We sat in the courtyard, with the moon rising above the treetops.

我们坐在院子里, 月亮升上树梢。

Without a word more spoken, she left the room. 她一句话也没说,就离开了房间。

She started on the journey without anyone accompanying her.

她开始旅行,没有人陪伴她。

注意 有时候,不同的独立结构可以表示同一个意思。如:

With Peter away,
 Peter being away,
 Peter away,

彼得走了,房子里还有更多的地方。

With the matter settled,
 The matter being settled,
 The matter settled,
 事情解决了,他对结果感到很满意。

4.5 分词充当状语时,分词的逻辑主语和主句的主语一致,即为"分词做状语"。分词充当状语时,分词的逻辑主语和主句的主语不一致,即为"独立主格"。

分词(短语)有意义上的逻辑主语,它或是句子的主语,或者另有自己的主语,不然称这种分词为"悬垂分词",用来表示说话人的一种态度,看问题的角度,或者对所叙述的情况进行解释。这种分词(通常是现在分词)已被看成是一种固定词组,可以看作是一种句子的独立成分。

如: Strictly speaking, nobody is allowed in here.

严格地讲,谁也不允许在这儿。(speaking 的逻辑主语并不是 nobody)

Judging from his accent, he must be from the South.

从他的口音判断,他一定是南方人。(这句话中不是 he 在"判断")

Taken as a whole, there is nothing with the book. 总的来说,这本书没有问题。

Taking all things into consideration, his work is a successful one.

全面考虑起来,他的工作还是很成功的。

经常这样用的分词 (分词词组)有:

Allowing for...考虑到……

frankly(broadly, generally, properly, strictly...) speaking 坦白地说(从广义上,一般地,适当地,严格地)说

judging from(by)... 根据·····判断·····

taking...into consideration 把……考虑在内

> 5. there being 结构

5.1 可以做主语。

如: There being a bus stop so near the house is a great advantage. 在离房子很近的地方有一个公共汽车站有很大的好处。

5.2 可以做状语。

如: We left the meeting, there obviously being no point in staying.

显然没有必要留下来, 我们离开了会议。

They closed the store, there being nobody around.

周围没有人了,他们关闭了商店。

5.3 可以做介词宾语。

例如: John was relying on there being another opportunity.

约翰靠的是另一个机会。

I never dreamed of there being a picture on the wall.

我做梦也没想到墙上有幅画。

● 四、非谓语动词的用法比较

| | | 语法功能 | | | | | |
|------|----|------|-------|----|----|----|--|
| 名称 | 主语 | 宾语 | 宾语补足语 | 表语 | 定语 | 状语 | |
| 不定式 | V | V | V | V | V | V | |
| 动名词 | V | V | | V | V | | |
| 现在分词 | | V | V | V | V | | |
| 过去分词 | | V | V | V | V | | |

▶ 1. 不定式与动名词做主语、表语的比较

不定式与动名词做主语一般来说差别不大,有时两者可以互换。但按传统语法来说,动 名词表示说话人的习惯、爱好或是抽象动作;而动词不定式表示具体的、一次性动作。

如: Smoking is prohibited here. 此处禁止吸烟。

It's not very good for you to smoke so much. 你抽那么多烟不太好。

A postman's duty is delivering mails. 邮递员的职责是投递邮件。

Your task this morning is to deliver the papers to Professor Smith.

你今天上午的任务是把这些论文送给史密斯教授。

≥ 2 . 动名词做宾语与不定式做宾语的比较

①在动词 start, begin, continue, cease 等后面,通常情况下不定式和动名词做宾语区别不大。

如: They start talking/to talk about the matter. 他们开始谈论那件事了。

She never ceased complaining/to complain about the prices.

她从未停止对物价的抱怨。

但是,在有些情况下,begin 和 start 后面只能接不定式。如:谓语动词为进行式时; 主语为物时;后接 understand 或 feel 等表示感觉或精神活动的动词时。 如: I'm beginning to feel better. 我渐渐觉得好些了。

He started to understand the situation. 他开始了解情况了。

The snow began to melt. 雪开始融化了。

如果表示长期性、习惯性行为的开始、则多用动名词。

- 如: How old were you when you began practicing the piano? 你几岁开始学钢琴?
- ② 在动词 like, love, hate, prefer 等后面, 动名词表示抽象、习惯性的动作, 不定式表示具体的、一次性的动作。
 - 如: I prefer/like/love taking a walk after supper. 我喜欢晚饭后散步。

It is very hot today. I like/love/prefer to swim after dinner.

今天很热,我想饭后去游泳。

但是,如果在 like, love, hate, prefer 前有 would, should 时,其后只能跟不定式。

如: I'd like to take part in the match. 我想参加这场比赛。

I should prefer to stay here. 我宁愿留在这儿。

≥ 3. 感官动词后分词宾补和不定式宾补的区别

这类动词后可以用分词做宾补, 也可以用不定式做宾补, 其区别是:

分词宾补表示动作正在进行,尚未完成,不是全过程;不定式宾补表示动作的完成,是全过程。另外,短暂性动作的分词做宾补表示动作的反复,而不定式表示动作的一次性。试比较:

- ① She woke and heard the wolf howling. (The wolf was howling.)
 She was overjoyed to hear you say that. (You said that...)
- I saw a soldier getting on the train.
 I saw a soldier get on the train and disappeared.
- 3 Do you hear the door bell ringing?
 - -Yes, I did, I heard it ring three times.
- ④ She heard the door slamming. (反复的动作)
 She heard the door slam. (一次性动作,已完成)

注意 有时这两种结构做宾补意义上没有什么差别。如:

She noticed him leaving/leave the hall. 她注意到他离开了大厅。

≥ 4. 动名词做表语与现在分词做表语的比较

动名词做表语表示主语的内容,现在分词做表语表示主语的特征或属性。

如: The only thing that interests him is dancing.

他唯一感兴趣的就是跳舞。(动名词表示内容)

The book is very interesting.

这本书很有趣。(现在分词表示特征)

≥ 5. 做表语的现在分词和构成进行时态的现在分词的比较

做表语的现在分词表示主语所处的状态或特征,构成进行时态的现在分词表示主语正 在进行的动作。试比较:

The present situation is encouraging. 当前的形势令人鼓舞。(分词做表语)

The present situation is encouraging us to continue our experiment.

当前的形势正在鼓舞我们继续实验。(分词构成进行时)

≥ 6. 做表语的过去分词和构成被动语态的过去分词的比较

做表语的过去分词表示主语所处的状态或特征,构成被动语态的过去分词表示主语是 动作的承受者,强调的是动作。试比较:

The cup was broken. 杯子破了。(分词做表语)

The cup was broken by John. 杯子是约翰打破的。(分词构成被动语态)

≥ 7. 不定式做宾补与分词做宾补的比较

动词 see, hear, feel, notice, watch, observe 等既可跟动词不定式也可跟现在分词做宾补。它们之间的区别在于:不定式则着重说明动作的全过程;现在分词着重说明动作正在发生。试比较:

I saw him cross the street. (省略 to 的不定式) 我看到他横穿马路。

I saw a plane flying to the north. (= A plane was seen flying to the north.)

我看到一架飞机正朝北方飞去。

I watched her go out of the room. 我看到她走出房间。(强调的是过程)

I watched her going out of the room. 我看到她正走出房间。(强调的是正在进行的动作)

≥8. 不定式与分词做定语的比较

不定式与分词都可做定语;不定式做定语表示将来进行的动作;现在分词做定语指正在进行的动作;过去分词做定语指过去进行的动作。即 to be done 表示将来的动作; being done 表示正在进行的动作; done 表示过去或已经完成的动作。

如: The question to be discussed is of great importance. 即将讨论的问题非常重要。
The question being discussed is of great importance. 正在讨论问题非常重要。
The question discussed is of great importance. 讨论过的那个问题非常重要。

≥ 9. 不定式和分词做状语的区别

9.1 现在分词与过去分词做状语的区别

现在分词做状语的动作与句子主语的动作之间的关系是主动关系;过去分词做状语时,过去分词表示的动做是句子主语承受的动作,它们之间的关系是被动关系。

He went out shutting the door behind him. 他出去后将门随手关上。(主动)

Not knowing what to do, he went to his parents for help.

由于不知怎么办,他去找父母帮忙。(主动)

Given more attention, the trees could have grown better.

如果对这些树多关心一些,它们本来会长得更好。(被动)

Faced with difficulties, we must try to overcome them.

遇到困难的时候, 我们必须设法克服。(被动)

- 9.2 动词不定式和分词做状语的区别
- ① 分词做状语一般表示伴随,而不定式常常表示目的。

They stood by the roadside talking about the plan.

他们站在路边谈论着这个计划。(伴随)

They stood by the roadside to talk about the plan.

他们站在路边为的是谈论这个计划。(目的)

② 分词做状语放在句子开头,除表示原因之外有时表示时间或条件。动词不定式做状语时,除了表示目的以外,还表示结果或原因。

Reading attentively, he forgot the time for lunch.

由于专心读书,他忘了吃午饭的时间。(原因)

Reading carefully, he found something he had not known before.

他仔细读书时,发现了一些从前不知道的东西。(时间)

Reading carefully, you'll learn something new.

只要你仔细阅读,就会学到一些新的东西。(条件)

His family was too poor to support him. 他的家庭太穷,不能维持他的生活。(结果)

The boy is not tall enough to reach the bookshelf.

这男孩个子不够高,手够不到书架。(结果)

We are glad to hear the news. 我们很高兴听到这个消息。(原因)

| (| Grammar Test 1: | | | | |
|----|-------------------------|--------------------------|------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. | The teacher stepped int | o the classroom and | | _ the students to op | oen the windows at once |
| | A. to ask | B. asking | C. | asked | D. has asked |
| 2. | Where shall I put my h | ooxes? The drawer is the | plac | ce | |
| | A. to put them | B. putting them in | C. | to put in them | D. to put them in |
| 3. | According to a recent U | U.S. survey, children sp | end | up to 25 hours a w | week TV. |
| | A. to watch | B. watching | C. | to watching | D. watch |
| 4. | Though small, the room | m is comfortable | _• | | |
| | A. to live | B. to live in | C. | living in | D. live in |
| 5. | The girl walked quietly | into the room | aw | ake her roommates. | |
| | A. so as to | B. in order not to | C. | so as to not | D. for to not |

| 6. | We were surprised at | the exam. | | | | | |
|-----|-------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|--|--|--|
| | A. him not pass | B. his passing not | C. his not passing | D. him not to pass | | | |
| 7. | one's work | properly may not be wor | se than not doing it at | all. | | | |
| | A. Not to do | B. Doing not | C. Doing | D. Not doing | | | |
| 8. | He prided himself on | at chess. | | | | | |
| | A. having never beate | en | B. having been nev | B. having been never beaten | | | |
| | C. having never been beaten | | D. never have been | n beaten | | | |
| 9. | It is important | a beginner | _ the correct pronuncia | ntion of a foreign language | | | |
| | when he studies it. | | | | | | |
| | A. of; to teach | | B. for; to be taugh | t | | | |
| | C. of; to be taught | | D. for; to have tau | ght | | | |
| 10. | Jane was scolded by | the director because she | e left office with the do | oor | | | |
| | A. unlocking | B. not being locked | C. unlocked | D. not locking | | | |
| 11. | Obviously, the eleph | nant ought hou | urs ago by the keepers. | | | | |
| | A. to be fed | B. to feed | C. to being fed | D. to have been fed | | | |
| 12. | in ancient | times, the book still ap | peals to readers today. | | | | |
| | A. Though it written | 1 | B. Though written | | | | |
| | C. It was written | | D. Written it was | | | | |
| 13. | After a whole day's h | heavy work, the old work | ker returned home, | · | | | |
| | A. hungry and felt ϵ | exhausting | B. hunger and exh | austed | | | |
| | B. hungry and exhau | usted | D. hungry and hav | ing been exhausted | | | |
| 14. | The old writer could | not sleep at night, his v | wrongs and sorrows | him no peace. | | | |
| | A. gave | B. have give | C. being give | D. giving | | | |
| 15. | Television has becom | ne a major instrument of o | communication, | us to see as well as to | | | |
| | hear all kinds of pro- | grams. | | | | | |
| | A. to permit | B. permitted | C. being permitting | g D. permitting | | | |
| 16. | The author gave a de | etailed description | on his personal ol | bservation of nature. | | | |
| | A. to base | B. to be based | C. based | D. basing | | | |
| 17. | Some people are sitti | ing on the grass, and oth | ners are strolling along | the lake side, | | | |
| | A. chatting and to laugh | | B. to chat and to la | augh | | | |
| | C. chatting and laughing | | D. chatting and lau | ıghed | | | |
| 18. | I was overjoyed at the | ne news of my hometown | so much pr | ogress. | | | |
| | A. to make | B. to have made | C. made | D. having made | | | |
| 19 | The way I | English is practicing | it as often as no | nssible | | | |

| | A. learning; speaking | B. to learn; to | speak | |
|-----|---|--------------------|-------------|-----------------|
| | C. to learn; speaking | D. learning; t | o speak | |
| 20. | That the brain, once oxygen, dies | has been proved | | |
| | A depriving of B. deprived | C. being depri | ved D. | deprived of |
| 21. | She pretended me when I passed b | y. | | |
| | A. not to see B. not seeing | C. to not see | D. | having not seen |
| 22. | —Have you decided when? | | | |
| | —Yes, tomorrow morning. | | | |
| | A. to leave B. to be leaving | C. will you lea | ive D. | are you leaving |
| 23. | Last summer I took a course on | | | |
| | A. how to make dresses | B. how to be | nade dress | sed |
| | C. how dresses be made | D. how dresse | s to be ma | de |
| 24. | John was made the truck for a wee | ek as a punishmer | ıt. | |
| | A. washing B. to wash | C. wash | D. | to be washing |
| 25. | made her mother angry. | | | |
| | A. Helen's married Jack | B. Helen's ma | rrying Jack | ζ. |
| | C. Helen's has married Jack | D. Helen's ma | rrying with | ı Jack |
| 26. | She went on until her webbed feet | were badly worn | | |
| | A. to practicing running | B. practicing t | o run | |
| | C. practicing running | D. to practice | to run | |
| 27. | I tapped the top of my desk, an ea | asy way out of his | matter. | |
| | A. hoping for B. hoping to | C. hoped for | D. | to hope for |
| 28. | all the time is a hard work and it | can stop you from | communic | eating well. |
| | A. Trying to be correct | B. Try to be c | orrect | |
| | C. That tries to be correct | D. To try to b | e correct | |
| 29. | On the front page was a large F with a note _ | , "See | me after cl | lass". |
| | A. reading B. that read | C. reads | D. | to read |
| 30. | The door of the shop remained, th | ough it was ten o | 'clock a. m | ı . |
| | A. opened B. opening | C. locked | D. | locking |
| | | | | |
| ОТ | Keys | | | |
| | 1—5 С D В В В 6—10 С D | СВС | 11—15 | D B C D D |
| | 16—20 C C D C D 21—25 A A | ABB | 26—30 | CAAAC |

| G | rammar Test 2: | | | |
|-----|------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. | The Red Cross | help for refugees, ov | ver two million dollars | have been raised. |
| | A. appeals for | | B. appeals to | |
| | C. has been appealing | for | D. appealing for | |
| 2. | , she ran ou | t of the room. | | |
| | | r eyes and turned sudder | nly | |
| | B. Turning suddenly, | with tears in her eyes | | |
| | C. With sudden turn t | earful eyes | | |
| | D. With tears in her e | eyes and a sudden turn | | |
| 3. | It's no use our | any longer. He may c | come by any train. He | is used to finding his way |
| | around. | | | |
| | A. to wait | B. waiting | C. to have waited | D. having waited |
| 4. | | er would rather die with h | | with his knees bent. |
| | A. to live | B. living | C. live | D. lived |
| 5. | | that my coat buttons nee | ed to be sewn on. | |
| | A. reminding | | | D. to have reminded |
| 6. | ~ | - | | Practice what you have |
| | learned. | _ 0 | | · |
| | A. trying to | B. to try to | C. try to | D. tried to |
| 7. | I feel liketo | the owner of the house | to complain. | |
| | A. writing | B. to write | C. write | D. having written |
| 8. | As we approached the | village we saw many ne | w houses . | |
| | A. built | B. build | C. being built | D. building |
| 9. | Tim cannot but | his supervisor to he | elp him solve the diffi | culty he has in doing his |
| | project. | | | |
| | A. to ask | B. ask | C. asking | D. asked |
| 10. | Would you mind | quiet for a momer | nt? I am trying | a form. |
| | A. keeping; filling o | ut | B. to keep; to fill o | out |
| | C. keeping; to fill or | ıt | D. to keep; filling | out |
| 11. | I don't remember | to Professor Brow | n during my last visit | to Harvard. |
| | A. having introduced | | B. having been intr | oduced |
| | C. to have introduced | d | D. to have been int | roduced |
| 12. | Your hair wants | You'd better have | e ittomorro | W. |
| | A. cutting; done | | B. cutting; to be de | |
| | C. being cut: done | | D. to be cut; to be | done |

| 13. | We to meet at the gate at 7:00. | | |
|-----|--|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| | A. supposed B. supposed | C. are supposed | D. are supposing |
| 14. | She was so angry that she felt like | something at him. | |
| | A. to throw B. throwing | C. to have thrown | D. having thrown |
| 15. | The bad man at last admittedsto | olen goods but denied | them. |
| | A. to receive; to sell | B. receiving; selling | g |
| | C. to receiving; to selling | D. receiving; to sel | I |
| 16. | People appreciate with him beca | use he has a good sense | of humor. |
| | A. to work B. to have worked | C. working | D. having worked |
| 17. | The speech which he made the I | project has bothered me g | reatly. |
| | A. being concerned B. concerned | C. be concerned | D. concerning |
| 18. | seeing the damage he had done | , the child felt ashamed. | |
| | A. By B. On | C. At | D. For |
| 19. | No one had told Smith about a l | ecture the following day. | |
| | A. there being B. there would be | C. there be | D. there was |
| 20. | They are going to find a new approach | these complex prol | olems. |
| | A. to solving B. to solve | C. in solving | D. that solves |
| 21. | of danger in the street at night, | she had to go home, with | a friend her. |
| | A. Warning; following | B. Having warned; | following |
| | C. Having been warned; following | D. Warned; followe | d |
| 22. | Michael never dreamt of for him | to be sent abroad very se | oon. |
| | A. being a chance | B. there's a chance | |
| | C. there to be a chance | D. there being a ch | |
| 23. | Which do you enjoy your holida | y, going abroad or staying | g at home? |
| | A. spending B. to spend | C. being spent | D. spend |
| 24. | This problem is far from, so it h | nas to be discussed again | at tomorrow's meeting. |
| | A. settled B. settling | C. being settled | D. being settling |
| 25. | David apologized for to inform n | ne of the change in the pl | an. |
| | A. his being not able | B. him not to be ab | le |
| | C. his not being able | D. him to he not ab | le |
| 26. | At the seventh International Ballet Compet | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | won the first gold medal |
| | ever to an American male dance | er. | |
| | A. awarded B. to be award | C. being awarded | |
| 27. | The student, if well, will pass t | he examination without m | nuch difficulty. |
| | A. preparing B. prepared | C. to prepare | D. ready |

| 28. | Tom does speak Chinese well, but his reading and writing skills leave much | | | | |
|-----|--|-------------------|------------|----------------|--|
| | A. to improve B. to be improved | C. improving | D. | improved | |
| 29. | . To get an education, | | | | |
| | A. working hard is very important | B. working has | rd is need | ed | |
| | C. one must work hard | D. it is needed | d to work | hard | |
| 30. | . Sometimes new idea has to be tested many tim | nes before | · | | |
| | A. being fully accepted | B. accepted fu | ılly | | |
| | C. fully been accepted | D. fully accep | ting | | |
| • | TT Keys | | | | |
| | 1—5 D D B C C 6—10 A A C | СВС | 11—15 | ВАСВВ | |
| | 16—20 C D B A A 21—25 C D | ВСС | 26—30 | АВВСА | |
| G | Grammar Test 3: | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| 1. | The guide dog is really the blind man's | | ъ | | |
| _ | A. seeing B. seen | C. saw | | to see | |
| 2. | Some language learners find difficult | | | | |
| | A. that B. so | C. it | | them | |
| 3. | Scientists could see many things that most peop | | | | |
| | A. fail B. would fail | C. fails | D. | will fail | |
| 4. | His father forbids at home. | | | | |
| | A. him smoke B. him to smoke | | ng D. | that he smokes | |
| 5. | She felt it an honor to part in the act | tivity. | | | |
| | A. be taken B. have been taken | C. have taken | D. | having taken | |
| 6. | The decision, the next problem was | how to make a g | good plan. | | |
| | A. having been made | B. being made | • | | |
| | C. having made | D. having been | n making | | |
| 7. | such a good chance, how could she | let it slip away? | | | |
| | A. Having given B. Having been given | C. Giving | D. | Give | |
| 8. | He reached the station, only | that the train | had just l | left. | |
| | A. exhausted; learned | B. exhausting; | learning | | |
| | C. to exhaust; to learn | D. exhausted; | to learn | | |
| 9. | Everybody expected to be served at once and w | ould feel annoye | d | · | |
| | A. to be asked to wait | B. to be asked | l waiting | | |
| | C. asking to wait | D asking to b | e waited | | |

| 10. | It is wrong for some | one in such a high posit | tion in | the government | so badly in |
|-----|--------------------------|----------------------------|---------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| | public. | | | | |
| | A. behaves | B. to behaving | C. to | o behave | D. behaved |
| 11. | with the siz | ze of the whole earth, the | e highe | est mountain does | not seem high at all. |
| | A. When compared | B. Compare | C. V | While competing | D. Comparing |
| 12. | The pressure | causes Americans to | be er | nergetic, but it a | also puts them under a |
| | constant emotional str | rain. | | | |
| | A. to compete | B. competing | C. to | be compete | D. having competed |
| 13. | , I'm not in | n favor of your plan. | | | |
| | A. Telling you the truth | | B. F | or telling you the | truth |
| | C. To tell you the tru | ıth | D. T | Cell you the truth | |
| 14. | , a man wh | no expresses himself effec | ctively | is sure to succe | ed more rapidly than a |
| | man whose command | of language is poor. | | | |
| | A. Other things being | g equal | В. У | Were other things | equal |
| | C. To be equal to oth | ner things | D. (| Other things to be | equal |
| 15. | Sometimes children ha | ave trouble fac | t from | fiction and may | believe that such things |
| | actually exist. | | | | |
| | A. of separating | B. separating | C. fo | or separating | D. to separate |
| 16. | Everyone had an appli | ication form in his hand, | but no | o one knew which | office room |
| | A. to be sent to | B. to send it to | C. to | o have it sent | D. to send it |
| 17. | I have a composition _ | this afternoon, a | and I w | von't have time to l | have my hair |
| | A. written; cut | B. written; to cut | C. to | o write; to cut | D. to write; cut |
| 18. | The school administra | tion is opposed to | th | e academic years | |
| | A. shorten | B. short | C. s | horten of | D. the shortening of |
| 19. | When the host called | a close to the party, I | notice | d that James bitt | erly resented |
| | without any reason. | | | | |
| | A. dismissed | B. being dismissed | C. d | lismissing | D. to dismiss |
| 20. | the boss for | or a raise didn't do any | good, | so I am thinkir | ng of a shift to another |
| | company. | | | | |
| | A. Ask | B. Asked | C. M | My asking | D. I asking |
| 21. | Does Betty object to _ | every night? A | ctually | it is quite safe in | n this neighborhood. |
| | A. your escorting her | | B. tl | hat you escort her | • |
| | C. escort her | | D. b | e escorted by you | 1 |
| 22. | He alone w | vithout any companion eve | er sinc | e the last year | |

| | A. use to travel | | B. has been used | l to traveling | | |
|------------|-------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|--|--|
| | C. used to travel | | D. was used to travel | | | |
| 23. | Alfred said that he wo | ouldn't mind to | o go together to the | art exhibition. | | |
| | A. to wait for us | B. wait for us | C. waiting for us | D. for waiting us | | |
| 24. | Professor Black had u | s compositions | s every Friday and | submit them by Monday. | | |
| | A. to write | B. written | C. write | D. wrote | | |
| 25. | I remembered | for the job, but I for | get the exact amoun | nt. | | |
| | A. to be paid | B. that I receive play | C. get paid | D. being paid | | |
| 26. | from space | , our earth, with water o | covering 70% of its | surface, appears as a "blue | | |
| | planet". | | | | | |
| | A. Seen | B. Seeing | C. Having seen | D. To see | | |
| 27. | a teacher in | n a university, it is nece | essary to have at lea | ast a master's degree. | | |
| | A. To become | B. Become | C. One becomes | D. On become | | |
| 28. | If we don't start now, | we must risk | the train to Edinbu | ırgh. | | |
| | A. to miss | B. to have missed | C. missing | D. having missed | | |
| 29. | The soldier rushed into | o the cave, his right har | nd a gun | and his face with | | |
| | sweat. | | | | | |
| | A held; covered | B. holding; covering | C. holding; cove | red D. held; covering | | |
| 30. | The famous actor is re- | eported in a c | ar accident two wee | eks ago. | | |
| | A. to have injured | | B. having been i | njured | | |
| | C. to be injured | | D. to have been | injured | | |
| | | | | | | |
| ● T | Keys | | | | | |
| | 1—5 АСВВС | 6—10 ABI | DAC 1 | 1—15 ААСАВ | | |
| | 16—20 B D D B C | | | 26—30 AACCD | | |
| | | | | | | |
| E | | | | | | |
| | | nave lighted my way, and t | | I . | | |
| - | to fac | e life cheerfully have been | • | n, American scientist | | |
| | . 11 mm lm .V | . I do Donard VI . V mb V mm | | 1 | | |
| | 有些理想曾 | 7为我们引过道路,并不断 那些理想就是到 | | 然面对人生, | | |
| | | 加些 理怨 | | · 国科学家 爱因斯坦 · | | |
| | | | ^ | 1 | | |

第六节

情态动词

▶ 1. 情态动词的特点

- 1.1 情态动词本身有一定的词义,表示可能、允许、能力、必要、禁止、建议、猜测等意义。在句子中不能独立做谓语,后跟动词原形。常用情态动词有: can, may, must, need, shall, will, ought to, used to, dare 等。
- 1.2 大多数情态助动词有现在时(表示现在和将来)和过去时(表示过去和语气较委婉的现在时)两种形式。

may-might, can-could, will - would, shall - should, dare - dared

1.3 情态动词的否定形式:情态动词 + not + 动词原形。

如: cannot = can't, must not = mustn't, need not = needn't, should not = shouldn't, ought not to, used not to, dare not

≥ 2. 情态动词 + 完成时

| 情态动词 + 完成时 | 意义 |
|---|--|
| could have done couldn't have done | 过去可以做但没有做的事情, 意思为"完全可以" 对过去情况的否定推测, 意思为"一定没" |
| may/ might have done | 对已经发生情况的不肯定推测, 意思为"也许" |
| must have done | 对过去情况的肯定推测, 意思为"一定" |
| needn't have done | 其实没有必要, 意思为"不必" |
| should (ought to) have done shouldn't (ought not to) have done | 本应该做 (而没有做的事情) 本不应该做 (而做了的事情) |

2. 1 could have done

表示过去可以做但没有做的事情, 意思为"完全可以……"。

如: What you said is right, but you could have phrased it more actually. 你说的是对的,但你可以表达得更巧妙一些。
Nobody could have foreseen all this. 没有人能预见到这一切。

couldn't have done or can't have done

表示对过去情况否定的比较有把握的推测, 意思为"一定没……"。

如: He couldn't have gone to Beijing. I saw him only a few minutes ago. 他肯定没去北京,我几分钟前见过他。

- 2.2 might have done 表示对已经发生情况的不肯定推测,意思为"也许……"。
- 如: They may / might have derived inspiration from these words.

他们可能从这些文字中获得了灵感。

Mary might have learned some Chinese before.

玛丽以前可能学过一些中文。

You didn't do the work well that day. You might have done it better.

那天你的工作做得不好, 你本来可以做得更好。

- 2.3 must have done 表示对过去情况的肯定推测。
- 如: You look so sleepy. You must have stayed up late last night.

你看起来很困, 昨晚一定熬夜了。

Liu Dong isn't in the classroom. He must have gone to the library.

刘东不在教室里,他一定是去图书馆了。

- 2.4 needn't have done 或 didn't have to 其实没有必要……,意思为"不必……"。
- 如: You needn't have bought that dictionary. I have a spare one.

你本来不必买那本词典的、我还有一本。

You needn't have walked up. You could have taken the lift.

你不必走着上来 (爬楼梯), 你本来可以乘电梯。

As it turned out to be a small house party, we needn't have dressed up so formally.

这本是一个小型的家庭聚会, 我们不必如此正式地装扮。

We needn't have waited for her because she never came.

我们不需要等她, 因为她从来没有来过。

- 2.5 should (ought to) have done 本应该做…… (而没有做的事情)。
- 如: I regret having left the work unfinished. I should have planned everything ahead carefully. 我后悔没有完成工作,我应该事先计划好一切。

You should have told him the paint on that seat is wet.

你应该告诉他那个座位上的油漆是湿的。

shouldn't have done or ought not to have done 本不应该做…… (而做了的事情)

如: She shouldn't have let the baby play with the scissors.

你不应该让婴儿玩剪刀。

You shouldn't have waited for us. 你不该等我们的。

- \gg 3. may / might as well do 意思为"不妨,最好,不如"。
- 如: Catherine, you may as well come too. 凯瑟琳, 你不妨也去。

We may as well stay here for another day. 我们不妨在这里再待一天。

有时可用 might 代替 may, 语气更委婉。

如: Since it's a fine day we might as well walk. 既然天气很好, 我们不妨走着去。
There's nothing to do, so I might as well go to bed.

既然没什么事可做, 我还是去睡觉为好。

注意 might as well 还可用于指过去的情况或用于比较令人不愉快的情况。如:
This holiday isn't much fun; we might as well be back home.
这个假日过得真没意思,我们还不如待在家里。

- **▶** *4*. can't /cannot (never)...too...意思为"再······也不过分,越······越好"。
- 如: You cannot be too careful when you drive a car. 你开车时再小心也不为过。You can never be too careful in the street. 在街上,你越小心越好。We cannot be too careful in doing experiments. 我们做实验时越仔细越好。I cannot thank you too much. 我无论怎么感谢你也不过分。
- ≥ 5 . dare 既是情态动词又是实义动词。
- 5.1 dare 是情态动词。
- 如: How dare you interrupt me? 你怎么敢打断我?

 He dare not tell the truth. 他不敢说实话。

 She dare not say what she thinks. 她不敢说出自己的想法。
- 5.2 dare 是实义动词。
- 如: Nothing is hard in this world if you dare (to) scale the heights.
 世上无难事,只要肯攀登。
 I don't know whether he dares to try. 我不知道他敢不敢尝试。
 He doesn't dare to come out at night. 他晚上不敢出来。
- \triangleright 6. need 既是情态动词又是实义动词。
- 6.1 **need** 是情态动词,意思为"需要",既没有人称和数的变化,也没有各种时态形式的变化。
 - 如: We need your help. 我们需要你的帮助。
 I need to get away and rest up a little. 我需要离开, 稍稍休息一下。
- 6.2 **need** 是实义动词,意思为"需要",它的用法跟其他动词一样:第三人称单数做主语时加s,疑问句和否定句用 do 来构成。做实义动词时, need 一般接带 to 的不定式。
 - ① 主语是人, 常用结构为: need to do sth.; need to be done by sb.。
 - 如: A: He needs to see a doctor. Do you need to see one too? 他要去看医生。你也要去吗?

B: No, I don't need to see a doctor. But I need a good rest. 不, 我不需要看医生。但我要好好休息一下。

② 主语是事物,常用结构为: need doing sth. (用主动表被动); need to be done。

如: The flowers need watering every day. 花需要每天 (被) 浇水。

= The flowers need to be watered every day.

The classroom needs cleaning. 教室需要(被)打扫。

= The classroom needs to be cleaned.

| Œ | Grammar Test: | © |
|----|--|--|
| 1. | They hurried there only to find the meeting cand | |
| | A. might not have gone | B. must have gone |
| | C. ought to go | D. needn't have gone |
| 2. | There be an open window somewhere | , I can feel cold air coming in. |
| | A. could B. should | C. must D. ought |
| 3. | As it turned out to be a small driving test, we _ | so hard. |
| | A. needn't prepare | B. did not need have prepared |
| | C. did not need prepare | D. needn't have prepared |
| 4. | It was kind of you to offer me financial help, but | ut you it. |
| | A. mustn't do | B. wouldn't have done |
| | C. mustn't have done | D. didn't have to do |
| 5. | According to the Western culture, one | _ask his acquaintance such personal questions |
| | as his age, income or marital status. | |
| | A. needn't B. don't have to | C. mustn't D. have not got to |
| 6. | Jane doesn't have time to go to the concert; she | for her final examination. |
| | A. being prepare | B. must be preparing |
| | C. might have been preparing | D. is to be prepare |
| 7. | My disappointment apparent the mon | nent I entered the office, because some of my |
| | colleagues asked me sympathetically: "Are you | all right with the boss's decision?" |
| | A. must be B. had been | C. must have been D. had to be |
| 8. | The ground is wet. It last night. | |
| | A. should have rained | B. would have rained |
| | C. must have rained | D. could have rained |
| 9. | He doesn't know to make good use of the enorm | ous calculative capability of computer; this job |
| | within an hour. | |
| | A. should finish | B. must have finished |

| (| C. could be finishing | D. ought to have bee | n finished |
|-----|---|------------------------|----------------------------|
| 10. | It's a pity you failed in this course. You | the book on the | e professor's reading list |
| | before you took the final examination. | | |
| | A. might have read B. should have read | C. must have read | D. have read |
| 11. | We her letter last week. We don't k | now what has happene | d to her. |
| | A. must receive | B. must have receive | d |
| | C. should not have received | D. ought to have rece | eived |
| 12. | Since it's snowing heavily, we stay a | at home. | |
| | A. had better not B. must | C. had better to | D. might as well |
| 13. | The wine bottle is nearly empty; you | _ a lot. | |
| | A. may have drunk | B. must have drunk | |
| | C. ought to have drunk | D. could have drunk | |
| 14. | David didn't tell his wife that he had been fired | d, but he | |
| | A. would do B. had do | C. should have | D. might have to |
| 15. | Why didn't you tell me you could lend me the | money? I it | from the bank. |
| | A. needn't have borrowed | B. can't have borrowe | ed |
| | C. must have borrowed | D. may have borrowe | d |
| 16. | $\mbox{Mr.}\xspace$ Ross bought a blue rag yesterday, but $\mbox{Mr.}\xspace$ | Ross the bro | own one. |
| | A. would rather buying | B. would rather have | bought |
| | C. would rather buy | D. would rather to bu | ıy |
| 17. | He gone back to work without the d | octor's permission. No | w he was to stay in bed |
| | for a couple of days. | | |
| | A. needn't have B. wouldn't have | C. couldn't have | D. shouldn't have |
| 18. | It was very kind of you to do the washing up, | but you it. | |
| | A. needn't have done | B. mustn't have done | |
| | C. should have done | D. wouldn't have don | e |
| 19. | There is nothing to do tonight, so we | _ to the movie. | |
| | A. might have to go B. ought to have gone | C. may as well go | D. could have gone |
| 20. | I $__$ thank you too much for your help. | Without your help, I | could not have achieved |
| | my goal. | | |
| | A. must not B. can't | C. may not | D. need not |
| 21. | Look at his new house. He have a l | lot of money. | |
| | A. should B. shall | C. may | D. must |
| 22. | What time ought I? | | |
| | A. arrived B. arriving | C. arrive | D. to arrive |

| 23. | Ronald stay in h | is small ga | rden for a lo | ng time | every day | in the past | t . | |
|-----|---|---------------|------------------|-------------------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|--|
| | A. could B. n | night | C. | should | | D. would | l | |
| 24. | I wonder how he | that to the | e teacher. | | | | | |
| | A. dare to say B. d | lare to sayi | ing C. | not dare | e say | D. dared | say | |
| 25. | The dog hibernat | te (冬眠) | in winter. | | | | | |
| | A. don't need B. d | loesn't nee | d to C. | needs n | ot to | D. needs | s not | |
| 26. | I didn't hear the phone. I | ; | asleep. | | | | | |
| | A. must be B. n | nust have l | been C. | should | be | D. shoule | d have been | |
| 27. | — We didn't see Tom at the meeting yesterday. | | | | | | | |
| | —He it. | | | | | | | |
| | A. mustn't have attended | | В. | B. cannot have attended | | | | |
| | C. needn't have attended | | D. | would h | ave not a | ttended | | |
| 28. | You yesterday if you were really serious about your work. | | | | | | | |
| | A. ought to come | | В. | B. ought to be coming | | | | |
| | C. ought to have come | | D. | D. ought have come | | | | |
| 29. | You all these parcels yourself. The shop would have delivered them if you had | | | | | | | |
| | asked a shop assistant. | | | | | | | |
| | A. didn't need to carry | | | B. needn't have carried | | | | |
| | C. needn't carry | | D. | D. didn't need carry | | | | |
| 30. | It be too strongly emphasized that mathematics is the basis of science. | | | | | | | |
| | A. must not B. o | an't | С. | may not | | D. need | not | |
| От | T Keys | | | | | | | |
| | 1—5 D C D D C | 6—10 | ВССDВ | | 11—15 | D D B C | A | |
| | 16—20 B D A C B | 21—25 | DDDDE | 3 | 26—30 | ВВСВІ | В | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | Many a | little makes a | mickle | | | | |
| i | | inaily a | 积少成多。 | | | | 1 | |
| 1 | Patie | ence and ap | plication will o | earry us th | rough. | | | |
| - | | 忍耐和专 | 心会使我们测 | 度过难关。 |) | | | |
| 1 | Fortune often rewa | rds with inte | erest those that | t have pat | ience to wa | ait for her. | | |

做事只要有耐心, 到头总会有好运。(耐心候好运, 好运常会来。)

第七节

形容词、副词

形容词是用来修饰、描述名词或代词的词,主要用作定语、表语和补足语等。副词是 用来修饰动词、形容词、其他副词、介词短语或全句的词。

≥ 1. 形容词的一般用法:

主要用来修饰名词或不定代词,表示人或事物的性质、状态和特征的词。形容词在句中可做表语、定语、补语等。

如: Be careful about what you say. 说话要小心。

The sunset was a beautiful sight. 日落是一种美丽的景象。 I find it easy to get on with him. 我发现和他相处很容易。

- 1.1 形容词+名词,做定语。如: a good girl 一位好姑娘
- 1.2 be + 形容词, 做表语。如: The meal is delicious. 这顿饭真好吃。
- 1.3 不定代词+形容词,做后置定语。如: something wrong 错事
- 1.4 the +形容词,表示一类人或物。如: the rich 富人, the old 老人
- 1.5 表语形容词 alone, asleep, alike, alive, awake, ashamed, afraid 等以 a 开头的形容词不能做前置定语, 但可做表语或后置定语。此外, ill (病的), well (健康的), frightened (害怕的)等形容词也只能位于系动词后面做表语。
 - 如: You are the happiest children alive. 你是活着的最幸福的孩子。
 The boy is ill. (正) 这个男孩病了。

The ill boy is here. (误)

- 1.6 定语形容词 little, only, wooden, woolen, elder 等词只能做定语,不能做表语。
- 如: My elder brother is in Beijing. (正) 我哥哥在北京。 My brother is elder. (误)

≥ 2. 形容词的常用句式:

- 2.1 "It's + adj. + of + sb. + 不定式"表示"某人做某事",这一句型中常用描述行为者的性格、品质的形容词,如 good, kind, nice, polite, clever, foolish, lazy, careful, careless, right, wrong 等。
 - 如: It was very cruel of them to eat rare wild animals.

 他们吃稀有的野生动物是非常残忍的。

 It's very kind of you to tell me the truth. 你真是太好了,告诉我真相。
 - 2.2 "It's + adj. + for + sb. + 不定式"表示"做某事对某人来说",这一句型中常用来

描述某事性质的形容词,如 important, necessary, difficult, easy, hard, dangerous, safe, useful, pleasant, interesting 等。

如: It's inconvenient for me to write the whole book by hand.

手工抄写整本书对我来说很麻烦。

It's necessary for you to hurry up, otherwise you will be late.

你必须快点,否则你会迟到的。

It's impossible for a child to learn everything. 孩子不可能学所有的东西。

≫ 3. 副词的一般用法:

主要用来修饰动词、形容词、其他副词或全句,说明时间、地点、程度、方式等概念的词。副词在句中主要做状语。

如: He knew London very well. 他对伦敦很熟悉。
You need to form the habit of reading carefully. 你需要养成仔细阅读的习惯。

注意 here, there, in, out, away, abroad 等少数副词也可以做表语; here, there, home, abroad, below 等表示地点或方位的词及 today, tomorrow, yesterday, back, out 等表示时间或动词方向词还可以做定语。如:

I don't think she is here now. 我认为她现在不在这里。

Most people there are farmers. 那里多数人都是农民。

- 3.1 副词通常放在被修饰的动词后面。
- 如: Please listen to me carefully. 请仔细听我说。
- 3.2 always, usually, never, ever, just, shortly, seldom, hardly, scarcely, no sooner, rarely 等频率副词常放在助动词、情态动词或 be 之后或实义动词之前,但在省略句或强调结构中必须放在助动词、情态动词或 be 之前。
 - 如: San Francisco is usually cool in summer, but Los Angeles rarely is. 夏天,旧金山通常很凉爽,但洛杉矶很少会这样。
- 3.3 actually, briefly, certainly, (un) fortunately, surely 等副词对全句进行修饰, 常放在句首, 并用逗号与后面的陈述句子隔开。
 - 如: Not surprisingly, the process of choosing name varies widely from culture to culture. 起名字的方法因文化不同而不同,这一点也不奇怪。
 Fortunately, the planes appear to be quite safe. 幸好,这种飞机好像相当安全。
 Unfortunately, belts are worn only by a small percentage of drivers and passengers.
 不幸的是,只有少数驾驶员和旅客系安全带。
 - 3.4 程度副词 very, much, almost, hard, nearly, fairly 通常放在所修饰词的前面。
 - 如: He thinks that he is nearly always in the right. 他认为他几乎总是正确的。

➢ 4. 要注意下列词形相同的形容词与副词: fast, late straight, hard, direct, shout, short, long, high 的使用。

a straight line 一条直线

a late dinner 很迟的晚饭

a fast train 快车

a hard task 艰巨的任务

a direct road 直路

a long rest 长时间休息

go straight to the school 直接去学校

return home late 很晚才回家

relieve my headache fast 很快减轻了我的头痛

try hard to convince him 努力使他相信

fly direct to New York 直飞纽约

He died long ago. 他很久以前就去世了。

其中几个词还有带有-ly 的副词形式, lately/recently (最近), hardly, directly (直接地,立即), shortly (立即, 简略地)。

如: I haven't seen him lately. 我最近没见过他。

Mr. Jones will be back shortly. 琼斯先生很快就会回来。

≥ 5. 形容词、副词比较级

5.1 形容词、副词原级比较

其基本结构为 "as + adj. /adv. + as", as...as 意思为 "和······一样"。使用时要注意第一个 as 为副词, 第二个 as 为连词。

如: This film is as interesting as that one. 这部电影和那部电影一样有趣。

Your pen writes as smoothly as mine. 你的钢笔书写起来和我的一样流畅。

其否定式为 not as/so + adj. /adv. + as。

如: This dictionary is not as/so useful as you think. 这本字典不如你想象的那样有用。

注意 ① as...as 结构中, 要使用形容词或副词的原形。

② as...as 结构用于肯定句, not as...as, not so...as 只用于否定句, 用来表示"不如……那样……"。值得注意的是:它表示的内容总是前者不如后者。在使用副词表示"不相等"的句型中,"not as/so...as..."中的 not 要和助动词 do, does, did 等一起放在行为动词前,来构成否定句。如:

He doesn't walk as / so slowly as you. 他走路不像你那么慢。

③ as...as 结构中, 若出现名词, 一般将名词放在 as...as 中间。若有形容词做定语修饰单数可数名词, 其前的不定冠词 a/an, 需放在形容词之后。如:

He is as good a swimmer as any one of us.

他和我们中的任何人一样擅长游泳。

We haven't seen so beautiful a place as Beijing before.

我们以前从未见过像北京这样美丽的地方。

- 5.2 as...as 结构后接具体数字时,是表示"长,短,高,矮,重,轻"等的程度, 意思为"高达……,多达……"等,而不是表示两者的比较。
 - 如: Tuition at a Chinese university runs as high as 4,000 yuan a semester. 中国大学的学费每学期高达 4 000 元。

 Some stones weigh as much as fifteen tons. 有些石头重达 15 吨。

5.3 倍数的表达方式

用 times 表示倍数 (一般限于包括基数在内三倍或三倍以上的,表示两倍的数一般有 twice)。其句式有:

- ① "A+谓语动词+倍数+as+adj./adv.+as+B"表示"A是B的几倍"。
- 如: This table is three times as long as that one. 这张桌子是那张桌子的三倍长。 This dictionary is five times as thick as the one you borrowed from the library. 这本字典的厚度是你从图书馆借的那本的 5 倍。
- ② "A+谓语动词+倍数+the+n.(size, height, length, width 等) of B"表示"A是B的几倍"。
 - **如:** The earth is 49 times the size of the moon. 地球的体积是月球的 49 倍。 The river is three times the depth of that one. 这条河是那条河的三倍深。
- ③ "A+谓语动词+倍数+比较级 (bigger, higher, longer, wider, faster etc.) + than B"表示"A比B……几倍"。
 - 如: Line AB is three times longer than Line CD. 线段 AB 比线段 CD 长 3 倍。

 This hall is five times bigger than our classroom. 这个大厅比我们的教室大 5 倍。
 - ④ "A+谓语动词+倍数+as+many(much) +as+B"表示"A是B的几倍"。
 - 如: He has got three times as many books as his sister.
 他拥有的书的数量是他妹妹的 3 倍。
 We have produced twice as much cotton this year as we did ten years ago.
 今年我们生产的棉花是十年前的两倍。(汉语中的两倍也可以说成多一倍。)
 - ⑤ "A+谓语动词+倍数+more+n.+than+B"表示 "A比B……多几倍"。
 - 如: He earns five times more money than he did ten years ago. 他现在挣的钱比十年前挣的多 5 倍。
 There are twice more students in our class than in theirs. 我们班的学生人数比他们班多两倍。
- ⑥ "A+谓语动词+比较级+than+any other+单数名词(+介词短语)"表示"A比(同一范围内任何人/物)都……",其真正含义为"A最……"。
 - 如: Xiaoming is taller than any other boy in his class. 小明比班里其他男孩高。

Xiaoming is the tallest boy in his class. 小明是他班里最高的男孩。

- ⑦ "A+谓语动词+the+比较级+than+of the two"表示 "A是两者中较……的"。
- 如: Look at the two boys. Xiaoming is the taller than of the two. 看那两个男孩, 小明是两个中较高的那个。

注意 两者做比较、比较级前一定加定冠词 the

≥ 6. 形容词、副词变体比较级

- 6.1 The more...the more ...越……越…… (表示一方随着另一方变化)。
- 如: The harder you work, the greater progress you will make. 你越努力工作,取得的进步就越大。
 The more you learn, the more you find you don't know. 学到的知识越多,你就发现自己知道的越少。
- 6.2 more and more 越来越…… (表示事物本身的变化)。
- 如: The weather is getting colder and colder. 天气越来越冷了。
 He is getting taller and taller. 他长得越来越高了。
- 6.3 not so much...as.../be more...than...与其说……不如说。
- 如: She is more shy than timid. 与其说她胆怯不如说她害羞。

 The function of a school education is not so much to teach you things as to teach you the art of learning. 学校教育的功能与其说是教给你知识不如说是教给你学习的技巧。

 He is not so much a writer as a reporter. 与其说他是作家不如说他是记者。
- 6.4 superior, inferior, senior, junior, prior 等以-(i) or 结尾的形容词构成比较级时, 比较对象由 to 引出。
 - 如: The method is inferior to that one. 这个方法不如那个好。
 He is ten years senior to me. 他比我年长 10 岁。
 This task is prior to all others. 先做这项任务。
 This tape recorder is far superior to that one both in quality and in design.
 这台录音机在质量和设计上都比那台录音机好得多。

6.5 特殊结构:

I prefer to work rather than sit idle. 我宁愿工作也不愿闲坐着。 He would sooner resign than take part in such dishonest business deals. 他宁愿辞职也不愿参加这种不诚实的商业交易。

▶ 7. 形容词、副词的相关知识

7.1 much, even, still, far, by far, a little, a great deal, slightly 等词可以修饰比较级; by far, nearly, almost, by no means, very, the very 以及序数词等可以修饰最高级。

如: The latter is far better than the former. 后者比前者好得多。
It is quicker by far to go by train. 乘火车要快得多。
It is even colder than yesterday. 今天比昨天更冷。

She is by far the best executive in the company. 她是目前公司里最棒的主管。

注意 by far 修饰比较级 (后置) 和修饰最高级 (前置) 时的不同位置。

- 7.2 如果形容词前的 most 相当于 very 时,不带定冠词。
- 如: These are most delicious cakes. 这些是最美味的蛋糕。 What you have said is most interesting. 你所说的是最有趣的。
- 7.3 of, in 两者都可以用在最高级的句子里表示比较范围。

of 表示属性, 意为"在……当中", 后接复数名词 (有时可省略) 或代词, 句子主语和 of 后的名词是同类相比, 即人与人比较、物与物比较。

如: Mary is the youngest of the three (girls). 玛丽是三个女孩中最小的。

in 表示 "在……范围"之内,侧重比较的范围,后接单数地点名词。句子主语和 in 后的名词是人(物)与地点的关系。

如: Bill is the youngest in our class. 比尔是我们班最小的。

- 7.4 比较对象前后一致表示相同概念时,后一比较对象可用 that/ those, one /ones 代替, that/one 用来代替可数名词单数或不可数名词;而 those/ones 则用来代替可数名词复数。
 - 如: The output of this year is as much as that of last year.

今年的产量和去年的一样多。

Moral values in America are like those in any culture.

美国的道德价值观跟其他文化中的一样。

The blonde girl I saw was older than the one you were dancing with.

我看到的金发碧眼的女孩比和你一起跳舞的女孩年长。

The new designs are much better than the old ones.

新的设计比旧的好多了。

| Grammar Test: | | | | | | |
|---------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|--|--|
| 1. | Prices for bikes at that | store can run | \$230; I'm afraid that | t we have to try another | | |
| | store. | | | | | |
| | A. as high as | B. as high to | C. so high to | D. so high as | | |
| 2. | It seemed that the more | e he tried to help her, _ | she seemed to | appreciate it. | | |
| | A. less | B. lesser | C. the less | D. the lesser | | |
| 3. | Consumers should do _ | than simply con | nplain about the poor q | quality of goods. | | |
| | | | | | | |

| | A | A. some more | B. much | C. | for less | D. more | |
|---|-------------------|---|----------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|--|
| 4. We did not find to prepare for the worst conditions we might | | | | | t face. | | |
| | A | 1. it worth | B. it worthy | C. | it worthwhile | D. worth our while | |
| 5. | Н | He has not p | orejudice against you or a | nyb | ody else in such m | atters. | |
| | A | A. the less | B. little | C. | more | D. the least | |
| 6. | В | Beethoven is my favorit | e musician, I regard him | as | other m | usicians. | |
| | A | A. superior to | B. more superior than | C. | more superior to | D. superior than | |
| 7. | Н | His salary as a driver is | s much higher | | | | |
| | A | A. than a teacher | | В. | than that of a teac | her | |
| | C | C. than of a teacher | | D. | than those of a tea | acher | |
| 8. | _ | all the poem | s I have read recently, T | hon | nas Hardy's <i>The Da</i> | arkling Thrust seems the | |
| | n | nost relevant to our tim | ies. | | | | |
| | A | A. In | B. About | C. | Of | D. Among | |
| 9. | T | he culture and custom | ns of American are more | lik | e of En | gland than of any other | |
| | c | ountry. | | | | | |
| | A | A. that | B. what | C. | which | D. those | |
| 10. | | Dried foods take up le | ss room and weigh | | _ than the same for | od packed in cans, and | |
| they do not need to be stored in special condition. | | | | | | | |
| | | A. few | B. fewer | C. | little | D. less | |
| 11. | | Although I'm inferior _ | you, you shou | ldn' | t put on airs with n | ne. | |
| | | A. with | B. to | C. | than | D. in | |
| 12. | | Smoking is so harmful to personal health that it kills people each year than | | | | | |
| | | automobile accidents. | | | | | |
| | | A seven more times | | B. seven times more | | | |
| | | C. over seven times | | D. | seven times | | |
| 13. | | | e population growth is no | | | th rates a fall | |
| | | in death rates as a result of improvements in medical care. | | | | | |
| | | A. and | B. so | | but | D. as | |
| 14. | | He knows little of mat | hematics, and | | | | |
| | | A. even more | B. still more | | still less | D. no less | |
| 15. | | The number of registered candidates for this year's entrance examination to master's degree | | | | | |
| | | programs is twice | · | | | | |
| | A. of last year's | | B. those of last year's | | | | |
| | | C. of those of last yea | | | that of last year's | _ | |
| 16. | | Questioning the quality of the air they breathe becomes less important than about | | | | | |
| | | the next paycheck. | | | | | |

| | A. having questioned | B. questioning | | | | |
|-----|---|---|--|--|--|--|
| | C. to have questioned | D. question | | | | |
| 17. | The new method for refining aluminum v | vas that it became practical for many | | | | |
| | ourposes, one of the first of which was for making pots and pans. | | | | | |
| | A. so more cheaper | B. so many cheaper | | | | |
| | C. so much cheaper | D. such much cheaper | | | | |
| 18. | 18 living things are linked together as intimately as bees and flowers. | | | | | |
| | A. Fewer B. Few | C. Little D. Less | | | | |
| 19. | I was as much at a loss | | | | | |
| | A. as the others did | B. as others all were | | | | |
| | C. as others was | D. as all the others were | | | | |
| 20. | The doctor considers going bed early to be | more sensible | | | | |
| | A. but staying up late | B. than to stay up late | | | | |
| | C. than staying up late | D. than staying up lately | | | | |
| 21. | Even though she looks very young, she is | twice my twenty-year-old sister. | | | | |
| | A. as old as B. older than | C. so old as D. as older as | | | | |
| 22. | Americans eat as they actually n | need every day. | | | | |
| | A. twice as much protein | B. twice protein as much | | | | |
| | C. protein as much twice | D. protein as twice much | | | | |
| 23. | The more we study during the term, | we have to study before exams. | | | | |
| | A. the less B. the fewer | C. the little D. the few | | | | |
| 24. | She prefers to die rather than th. | at she is wrong. | | | | |
| | A. to admit B. admit | C. admitting D. admitted | | | | |
| 25. | This is the most difficult job I have | ave ever tackled. | | | | |
| | A. by rights B. by far | C. by itself D. by much | | | | |
| 26. | He likes doing some reading at home | to the cinema. | | | | |
| | A. than to go B. more than going | C. than going D. rather than to go | | | | |
| 27. | The effects of smoking are said to be more | harmful than drinking. | | | | |
| | A. that of B. which of | C. those of D. what of | | | | |
| 28. | She is older than in the group. | | | | | |
| | A. any girl B. all girls | C. any other girl D. any others girl | | | | |
| 29. | The higher the mountain is, the | air is at the summit. | | | | |
| | A. the warmer B. the nicest | C. the colder D. the thicker | | | | |
| 30. | You can't be careful in making t | he decision as it was such a critical case. | | | | |
| | A. quite B. so | C. very D. too | | | | |



1—5 A C D C D

6—10 ABADD

11—15 BBDCD

16—20 B C B D C

21—25 A A A B B

26—30 B C C C D

If you weep for the missing sunset, you would miss all the shining stars.

如果你为错过夕阳而哭泣,那么你就要错过群星了。

The good seaman is known in bad weather.

惊涛骇浪, 方显英雄本色。

Rome was not built in a day.

罗马并非一日可建成;坚持必成。

第八节

倒装、强调、反义疑问句

▶ 一、倒 装

所谓倒装是指主谓颠倒,即谓语置于主语之前。倒装分为完全倒装和部分倒装。完全倒装是整个句子的谓语置于句首,部分倒装是将助动词、情态动词、系动词置于句首。常见的倒装为部分倒装,主要有以下几种情形:

≥ 1. 常用的部分倒装结构:

- 1.1 在含有 if 虚拟语气句中,if 从句中可省略 if,将助动词 should,had,were 提前。
- 如: Should I become a research student, I would at least master 2 foreign languages.

想成为一名研究生, 我至少要掌握两门外语。

Were I you, I wouldn't feel sorry. 如果我是你, 我不会感到难过。

- 1.2 so, neither, nor 置于句首表示不同主语的同样动作的肯定或否定, 以免重复。
- 如: I have finished reading the book, so has my sister.

我已经读完了这本书, 我姐姐也读了。

He didn't like the film at all, neither / nor did I.

他一点也不喜欢这部电影, 我也不喜欢。

注意 如果只是重复前面的一句话,主语指同一事物或人,则不需要倒装。如:

- —It was cold yesterday. 昨天很冷。
- -So it was. 是的, 昨天很冷。

1.3 在让步状语、方式状语和比较状语从句中的倒装。

在 as 方式和 than 比较状语从句中,如果谓语及其之后的成分与主句相应的部分一致,可根据主句中谓语的时态分别用 do、does 或 did 来代替。因其过于简短置于从句主语之前,避免头重脚轻。如果主语是代词,则不能倒装。

如: Child as he was, he could understand his mother's great pain.

尽管他是一个孩子, 但他能理解母亲巨大的痛苦。

The business is good, be it selling goods or shipping them.

无论是卖货还是送货都是好生意。

He traveled a great deal, as did most of his friends.

他和他的大多数朋友一样旅行了很多次。

He believed, as did the whole class, window had been broken the night before.

他和全班同学都认为、前一天晚上窗户被打破了。

1.4 否定词/半否定词/含有否定意义的词语开头的句子要用倒装。常见的否定词汇有: never, seldom, little, few, not... until, not only (...but also), nowhere, hardly/scarcely... when..., no sooner ...than..., by no means, at no time, under/in no circumstances, in no case...

如: At no time will China be the first to use nuclear weapons.

无论何时中国都不会第一个使用核武器。

Seldom do we go for picnics. 我们很少去野餐。

Never in all my life have I heard such nonsense.

我一生中从来没有听说过这样荒谬的话。

By no means can we create or destroy energy. 我们绝不能创造或摧毁能量。

No sooner had she found her purse missing than she cried and shouted loudly.

她一发现钱包丢了就放声大哭大闹起来。

In no way can she give in. 她决不会放弃。

Not only did he show himself a good student, but he also proved himself a good athlete.

他不仅表明自己是个好学生、也证明自己是个出色的运动员。

Not only is he a teacher, but he is also a poet.

他不仅是教师, 还是诗人。

① not... until...放在句首, 主句用倒装, 从句不用倒装。

如: Not until last week did they find the lost bike.

直到周上周、他们才找到丢失的自行车。

Not until my son had entered the university did he realize the importance of time.

直到我儿子上了大学,他才认识到时间的重要性。

② hardly ... when..., no sooner ... than..., not only... but also...连接的句型,前半句用倒装语序,后半句不用倒装语序。

如: Hardly had he finished his speech when the audience started cheering.

他一做完报告,观众就开始欢呼起来。

I had no sooner reached home than it began to rain. 我一到家就下起雨来。

- 1.5 so + adj. /adv. ...that 或者 to such a degree/an extent, 位于句首的时候句子要倒装。
- 如: So much does he worry about her that he can't sleep at night.

他非常担心她,晚上都睡不着。

So fast did he walk that none of us was his equal.

他走得太快了,没人能跟上他。

So dangerous was the storm that the match had to be stopped.

暴风雨凶险异常, 比赛不得不停止。

- 1.6 "only + 状语"位于句首的时候句子要倒装。
- 如: Only in this way can you learn English well. 只有通过这种方式你才能学好英语。

Only when flowers bloom together can spring be considered here.

只有花都开了, 才意味着春天来了。

Only under special circumstances are freshmen permitted to take makeup tests.

只有在特殊情况下才允许大学一年级的新生参加补考。

注意

only 修饰主语时, 句子不可倒装。如:

Only he can answer the question.

只有他能回答这个问题。

≥ 2. 完全倒装

2. 1 "状语+谓语+主语"结构

该结构中的状语多为表示方位的副词 here, there, in, out, up, down, away 等, 或表示地点的介词短语或者表示顺序的副词 now, first, then 等, 谓语动词一般局限在表示位置的静态动词 be, stand, lie 等或表示位置转移的动作词 go, come, fall 等, 主语往往比较长带有复杂的修饰语。

如: Here comes the bus. 公共汽车来了。

There goes the bell. 上课铃响了。

Here is a letter for you. 这儿有你一封信。

Now comes your turn. 现在轮到你了。

First came the governor and then his aid. 首先是州长、然后是他的助手。

There stands a tall pine tree at the top of the hill. 山顶上有一棵高大的松树。

Long long ago, there lived a king. 很久以前,有一个国王。

注 意

Here you are / Here it is. 即主语是物主代词时不倒装。

- 2.2 直接引语放在句首时,主谓语倒装。如上所述,如果主语是代词,则不倒装。 试比较:
 - "What does it mean?" asked the boy. "这是什么意思?" 男孩问道。
 - "What does it mean?" he asked. "这是什么意思?" 他问道。
 - 2.3 祝愿句中的倒装:

May you succeed! 祝你成功!

Long live the friendship! 愿友谊地久天长!

▶ 二、强调

> 1. 强调结构的构成: It be + 被强调部分 + that...

这个结构可以强调主语、宾语、状语、宾补和主补。当被强调的部分指人时用 who/that; 而被强调的部分是宾语又指人时用 whom/that; 强调部分为物时用 that。

主意 it, that/who 无词汇意义, it 为强调词, 引出强调成分。that/who 只起语法连接作用, 如果去掉 it, be 和 that/who, 剩下部分 (有时需做语法调整) 仍能组成一个句意通顺完整的句子。如:

It is I who am to blame. 应受责备的人是我。

It was me that / whom she helped yesterday. 昨天她帮助了我。

It's you, rather than he, that are to blame. 该受责备的是你,而不是他。

It is not help but obstacles that make a man. 使人成才的不是助力,而是阻力。

It was in the 1960's that the trade between the countries reached its highest point.

就是在20世纪60年代,国家之间的贸易达到了高峰。

- **≥ 2**. not ...until ...的强调句为 (不用倒装语序): It was not until + 被强调部分 + that...。
- 如: It was not until dark that she realized it was too late to go home.

直到天黑她才意识到回家太晚了。

It was not until Anna criticized him that he became aware of his mistake.

直到安娜批评他、他才意识到自己的错误。

注意 not until 的强调句和倒装句比较.

It was not until I came back that he left. (强调句)

直到我回来,他才离开。

Not until I came back did he leave. (倒装句)

直到我回来,他才离开。

● 三、反义疑问句(The Disjunctive Question)

即附加疑问句。它表示提问人的看法,没有把握,需要对方证实。反义疑问句由两部分组成:前一部分是一个陈述句,后一部分是一个简短的疑问句,两部分的人称、时态应保持一致。

两种形式:

- (1) 陈述部分肯定式+疑问部分否定式,可记为:前肯后否。
- (2) 陈述部分否定式+疑问部分肯定式,可记为:前否后肯。
- 如: They work hard, don't they? 他们努力工作, 不是吗?
 She was ill yesterday, wasn't she? 她昨天病了, 是吗?
 You didn't go, did you? 你没有去, 是吗?
 He can't ride a bike, can he? 他不会骑自行车,是吗?

请注意以下句型的反义疑问句的用法:

▶ 1. **当陈述部分的主语是** I, everyone, everything, nobody 等不定代词时, 疑问部分应为:

I am a student, aren't I? 我是一名学生,不是吗?

Everyone is in the classroom, aren't they? 每个人都在教室里, 是吗?

Everything begins to grow in spring, doesn't it? 万物在春天开始生长,不是吗?

Nobody will go, will they? 没有人会去, 是吗?

≥2. **当陈述部分有** never, seldom, hardly, few, little, rarely, scarcely, nothing 等否定词时, 疑问部分则表示为:

There are few apples in the basket, are there? 篮子里没有苹果, 是吗?

He can hardly swim, can he? 他不会游泳, 是吗?

They seldom come late, do they? 他们很少迟到, 是吗?

但当陈述部分有 un-前缀、-less 后缀 (unhappy, dislike, unfriendly, useless) 等含有否 定词缀的派生词时, 疑问部分要用否定形式。

He looks unhappy, doesn't he? 他看上去不高兴, 不是吗?

The girl dislikes history, doesn't she? 这女孩不喜欢历史,不是吗?

- \gg 3. 当陈述部分是 "I/we think, believe, suppose + 从句"时,疑问句应和从句的人称时态保持一致。
 - 如: I think chickens can swim, can't they? 我认为鸡会游泳,不是吗? I didn't think he was happy, was he? 我觉得他不高兴,是吗? We suppose you have finished the project, haven't you? 我们认为你已经完成了这个项目,不是吗?

I don't believe that he can translate this book, can he? 我认为他不会翻译这本书,是吗?

但当主句的主语为第二、三人称时,疑问部分则应与主句相一致(此时,否定只看主句,与从句无关)。

如: Your sister supposes she needs no help, doesn't she? 你姐姐认为她不需要帮助,是吗?
They don't believe she's an engineer, do they?
他们认为她不是工程师,是吗?

≥ 4. 当陈述部分是祈使句时, 疑问部分要根据语气来表达:

Let's go out for a walk, shall we? Let us go out for a walk, will you? Turn on the radio, will you?

- ≥ 5. 当陈述部分有情态动词 must, 问句有 4 种情况:
- 5.1 mustn't 表示"禁止,不可,不必"时,疑问部分通常要用 must。
- 如: You mustn't stop your car here, must you? 你不能把车停在这里,知道吗?
- 5.2 must 表示"有必要"时,疑问部分通常要用 needn't。
- 如: They must finish the work today, needn't they? 他们今天要完成这项工作,是吗?
- 5.3 当 must 用来表示对现在的情况进行推测时, 疑问部分通常要根据 must 后面的动词采用相应的形式。
 - 如: He must be good at English, isn't he? 他英语一定学得很好, 是吗?
- 5.4 当 must + have done 表示对过去的情况进行推测 (一般句中有明确的过去时间状语), 疑问部分要根据陈述部分谓语的情况用 "didn't + 主语"或 "wasn't/weren't + 主语"; 如果强调动作的完成 (一般没有明确的过去时间状语), 疑问部分要用 "haven't/hasn't + 主语"。
 - 如: She must have read the novel last week, didn't she? 她上星期一定读了这本小说,是吗? You must have told her about it, haven't you? 你一定把这件事告诉她了,是吗?

\geq 6. 特殊用法:

- 6.1 You'd better get up early, hadn't you? 你最好早点起床, 不是吗? We had better go right now, hadn't we? 我们最好现在就走, 是不是?
- 6.2 You ought to tell me about it before you go further, oughtn't/shouldn't you? 你应该在你进一步行动之前告诉我,不是吗? Such things ought not to be allowed, ought/should they? 这样的事情不该被允许,是吗?

- 6.3 You have to change your method of operation, don't you? 你必须改变你的操作方法,不是吗?He had to look carefully to see it, didn't he? 他必须仔细地看才能看到,不是吗?
- 6.4 They used to get up early, didn't they? 他们习惯了早起,不是吗?/是不是?
- 6.5 There are some apples in the basket, aren't there? 篮子里有一些苹果,是不是? There isn't any milk left, is there? 没有剩下牛奶,不是吗?
- 6.6 dare, need 为情态动词时, 疑问部分用 need/needn't (dare/daren't) + 主语:
 We need not do it again, need we? 我们不需要重做, 是吗?
 He dare not say so, dare he? 他不敢这样说, 是吗?
 dare, need 为实义动词时, 疑问部分用 do/don't + 主语:
 She doesn't dare to go home alone, does she? 她不敢一个人回家, 是吗?
 We never dared to ask him a question, did we?
 我们从来不敢问他问题,是吧?
- ightharpoonup 7. 反义疑问句的回答用 yes, no, 但是, 当陈述部分是否定形式时, 回答要根据事实回答。
 - 如: They don't work hard, do they? 他们不太努力工作,是吗?
 Yes, they do. 不,他们工作努力。/ No, they don't. 对,他们工作不努力。

Grammar Test: 1. the airport the old gentleman started for his destination. A. Hardly had I reached; than B. Hardly had I reached; when C. No sooner had I reached; when D. No sooner had I reached; when 2. , I would give up smoking as soon as possible. A. Was I in your place B. Were I in your place C. I was in your place D. I were in your place 3. I know you're planning to travel this summer, but do you know? A. how much cost it will be B. how much has it cost C. how much will it cost D. how much it will cost 4. , everything would have been all right. A. He had been here B. Here he had been C. Had he been here D. Been here he had 5. So dangerous that the match had to be stopped. A. the storm was C. was the storm D. did the storm B. were the storm

| 6. | So little abo | ut physics that the lectur | e wa | as completely beyor | nd me. | | |
|-----|--|---|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|--|--|
| | A. I knew | B. did I know | C. | I had known | D. had I knew | | |
| 7. | We are late! Look, | ! | | | | | |
| | A. there the bus goes | | В. | the bus goes there | 2 | | |
| | C. there goes the bus | | D. | D. the bus there goes | | | |
| 8. | Only after he has acq | uired considerable facili | ty in | speaking | to learn to read and | | |
| | write. | | | | | | |
| | A. he began | B. will he begin | C. | did he begin | D. much he begin | | |
| 9. | Busy he is, | he can fulfill the task al | head | of schedule. | | | |
| | A. as | B. because | C. | can we | D. shall we | | |
| 10. | did he kno | ow the police were after h | nim. | | | | |
| | A. So | B. How | C. | Little | D. Even | | |
| 11. | We have been told t | We have been told that under no circumstances the telephone in the office for | | | | | |
| | personal affairs. | | | | | | |
| | A. we could use | B. May we use | C. | We may use | D. although | | |
| 12. | had I gone | had I gone out than I heard the sound of the subway train. | | | | | |
| | A. No sooner | B. May we use | C. | We may | D. Hardly | | |
| 13. | At no time | of what was happening i | n hi | s country. | | | |
| | A. the President was aware | | В. | was the President | aware | | |
| | C. was aware the Pre | esident | D. | aware was the Pre | esident | | |
| 14. | , he must h | oe totally exhausted after | a tv | vo weeks' trip by bu | 1s. | | |
| | A. As he is strong | B. As a strong man | C. | Being very strong | D. Strong as he is | | |
| 15. | Nowhere else in the v | world more attr | racti | ve scenery than in | Switzerland. | | |
| | A. you can find | B. can you find | C. | is found | D. has been found | | |
| 16. | Only when it is corre | ct in every detail | • | | | | |
| | A. his model can really run | | В. | B. can his model really run | | | |
| | C. his model really can run | | D. can really his model run | | | | |
| 17. | Only when your identity has been checked, | | | | | | |
| | A. will you be allowed in | | В. | B. you are allow in | | | |
| | C. will you allow in | | D. | D. you will be allowed in | | | |
| 18. | Only when you have acquired a good knowledge | | ge o | f grammar | _ write correctly. | | |
| | A. will you | B. you can | C. | can you | D. you could | | |
| 19. | I shouted | at the top of my voice di | d he | return his head. | | | |
| | A. Until | B. Not until | C. | It was not until | D. Only until | | |

| 20. | Only that it was my b | irthday. | | | | | |
|-----|--|------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------|--|--|--|
| | A. did she remember | В. | could she rememb | er | | | |
| | C. she remembered | has she remember | ed | | | | |
| 21. | It was from the earliest time | men beg | gan to study the i | natural phenomena and | | | |
| | heavenly bodies. | | | | | | |
| | A. when B. where | C. | that | D. how | | | |
| 22. | It his father | _ made him a lawy | er. | | | | |
| | A. were; that B. was; | that C. | was; which | D. is; which | | | |
| 23. | It was not she took off | her dark glasses _ | I realized | she was the famous star | | | |
| | Zhang Ziyi. | | | | | | |
| | A. when; that B. until; | that C. | until; when | D. when; when | | | |
| 24. | Then a new development that ha | ad far-reaching effe | ects. China opened | l its door to the outside | | | |
| | world in 1978 that had far-reaching effects. | | | | | | |
| | A. Then came a new developme | ent B. | B. Came then a new development | | | | |
| | C. Did a new development cone | then D. | D. Then did a new development come | | | | |
| 25. | You are quite wrong. She | like you. | | | | | |
| | A. can B. has | C. | should | D. does | | | |
| 26. | , it is quite easy to dr | rill a hole on it with | h laser. | | | | |
| | A. Hard although the diamond | В. | Hard as the diamo | ond is | | | |
| | C. As the diamond is hard | D. | How hard is the d | iamond | | | |
| 27. | It was it raised many | difficult questions t | hat the book took a | long time to come out. | | | |
| | A. since B. becau | c. | after | D. when | | | |
| 28. | It was the color of the material | he was s | urprised at. | | | | |
| | A. who B. that | C. | which | D. what | | | |
| 29. | It is he is determined | | | | | | |
| | A. buying a new car that | В. | B. to buy a new car that | | | | |
| | C. to buy a new car what | D. | buying a new car | which | | | |
| 30. | It was not until he arrived at the | ne railway station _ | he realiz | ed he had forgotten his | | | |
| | ticket. | | | | | | |
| | A. before B. since | С. | when | D. that | | | |
| 31. | Only recently to reali | ze the dangers caffe | eine might bring to | our health. | | | |
| | A. that scientists began | В. | have scientists beg | gun | | | |
| | C. scientists have begun | D. | that did scientists | begin | | | |
| 32. | Not until the year of 1954 | made the capi | ital of this country. | | | | |
| | A. that city was | В. | was the city | | | | |

| | C. when the city w | as | D. was when the | city | | | |
|-----|----------------------------------|--|--------------------------|----------------------------|--|--|--|
| 33. | the docto | or right away, he might l | be alive today. | | | | |
| | A. Should he have | gone to | B. If he went to | | | | |
| | C. Were he to go | | D. Had he gone to |) | | | |
| 34. | — Does your fathe | r call you very often? | | | | | |
| | —Yes, my father of | calls about once a week | and | | | | |
| | A. so my brother of | loes | B. my brother doe | es so | | | |
| | C. so does my bro | ther | D. does so my bro | other | | | |
| 35. | succeed | in doing anything. Ever | ybody believes this. | | | | |
| | A. Only by working hard we can | | B. By only working | g hard we can | | | |
| | C. Only by working | g hard can we | D. Only we can b | y working hard | | | |
| 36. | My mother will not | allow me to buy a car $_$ | · | | | | |
| | A. my father will either | | B. either my fathe | B. either my father will | | | |
| | C. either will my fa | ather | D. nor will my fat | her | | | |
| 37. | than he | was asked to start anothe | er long journey to the c | oast. | | | |
| | A. No sooner had he arrived home | | B. No sooner did | he arrive home | | | |
| | C. No sooner he ar | rived home | D. No sooner he h | nad arrived home | | | |
| 38. | Not until a monkey | is several years old _ | to exhibit sign | n of independence from its | | | |
| | mother. | | | | | | |
| | A. does it begin | B. it begins | C. and begin | D. beginning | | | |
| 39. | I known | what he was really like, | , I would never have m | arried him. | | | |
| | A. Have | B. Did | C. Had | D. would | | | |
| 40. | It was not until she | It was not until she got home Jeniffer realized she had lost her keys. | | | | | |
| | A. when | B. that | C. where | D. before | | | |
| 41. | I don't think that th | ne necklace is made of d | liamond,? | | | | |
| | A. do I | B. do you | C. isn't it | D. is it | | | |
| 42. | It's my son's weddin | ng next week, and I hav | ve to do my best for tha | t,? | | | |
| | A. haven't I | B. don't I | C. don't he | D. isn't it | | | |
| 43. | No one left here ye | sterday,? | | | | | |
| | A. didn't they | B. did they | C. didn't one | D. did one | | | |
| 44. | Birds rarely build n | ests in our garden, | ? | | | | |
| | A. don't they | B. do they | C. didn't they | D. did they | | | |
| 45. | You must have been | n to the Great Wall, | ? | | | | |
| | A. mustn't vou | B. haven't you | C. aren't vou | D. must you | | | |

● Keys

1—5 B B D C C 6—10 B C B A C 11—15 B A B D B 16—20 B A C B C 21—25 C B B A D 26—30 B B B B D 31—35 B B D C C 36—40 D A A C B 41—45 D B B B B

Genius only means hard-working all one's life. —Mendeleyev, Russian chemist 天才只意味着终身不懈地努力。—俄国化学家 门捷列夫

Great hopes make a great man. 远大的希望造就伟大的人物。

No way is impossible to courage.

勇士面前无险路。

第九节

主谓一致

≥ 1 . 主谓一致有以下三条原则:

- 1.1 语法一致原则,即在语法形式上取得一致。主语是单数形式,谓语动词也采取单数形式;主语是复数形式,谓语动词也采取复数形式。
 - 如: The students are very young. 学生们都很年轻。
 This picture looks beautiful. 这幅画看起来很漂亮。
- 1.2 意义一致原则,即从意义着眼处理一致关系。主语形式虽是单数但意义是复数,谓语动词也采取复数形式;而有些主语形式虽是复数但意义上看作单数,谓语动词也采取单数形式。
 - 如: The people in that country are fighting for independence.

那个国家的人民正在为独立而战。

The crowd deeply respect their leader. 群众深深地尊敬他们的领袖。

Three years in a strange land seems a long time.

在陌生的地方待三年似乎是一段很长的时间。

- 1.3 就近原则,即谓语动词的单数或复数形式取决于最靠近它的词语。
- 如: Neither he nor I am going to see the film tonight because we are busy. 今晚我和他都不去看电影,因为我们很忙。

≥ 2 . 根据以上三条原则,主谓一致有如下用法:

- 2.1 下列结构做主语,谓语动词一般用单数形式。
- ① 表示时间、重量、长度、价值的名词做主语、谓语动词通常用单数形式。
- 如: Two hundred miles is a long distance. 两百英里是一段很长的距离。
 Ten dollars is a high price for that book. 十美元对那本书来说是很高的价格。
- ② 由 anyone, anything, anybody, no one, nothing, everyone, everybody, everything, someone, somebody, each, either, neither 等不定代词做主语,谓语动词使用单数形式。
 - 如: Someone is knocking at the door. 有人在敲门。
 Anything is better than going to the movie tonight. 做任何事情都比今晚去看电影好。
 - ③ 由 "a series of, a kind of, a portion of + 名词"做主语,谓语动词应用单数形式。
 - 如: A series of debates is scheduled to be held next week. 一系列的辩论将于下周举行。
 There is a kind of bird in the zoo. 动物园里有一种鸟。
 This kind of fruit is very nice. 这种水果很好吃。

注意 kinds of 的用法

All kinds of birds are in the zoo. 动物园里有各种各样的鸟。 Many kinds of plants are green. 许多种植物都是绿色的。

- ④ 由"many a, more than one + 单数名词"做主语,尽管意义上表示复数,但谓语动词仍采用单数形式。
 - 如: Many a person in these circumstances has hoped for a long break. 在这种情况下,许多人都希望能有一个长时间的休息。
 There is more than one answer to your question.
 你的问题不止一个答案。
- ⑤ "名词 + and + 名词"做主语,表示同一人、同一概念或事物时,谓语动词用单数形式。
 - 如: A writer and educator is giving a lecture now.

 一个作家兼教育家正做讲座。(这个人既是作家又是教育家)
 - ⑥ "either (neither) + of + 复数名词 (或代词)"做主语,谓语动词用单数形式。
 - 如: If either of you takes a vacation now, we will not be able to finish the work. 如果你现在想休假,我们将无法完成这项工作。
 Neither of them wants to come. 他们两个都不想来。
- ⑦ 在 each...and each..., every...and every..., many a ...and many a..., no... and no... 等结构之后,谓语动词用单数形式。
 - 如: Each minute and each second is important. 每分每秒都很重要。

Each man and each woman has the right to vote. 每个男人和女人都有选举权。

Every boy and every girl is given a new book. 每个男孩和每个女孩都有一本新书。

Many a desk and many a chair has been take out of the classroom.

许多桌子和椅子都被搬离了教室。

No teacher and no student is in library in holiday.

放假期间没有老师和学生在图书馆里。

- ⑧ 动词不定式、动名词或名词性从句做主语时,谓语动词一般用单数形式。
- 如: What I want to say is none of your business. 我想说什么不关你的事。
 Listening to the classical music is enjoyable. 听古典音乐是令人愉快的。

注意 what 从句做主语时,若从句内容是单数概念,谓语用单数,若含有复数意义,谓语用复数。

What we need is fresh water. 我们需要的是淡水。

What we need are useful books. 我们需要的是有用的书籍。

- ⑨ 以-ics 结尾的复数名词指一门学科时,如:politics (政治学), mathematics (数学), statistics (统计学), acoustics (声学), linguistics (语言学)等,谓语动词用单数形式。
 - 如: Mathematics is what he majors in. 数学是他的专业。
 - 2.2 下列结构做主语,谓语动词单复数形式取决于 of 后的名词。
- ① 由 "all, none, no, most, half, the last, the rest, the remainder + of + 名词"等不定代词做主语、谓语动词单复数形式由 of 后名词的单复数而定。
 - 如: None of the food is wasted. 没有一点食物被浪费。

None of the students were absent. 没有一个学生缺席。

The rest of the lecture was dull. 剩下的讲座都是枯燥无味的。

The rest of the bikes were on sale vesterday. 其余的自行车昨天都减价出售了。

- ② 由"lots of, loads of, scads of, heaps of + 名词"做主语,谓语动词单复数形式由 of 后名词的单复数而定。
 - 如: Lots of work is to be done this week. 这周有许多工作要做。

Lots of people are going to swim this afternoon. 今天下午有很多人要去游泳。

There is loads of milk on the farm. 农场里有大量的牛奶。

There are loads of big red apples on the ground. 地上有许多大红苹果。

There is just scads of stuff on families and marriage, but very little on friendship.

有关婚姻与家庭的材料多如牛毛、而友情方面的却很少。

There is heaps of fun. 有大量的乐趣。

③ 由"分数或百分数十 of + 名词或代词"做主语,谓语动词的单复数形式取决于 of 后名词或代词的单复数形式。

- 如: Three-quarters of the area is cultivated. 这个地区有四分之三的耕地。
 Ninety percent of the students have passed the exam. 90%的学生通过了考试。
- 2.3 下列结构做主语,谓语动词的单复数形式根据意义而定。
- ① 由"the+形容词"这种结构做主语,根据意义一致的原则决定谓语动词的单复数形式。如果表示一类人(如: the rich, the poor, the blind, the deaf, the sick, the young, the old),谓语动词用复数形式;如果表示个人或抽象概念,谓语动词用单数形式。
 - 如: The blind are taught trades in special schools. (表示一类人) 盲人在特殊学校受教育。

The good in him overweighs the bad. (表示抽象概念) 他的优点大于缺点。

The departed was a good friend of his. (表示个人) 死者是他的好朋友。

- ② family, crowd, committee, class, audience, group, government, team, public, majority, minority 等集合名词做主语,谓语动词单复数形式应根据意义而定。
 - 如: The family like to listen to the music. (the family 指这家人,用作复数) 这家人都喜欢听音乐。

The family is small. (the family 指这个家庭,用作单数)这个家庭很小。

The committee has considered your proposal. (the committee 指委员会,用作单数)委员会已经考虑了你的建议。

The committee were arguing for an hour before they gave their votes. (the committee 指委员会的委员们,用作复数)委员们争论了一个小时才给他们投票。

- 2.4 下列结构做主语,谓语动词一般单复数均可。
- ① 数词做主语,不论指人还是指物,谓语通常用复数。
- 如: About twenty people know the secret. 大约二十人知道这个秘密。 Six are missing. 丢了六个。

谓语用单数。

如: Twenty from thirty leaves ten. 三十减二十等于十。 Six sevens are forty-two. 六乘以七等于四十二。(六七四十二。)

以数词为名词词组中心词做主语时,谓语动词一般单复数均可。

- 如: Five and six makes / make eleven. 五加六等于十一。 Seven times ten is / are seventy. 七乘十等于七十。
- ② 由 "one in / out of + 名词"做主语,谓语动词单复数均可。
- 如: One in ten were / was present. 十分之一的人出席了。
- 2.5 下列结构做主语,谓语动词用复数形式。由 and 或 both...and 连接两个单数形式 的名词词组做主语时,一般谓语动词用复数形式。

- 如: A girl and a boy want to go. 一个女孩和一个男孩想去。

 Both rice and wheat are grown in that country. 那个国家种植水稻和小麦。
- 2.6 下列结构做主语,谓语动词单复数形式视具体情况而定。
- ① 由 as well as, together with, along with, with, besides, like, but, except, accompanied by, rather than, including 连接两个名词做主语,谓语单复数形式应由连接词前的名词而定。
 - 如: Tom as well as his parents is going to London. 汤姆和他的父母要去伦敦。

The president of the college, together with the deans, is planning a conference for the purpose of laying down certain regulations.

学院院长和系主任们正在筹备一个会议,目的是制定一些规章制度。

He along with his students is good. 他和他的学生都很好。

The young mother with her two children is coming now.

那个带着两个孩子的年轻母亲现在就要来了。

Besides Tom, Mary went boating. 除了汤姆,玛丽也去划船了。

(Tom 和 Mary 都去划船了)

No one writes to me besides you. 除你以外,没有人给我写信。

The plant manager, like many technicians, is experienced in designing new products. 工厂经理和许多技术员一样,在设计新产品方面经验丰富。

- ②"名词 + of + 名词"做主语、谓语动词单复数形式跟 of 前的名词一致。
- 如: The picture of the children brings back many memories of my past experiences. 孩子们的照片使我回想起我过去的经历。

The effects of cigarette smoking have been proved to be extremely harmful. 吸烟的影响已被证明是极其有害的。

- ③ 由 not only…but also, either…or, neither…nor 或 or 连接的并列主语,通常根据就近原则,谓语动词的单复数形式由最接近它的名词词组的单复数形式决定。
 - 如: Not only Mr. Lin but also his son joined the Party two years ago.

不仅林先生,他的儿子在两年前也入了党。

Either you or I am going there tomorrow. 明天要么你去那里,要么我去那里。

Neither the students nor the teacher knows anything about it.

学生和老师都不知道这件事。

He or you have taken my pen. 他或你拿了我的钢笔。

- ④ there be 句型中的谓语动词单复数形式一般取决于其后真正主语的单复数形式。
- 如: There is a garden in front of the house. 房子前面有个花园。 There are two things I'd like to say here. 我想说两件事。
- ≥ 3. 关于几对容易混淆词组的一致用法
- 3.1 由 "this/that kind/type of + 名词"做主语, 谓语动词用单数形式; 而由 "these/

those kinds/types of + 复数名词"做主语,谓语动词用复数形式。

- 如: This kind of apples is highly priced. 这种苹果价格很高。 Those kinds of tests are good. 那些考试很好。
- 3.2 由 "a number of, a total of, an average of + 复数名词"做主语,谓语动词用复数形式 (a 不是特指);

由"the number of, the total of, the average of + 复数名词"做主语,谓语动词用单数形式 (the 是特指)。

如: A number of students are waiting for the bus. 许多学生在等公共汽车。

The number of the students in this university is increasing yearly.

这所大学的学生人数每年都在增加。

A total of 3,000 letters were received last month. 上个月共收到 3 000 封信。

The total of letters received last month was 3,000. 上个月收到信件共3000 封。

The average of our wage is not very high. 我们工资的平均水平并不高。

We have many books and we have an average of 35 books per person.

我们有很多书,平均每个人有35本书。

- **▶ 4**. **定语从句中的主谓一致**。从句的谓语动词与先行词保持一致。
- 如: The girl who is singing is my friend. 正在唱歌的那个女孩是我的朋友。 It is I who am wrong. 是我错了。
- 4.1 由 "one of + 复数名词 + who / which / that" 引导的定语从句中, 先行词是复数名词, 通常情况下, 从句谓语用复数形式。
 - 如: John is one of the brightest students that have graduated from Peking University. 约翰是北京大学毕业的最聪明的学生之一。

He is one of those persons who always think they are right.

他是那种总觉得自己是对的人。

- 4.2 由 "the only one of + 复数名词 + who / that" 引导的定语从句中,先行词是 the only one 而不是靠近它的复数名词,从句谓语用单数形式。
 - 如: She is the only one of those girls who is willing to take a make-up exam. 她是那些女孩中唯一愿意补考的。

| (| Grammar Test: | | | | — 《 |
|----|--------------------------------------|------|--------------------|-------------|------------|
| 1. | the classroom needs to be cleaned. | | | | |
| | A. Either the office or | В. | The offices and | | |
| | C. Both the office and | D. | The office and | | |
| 2. | Seventy percent of the students here | from | the countryside. | | |
| | A. is B. are | C. | comes | D. has come | |
| 3. | Three-fourths of the homework today | 7. | | | |
| | A. has finished | В. | has been finished | | |
| | C. have finished | D. | have been finished | ł | |

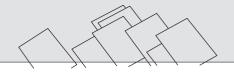
| 4. | The total number of the | e population in China | | about 1, 000 mil | lion | on April 14, 1989. |
|-----|--------------------------|---------------------------|-------|---------------------|-------|--------------------|
| | A. added up | B. was | C. | were | D. | rose |
| 5. | Those who i | n compositions | s, pl | lease hand them in | this | s afternoon. |
| - | A. hasn't handed; his | | В. | haven't handed; the | heir | |
| (| C. has handed; their | | D. | have handed; his | | |
| 6. | Jane is one of the best | students in her class who | o | by their te | ache | er. |
| | A. were praised | B. is praised | C. | was praised | D. | has been praised |
| 7. | He is the only one of t | he students who | _ el | lected. | | |
| - | A. are | B. have | C. | has | D. | is |
| 8. | On the wall | two large portraits. | | | | |
| - | A. hang | B. hangs | C. | hanged | D. | was hanging |
| 9. | A library with five thou | usand books to | the | nation as a gift. | | |
| | A. are offered | B. is offered | C. | have offered | D. | has offered |
| 10. | the present | ts a set of tea t | thing | gs from Jack. | | |
| | A. In; was | B. In; were | C. | Among; was | D. | Among; were |
| 11. | The rest of the magaz | ines within hal | lf an | hour. | | |
| | A. is sold out | B. are sold out | C. | was sold out | D. | were sold out |
| 12. | The Chinese people _ | hard-working ar | nd b | rave. | | |
| | A. are | B. is | C. | has been | D. | are being |
| 13. | "All prese | nt and all goin | g or | well," our monito | or sa | aid. |
| | A. is; is | B. are; are | C. | are; is | D. | is; are |
| 14. | Many a man | come to help us. | | | | |
| | A. have | B. has | C. | is | D. | are |
| 15. | No one but her paren | ts it. | | | | |
| | A. know | B. knows | C. | is knowing | D. | are knowing |
| 16. | You rather than I | going to going can | np. | | | |
| | A. am | B. are | C. | is | D. | were |
| 17. | Alice, together with t | wo boys, for h | avir | ng broken the rule. | | |
| | A. was punished | B. punished | C. | were punished | D. | have been punished |
| 18. | No bird and no beast | in the lonely i | islan | d. | | |
| | A. are | B. is seen | C. | see | D. | sees |
| 19. | Every means | _ prevent the water from | | · | | |
| | A. are used to; pollu | ıting | В. | get used to; pollu | ting | |
| | C. is used to; pollute | ed | D. | is used to; being | poll | uted |
| 20. | Each of the | _ in the ship. | | | | |
| | A. passenger has his | own room | В. | passengers have the | ıeir | own room |
| | C. passenger have the | eir own room | D. | passengers has his | ow | n room |

| 21. | What we need | good textbooks. | | |
|-----|----------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| | A. is | B. are | C. have | D. has |
| 22. | The paper for book | s and newspapers | made from wood. | |
| | A. are | B. is | C. has | D. have |
| 23. | Here a ı | new pair of shoes for yo | ou. | |
| | A. is | B. are | C. have | D. has |
| 24. | Neither of the no | vels which | popular with us | been translated into |
| | Chinese. | | | |
| | A. are; has | B. are; have | C. is; have | D. is; has |
| 25. | Every boy and ever | ry girl to atte | end the evening party. | |
| | A. wish | B. wishes | C. hope | D. are hoping |
| 26. | The secretary and t | treasurer of our compar | ny the meeting. | |
| | A. were to attend | B. are to attend | C. is attend | D. is to attend |
| 27. | Mathematics as wel | ll as other subjects | a science. | |
| | A. was | B. is | C. are | D. belong to |
| 28. | Economics, several | courses of which I hav | e taken thus far, | to be difficult but useful |
| | for almost all stude | nts. | | |
| | A. proves | B. prove | C. have been prove | e D. are proved |
| 29. | | | | t day and night to meet the |
| | deadline. | | | |
| | A. work | B. working | C. is working | D. are working |
| 30. | The Olympic Game | es held every | / years. | |
| | A. are; five | B. is; five | C. are; four | D. is; four |
| 31. | A poet and artist | coming to | speak to us about Chine | ese literature and painting |
| | tomorrow. | | | |
| | A. is | B. are | C. was | D. were |
| 32. | Strangely enough, | a pair of new trousers | among rubbish | |
| | A. were found | | C. has found | |
| 33. | As you can see, th | ne number of cars on ro | oads rising thes | se days. |
| | A. was keeping | B. keep | C. keeps | |
| 34. | Nowadays, a large | number of women | in the clothing ind | lustry. |
| | A. is working | B. works | C. work | D. worked |
| 35. | I, whoy | our friend, will try my | best to help you with yo | ur English. |
| | A. am | B. is | C. are | D. be |
| 36. | The rich | not always happy. | | |
| | A. are | B. is | C. has | D. have |
| 37. | Neither Tom nor Ja | ack and I his | s students. | |
| | | R am | Cis | D was |

| 38. | Mary as well as her si | sters Chinese | in China. | |
|------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| | A. are studying | B. have studied | C. studies | D. study |
| 39. | Neither my father nor | I at home. | | |
| | A. am | B. is | C. are | D. be |
| 40. | Over 80 percent of the | e population of China | peasants. | |
| | A. was | B. is | C. would be | D. are |
| 41. | The glasses | mine. That pair of glass | ses my bro | ther's. |
| | A. are; is | B. are; are | C. is; are | D. is; is |
| 42. | A number of students | gone for an ou | ting. The number of | the students an |
| | increasing year. | | | |
| | A. have; has | B. is; have | C. has; have | D. have; is |
| 43. | There nothi | ng but two looms in the h | nall. There | something wrong with the |
| | machine. | | | |
| | A. was; is | B. was; are | C. were; is | D. were; are |
| 44. | He is one of the boys | who never late | for school. He is the | e only one of the boys who |
| | never late f | for school. | | |
| | A. is; are | B. are; are | C. are; is | D. is; is |
| 45. | No one but Jane | the secret. Nobody | but Mary and I | in the classroom at |
| | that time. | | | |
| | A. know; was | B. knows; was | C. know; were | D. knows; were |
| 46. | The girl as well as his | s parents a bik | e. Not only the stude | ents but also the professor |
| | surprised a | t Mary's answer. | | |
| | A. have; was | B. have; were | C. has; was | D. has; were |
| 47. | Who the gi | rl singing in the next roo | m? Who tl | hese people over there? |
| | A. are; are | B. are; is | C. is; are | D. is; is |
| 48. | Most of the students _ | boys. Most of l | his money | spent on books. |
| | A. are; is | B. is; is | C. are; are | D. is; are |
| 49. | The policeman | standing at the st | reet corner. The po | lice searching |
| | for him. | | | |
| | A. are; is | B. are; are | C. is; are | D. is; is |
| 50. | | | | |
| | Tom's teacher and frie | ena Mr. Smith. | | |
| | Tom's teacher and frie A. has | B. are being | C. is | D. are |
| O T | | | | D. are |
| | A. has | | C. is | |
| | A. has Keys | B. are being 6—10 A D A B | C. is 3 C 11—15 | D. are D A C B B D B A C D |
| Оп | A. has Keys 1—5 A B B B B | B. are being 6—10 A D A B 21—25 B B A | C. is 3 C 11—15 A B 26—30 | D A C B B |

第二章

语法专项练习



| (| Grammar Test 1: | | | | |
|----|---------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. | At no timeth | ne rules of the game. It | was | unfair to punish th | em. |
| | A. they actually broke | | В. | did they actually l | oreak |
| | C. do they actually bre | ak | D. | they had actually | broken |
| 2. | He decided to put | glass on top of his | wa | ll boys _ | over it. |
| | A. broken; to prevent; | to climb | В. | breaking; to preve | ent; climbing |
| | C. to break; to prevent | ting; climbed | D. | broken; to preven | t; from climbing |
| 3. | You used to smoke a pa | ack of cigarettes a day, | | ? | |
| | A. did you | B. used you | C. | didn't you | D. used you not |
| 4. | They insist that a comp | uter does only what think | cing | humans have plan | ned |
| | A. to have it do | B. to have it done | C. | having it done | D. to have do it |
| 5. | As far as I'm concerned | , as we seem the | trair | n we may as well | back to the house. |
| | A. having missed; go | | В. | to miss; to go | |
| | C. to have missed; go | | D. | to have missed; h | ave gone |
| 6. | The songs of Bob Dyla | an are very popular amo | ong | people, who regar | rd him other |
| | musicians. | | | | |
| | A. as superior to | | В. | as more superior t | han |
| | C. as more superior | | D. as superior than | | |
| 7. | Adam is one of those p | eople who, I am sure, a | lway | ys do bes | st to achieve the goal. |
| | A. one's | B his | C. | their | D. ones |
| 8. | Many governments have | e been engaged | _ be | etter welfare service | for their people. |
| | A. in providing | B. to provide | C. | with providing | D. up providing |
| 9. | The reason is | _ this table was not set fe | or p | ractical purpose. It | was arranged to satisfy |
| | the eye. | | | | |
| | A. how | B. why | C. | which | D. that |
| 10 | . Nearly all the sports p | racticed nowadays are co | mpe | etitive. You play to | win, and the game has |
| | little meaning | you do your utmost to | wir | 1. | |

| | A. as soon as B. if | C. though | D. unless | | | |
|-----|--|---------------------|---------------------------------|--|--|--|
| 11. | Were it not for their support and help, we | to finish | the task ahead of time. | | | |
| | A. would not be able | B. were not al | ole | | | |
| | C. should not have been able | D. are not abl | e | | | |
| 12. | I had to admit that a second time | e, the meaning bec | ame clear. | | | |
| | A. reading the letter | B. having read | l the letter | | | |
| | C. as I read the letter | D. the letter b | being read | | | |
| 13. | It is difficult to understand many forei | gners who speak | Chinese, but some of them | | | |
| | speak | | | | | |
| | A. more clear than other | B. more clearl | y than others | | | |
| | C. clearer than other | D. clearer than | n others | | | |
| 14. | It is appropriate that some timet | o thorough study of | the Apollo mission. | | | |
| | A. be devoted | B. should been | n devoted | | | |
| | C. must be devoted | D. devote | | | | |
| 15. | your children have arrived safe a | nd sound, you can | set your mind at ease. | | | |
| | A. Provided that B. If only | C. But that | D. Now that | | | |
| 16. | Linda has kept the wedding picture | she can see it e | every day, as it always reminds | | | |
| | her of their honeymoon in Paris. | | | | | |
| | A. which B. where | C. that | D. having | | | |
| 17. | All flights because of the heavy s | snow, many passen | gers could do nothing but take | | | |
| | the train. | | | | | |
| | A. had been canceled | B. have been | canceled | | | |
| | C. were canceled | D. having bee | n canceled | | | |
| 18. | The government introduced a wage freeze $_$ | inflation | (通货膨胀) might be brought | | | |
| | under control. | | | | | |
| | A. so that B. although | C. while | D. because | | | |
| 19. | If the dog hadn't wakened us we | _ the fire for seve | ral hours, and by that time it | | | |
| | the house next door. | | | | | |
| | A. wouldn't have noticed; might have spread to | | | | | |
| | B. hadn't noticed; had spread to | | | | | |
| | C. wouldn't notice; would spread to | | | | | |
| | D. didn't notice; should have spread to | | | | | |
| 20. | It was in the name of freedom | Kennedy led his | country deeper into its cruel, | | | |
| | hopeless war in Vietnam. | | | | | |
| | A. when B. what | C. while | D. that | | | |

| G | rammar Test 2: | | | |
|-----|--------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. | Not only the | e film, but he met and ta | lked with the direc | etor as well. |
| | A. he did see | B. did he see | C. had he seen | D. he saw |
| 2. | I don't like watching fo | ootball games, and | | |
| | A. she doesn't too | B. either doesn't she | C. neither does s | she D. she doesn't neither |
| 3. | up with the | he world's best automol | bile manufacturers | , you've got to modernize |
| | management, not only | equipment. | | |
| | A. Catching | B. To catch | C. Having caugh | t D. To be caught |
| 4. | There is no denying the | fact quite a nu | mber of insects, bire | ds and animals are dying out. |
| | A. that | B. why | C. how | D. which |
| 5. | The most important par | rt of a computer is the co | mputer brain | CPU. |
| | A. known | B. known as | C. had know | D. to be known as |
| 6. | The first thing you sh | ould have learned at co | ollege is to know | on your own. It's time you |
| | able to man | | | |
| | A. could be | B. should be | C. were | D. are |
| 7. | A new all-purpose build | ding in the mo | untain village for sh | nopping, business and indoor |
| | sports. | | | |
| | A. is not constructing | | B. is now being | constructed |
| | C. has now constructing | ıg | D. has been now | constructed |
| 8. | I quite understand | to discuss the mat | tter under the circu | ımstances. |
| | A. not you wanting | B. you to not want | C. not your want | ing D. your not wanting |
| 9. | Do you feel like | to a film or would y | ou rather | _ at home? |
| | A. to go; to stay | B. going; stay | C. to go; staying | g D. going; to stay |
| 10. | The reason | I didn't go to the party | was I go | t a bad cold that evening. |
| | A. because; that | | B. because; because | |
| | C. why; that | | D. why; because | • |
| 11. | Since we didn't have | any time to spare, we co | ouldn't visit all the | places |
| | | ce to visit | | |
| | C. where I would have | ve liked to | D. which I shoul | d have liked to visit |
| 12. | your own p | orivate feelings may be, i | t's best to take his | advice. |
| | A. Whatever | B. What | C. However | D. How |
| 13. | Only then did the Car | ptain the situa | tion he and his fell | ow soldiers were in. |
| | A. aware of | B. aware | | e of D. become aware |
| 14. | | eal report, 75 | percent of the cu | urrent violent crime is drug |
| | related. | D | | D 1 |
| 1 ~ | - | B. as many as | | D. as much as |
| 15. | I don't regret | her what I thought | ot her husband, | even though it might have |

| | upset her. | | | | | |
|-----|----------------------------|------------------------------|--------|---------------------|-------|-------------------------------------|
| | A. telling | B. to tell | C. | that I will tell | D. | to have to tell |
| 16. | The more time you w | aste, the easier it is to go | o on | time. | | |
| | A. waste | B. to waste | C. | wasting | D. | wasted |
| 17. | two hours | daily has made considera | ıble | difference to my pl | nysio | eal condition. |
| | A. Walking | | В. | Having been walk | ed | |
| | C. I walk | | D. | Having walked | | |
| 18. | If this university | such a good reputa | ation | , I would not have | con | ne here. |
| | A. didn't have | B. doesn't have | C. | hadn't had | D. | hasn't had |
| 19. | It was the training the | at he had received in the | ıt we | ell-known transnati | onal | company |
| | made him such a goo | d sales manager. | | | | |
| | A. that | B. where | C. | when | D. | what |
| 20. | I think Mrs. Allen _ | be happier if sh | e ha | d a job outside the | hor | ne. |
| | A. would | B. will | C. | can | D. | was going to |
| C | rammar Test 3: | | | | | |
| G | 1 diffinition 1 cst 5; | | | | | <u> </u> |
| 1. | A month ago, at Giza, | , just outside Cairo, cons | struc | ction workers unear | thed | l (掘出) some flat |
| | stones were | written the rules for train | ning | school-leavers. | | |
| | A. where | B. there | C. | on which | D. | in which |
| 2. | The plant community | in a certain a | rea l | becomes a food sor | urce | for a community of |
| | animals to t | hat area. | | | | |
| | A. grown; attracting | | В. | growing; attracted | ł | |
| | C. growing; attracting | | D. | grown; attracted | | |
| 3. | The living standard too | lay is much higher than _ | | · | | |
| | A. in 1979 | B. 1979 | C. | that in 1979 | D. | which in 1979 |
| 4. | I was one of those peop | le who went to college | | exactly what I w | ante | d to do with my life. |
| | A. knowing | B. to know | C. | had known | D. | knew |
| 5. | The salesman wants to | get of the pro | fit th | nan he has been of | fered | l. |
| | A. ten percent more | | В. | ten more percent | | |
| | C. more than ten perc | ent | D. | as much as ten pe | erce | nt |
| 6. | The material of the cou | urse is arranged in 24 teac | ching | g units, each | | $_{\mathrm{-}}$ of an introduction, |
| | a text, and some writte | en exercises. | | | | |
| | A. has been consisted | B. consisting | C. | consists | D. | consisted |
| 7. | The truth is that it is or | nly by studying history | | _ we can learn wha | t to | expect in the future. |
| | A. in which | B. that | C. | in that | D. | by which |

| 8. | In some countries, | is called "equality" | does not really mean e | equal rights for all people. |
|-----|--------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| | A. which | B. what | C. that | D. one |
| 9. | By the time this article | e goes to press, I | my master's degre | e in hand. |
| | A. would have | B. would have had | C. will have had | D. should have |
| 10. | the enviro | nment requires planning | and cooperation of all | countries on earth. |
| | A. To be improving | | B. Improving | |
| | C. Having been imp | roved | D. Improvement | |
| 11. | In fact, you | all the way to meet m | e here. I can manage | to find the place. |
| | A. don't need to con | ne | B. needn't come | |
| | C. didn't need to con | me | D. needn't have con | me |
| 12. | The young pilot had o | completed a cross-country | y flight he al | lmost collided into another |
| | aircraft. | | | |
| | A. of which time | B. which | C. at which | D. during which |
| 13. | to the fund | eral of a big shot (大人 | 物) in show business, | , the couple tried to get a |
| | chance to be seen the | ere. | | |
| | A. Invited not | | B. Not having invit | ed |
| | C. Weren't invited | | D. Not having been | n invited |
| 14. | It has been more tha | n ten years I | visited Shanghai and I' | m determined to enjoy my |
| | stay there this time. | | | |
| | A. after | B. when | C. that | D. since |
| 15. | Scientists say it may | be ten or twenty years | it is possib | ole for common people to |
| | travel to the moon. | | | |
| | A. while | B. before | C. after | D. since |
| 16. | equal opp | portunities, the twins, | having identical brain | ns, would have tested at |
| | roughly the same lev | el. | | |
| | A. Given | B. To give | C. Giving | D. Having given |
| 17. | that I had | lost Tad's address, I die | dn't know where I coul | d find him. |
| | A. Due to | B. Owing to | C. Because the fact | t D. Owing to the fact |
| 18. | It is reported that | Chinese farmers are ea | rning mone | ey today as they did 15 |
| | years ago. | | | |
| | A. more than twice | | B. as twice | |
| | C. twice more than | | D. more than twice | as much |
| 19. | It seems to me that | the main requirement of | f an international lang | guage is that it |
| | easily learned. | | | |
| | A can be | B is able to be | C he | D must be |

| 20 | . A survey was carried | out on the death rate of | f ne | w-born babies in t | he city, | were |
|----|-------------------------|----------------------------|-------------|----------------------|-----------------------|----------|
| | surprising. | | | | | |
| | A. as results | | В. | which results | | |
| | C. the results of it | | D. | the results of whi | ich | |
| G | Grammar Test 4: | | | | | — |
| 1. | in an atmos | phere of simple living wa | ıs wl | nat her parents wis | hed for. | |
| | A. The girl was educa | | | The girl educated | | |
| | C. The girl's being ed | | | The girl to educa | | |
| 2. | _ | we could have | | | | |
| | A. but | B. so | | and | D. or | |
| 3. | | s are worth considering, | | | unwise to place too | much |
| | importance on them. | ζ, | | | r | |
| | A. As | B. Since | C. | Provided | D. While | |
| 4. | | isit him in the hospital h | | | | fully |
| | occupied the whole of | _ | | • | | , |
| | A. were | B. was | C. | had been | D. have been | |
| 5. | The professor can hard | ly find sufficient grounds | | | | vor of |
| | the new theory. | | | | C | |
| | - | B. on which | C. | that | D. on that | |
| 6. | Written in a hurry, | | | | | |
| | | takes in the paper | В. | there were a lot of | of mistakes in the pa | aper |
| | C. we found plenty of | | D .1 6.11 6 | | | |
| 7. | | a strict teacher who tell | | | | orefer |
| | to work on t | | | - | | |
| | A. leaving | | C. | having been left | D. to be left | |
| 8. | The statesman and writ | ter you talked with last n | nontl | n at toda | ay's conference. | |
| | | B. was presenting | | | | g |
| 9. | The science of medicin | ne, we owe a | grea | t deal, is perhaps | the most important | of all |
| | the sciences. | | | | | |
| | A. in which | B. to which | C. | at which | D. for which | |
| 10 | . New York area is said | d more Jews th | nan | any other city outsi | ide Israel in the wor | d. |
| | A. to have | B. having | C. | to have had | D. having had | |
| 11 | . A Dream of the Red (| Chamber is said | _ in | dozens of languag | es in the last decad | е. |
| | A. to have been trans | slated | В. | to be translated | | |
| | C to translate | | D | to have translated | 1 | |

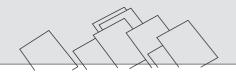
| 12. | The salesman told me | that a good set of tires | to last at leas | st twenty thousand miles. |
|-----|-------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| | A. was supposed | B. is supposed | C. were supposed | D. are supposed |
| 13. | The accident | him of his sight and | the use of his legs. | |
| | A. derived | B. disabled | C. deprived | D. seized |
| 14. | My trouble was that I | wanted to hug him and | I was afraid of | if I climbed up on his |
| | bed to do it. | | | |
| | A. things Mama would | ld say | B. which Mama wou | ıld say |
| | C. what Mama would | say | D. that Mama would | l say |
| 15. | science fic | tion readers became awa | are of robots, writers v | vere presenting stories of |
| | automatons who could | l surpass men. | | |
| | A. Long ago | B. Before long | C. Long since | D. Long before |
| 16. | Only by asking his cl | osest friends | what had happened. | |
| | A. he did discover | | B. he discovered | |
| | C. had he discovered | | D. did he discover | |
| 17. | Although our team | during the first l | half of the game, they r | allied and won the game. |
| | A. could lose | B. would have lost | C. was losing | D. would lose |
| 18. | Some of the greatest | scholars are incapable v | when it comes to | on their knowledge to |
| | others. | | | |
| | A. having it pass | B. passing | C. have it passed | D. pass |
| 19. | No one had a slightes | t idea that the man | money from the | company for a long time. |
| | A. had been stealing | B. should have stolen | C. had stolen | D. used to steal |
| 20. | The famous painting i | s believed by | a professional thief a | couple of days ago. |
| | A. to be stolen | | B. to have stolen | |
| | C. to have been stole | en | D. having been stole | en |
| C | manner Took 5 | | | |
| G | rammar Test 5: | | | |
| 1. | As a football referee, | hate seeing a player _ | to be hurt, in | order to get a free kick. |
| | A. to pretend | B. pretending | C. to be pretending | D. be pretending |
| 2. | In this public library, | readers are expected, af | ter reading, to put book | ks, magazines, etc. back |
| | they belong. | | | |
| | A. where | B. what | C. to which | D. on which |
| 3. | The secret of happiness | s is not in doing what on | e likes, in li | iking what one has to do. |
| | A. however | B. yet | C. but | D. and |
| 4. | The father is always _ | about his child | 's success at school. | |
| | A. boasted | B. boasting | C. being boasted | D. boasts |

| 5. | The scope of his know | vledge is he | has never failed to ans | wer any question his fellow | | | |
|-----|-----------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|--|--|--|
| | students ask him. | | | | | | |
| | A. as such | B. so that | C. so as | D. such that | | | |
| 6. | You, for the | ne concert was canceled | d due to the sudden illi | ness of the first violinist. | | | |
| | A. didn't need to con | ne | B. needn't have c | ome | | | |
| | C. need not to come | | D. do not need co | ome | | | |
| 7. | If you love a person, | you surely hope that th | ney will become | they can become. | | | |
| | A. all that | B. all what | C. that all | D. that | | | |
| 8. | The service in the | hospital was terrible. | Patients often had | to wait for half an hour | | | |
| | without | | | | | | |
| | A. attending to | | B. being attended | to | | | |
| | C. being attended | | D. having been at | ttending | | | |
| 9. | In a conversation, | think about wh | at you're going to say n | next, try to understand what | | | |
| | people are saying and | | | | | | |
| | A. instead of | B. rather than | C. except for | D. except | | | |
| 10. | The weather | so fine, they decid | ed to go to the Ming T | Готь Reservoir and have a | | | |
| | good swim there. | | | | | | |
| | A. is | B. to be | C. being | D. been | | | |
| 11. | The city lies where t | wo rivers meet, | empties into the R | ded Sea. | | | |
| | A. the longer of them | | B. the longer of the two | | | | |
| | C. the longer of whi | ch | D. longer of which | h | | | |
| 12. | I have learned that d | lreams are never destroy | ved by circumstances; o | dreams are born in the heart | | | |
| | and mind, and only | there | | | | | |
| | A. they can never d | ie | B. can they never die | | | | |
| | C. never they can d | ie | D. never can they die | | | | |
| 13. | When they first come | e to college, they often | find to ada | pt to the way of life there. | | | |
| | A. difficult | B. difficulty | C. the difficult | D. it difficult | | | |
| 14. | Because it is challen | nging, golf offers oppo | rtunity for sportsmansh | nip, (you play) | | | |
| | alone or in a group. | | | | | | |
| | A. if | B. however | C. neither | D. whether | | | |
| 15. | The U.S. is definite | ely a telephone country. | This is due partly to | telephone service | | | |
| | is good, whereas pos | stal service is less effic | ient. | | | | |
| | A. the reason that | B. the reason which | C. the fact that | D. the fact which | | | |
| 16. | He is the only one o | of the sons in the family | who receive | ed higher education. | | | |
| | A. are | B. is | C. have | D. has | | | |

| 17. Humans everywhere are alike in this respect. | | there is any extra money, they seek | | | | | | | |
|--|-----|-------------------------------------|-------------------|------------|-----------------|----------|------------------|---------------|--------------|
| | | to raise | e their standard | of living | | | | | |
| | | A. As | long as | B. As s | soon as | C. U | nless | D. Because | e |
| | 18. | Someti | mes I think how | v grateful | I would be toda | y if I _ | more b | ack in high | school about |
| | | what re | eally matters. | | | | | | |
| | | A. had | d learned | B. learn | ned | C. di | d learn | D. would l | earn |
| | 19. | In the | | | disease that | the ve | ery mention of i | t strikes ter | ror into the |
| | | | o dreadful | B. so d | readful a | C. su | ich dreadful a | D. a such | dreadful |
| | 20. | When | I began to mo | | | | e man | | |
| | | | iately told me to | | | ĺ | | _ , . | , |
| | | A. mu | st have guessed | l | | B. gu | iessed | | |
| | | | d guessed | | | D. co | ould guess | | |
| | От | Keys | | | | | | | |
| | | Gramn | nar Test 1 | | | | | | |
| | | 1—5 | BDCAC | 6—10 | A C A D D | 11—1 | 5 A C B A D | 16—20 | BDAAD |
| | | Gramn | nar Test 2 | | | | | | |
| | | 1—5 | BCBAB | 6—10 | C B D B C | 11—1 | 5 D A C D A | 16—20 | CACAA |
| | | Gramn | nar Test 3 | | | | | | |
| | | 1—5 | СВСАА | 6—10 | ВВАСВ | 11—1 | 5 D D D D B | 16—20 | A D D C D |
| | | Gramn | nar Test 4 | | | | | | |
| | | 1—5 | C C D B B | 6—10 | D D A B A | 11—1 | 5 A A C C D | 16—20 | D C B A C |
| | | Gramn | nar Test 5 | | | | | | |
| | | 1—5 | BACBD | 6—10 | ВАВВС | 11—1 | 5 C B D D C | 16—20 | DAABA |

第三章

词汇知识



第一节 ______词汇考查重点

语境词汇题又叫上下文语义题, 这类试题的四个选择词类相同、词义不同, 主要考查

专升本词汇考点主要涉及了语境词汇题、近义题、近形题和固定搭配题。

一、语境词汇题

| 考 | 生对四个选择项的认证 | 司能力,考生只要证 | 从识其中三个词, 一般 | 设就能确定正确答案 。 |
|----|-----------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| ۱. | He spoke so | that even his oppor | nents were won over by | his arguments. |
| | A. clearly B. | convincingly | C. emphatically | D. aloud |
| 2. | Not having a good co | ommand of English | can be a serious | preventing you from |
| | achieving your goals. | | | |
| | A. obstacle B. | fault | C. offense | D. distress |
| | 考生只要理解以上两 | 个句子和各个选项的 | 勺词义,就能非常容易 | 地确定正确答案为 B 和 A。 |
| | 该题目不涉及词性的 | り辨析或句型搭配力 | 方面的知识。 | |
| | | | | |
| | 、近形词辨析 | | | |
| | 近形词辨析主要考金 | 查考生的辨词能力 | 。真正意义上的近形 | 干扰题的四个选项看似相 |
| 似 | ,但意义差别较大。 | | | |
| ١. | Someday software will | translate both writter | n and spoken language | so well that the need for any |
| | common second langua | ge could | | |
| | A. describe | B. decline | C. delete | D. depress |
| 2. | He hoped the firm wou | ld him to | the Paris branch. | |
| | A. exchange | B. transmit | C. transfer | D. remove |
| 3. | The European Union co | ountries were once w | vorried that they would | not have supplies |
| | of petroleum. | | | |
| | A. sufficient | B. proficient | C. efficient | D. potential |

| 4. A smart appearance makes a | _ impression at an interview. | |
|--|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| A. favorite B. favorable | C. favoring | D. favored |
| 5. As we all know, fresh air, nutritious f | food and exercise to b | etter health. |
| A. attribute B. distribute | C. add | D. contribute |
| 考生只要能理解题干的句意,并注 | E 意每题四个选项的拼写以及构 | 为词上的不同,就能比 |
| 较有把握地确定正确答案分别为: B, | C, A, B 和 D。因为要尽可能 | E使四个选项在外形上 |
| 相近, 所以一般都是同根词干扰。一方 | 可面, 考生要注意同根词的积累 | 累,另一方面,在平时 |
| 的学习中要有意识地积累词形相近的词 | 刊汇。 | |
| abroad—aboard | access—excess | adapt—adopt |
| example—sample | inquire—require | ensure—insure |
| contract—contact | affect—effect | staff—stuff |
| tend—intend | through—thorough | wander—wonder |
| appeal—appear | principle—principal | sail—sale |
| attach—attack | confirm—conform | inferior—interior |
| alive—living | lie—lay | scare—scarce |
| compliment—complement | imaginary—imaginative | |
| context—contest—content | late— latter—lately—latest | protest—protect |
| except—excerpt—expectation | ident—accident | expend—expand |
| inspect—aspect—respect—suspect | lose—lose—lost | purpose—propose |
| | | |
| 三、近义词辨析主要考查考生的辨证 | 可能力 | |
| 这是一类传统考题中比较典型的题 | 5型,专升本考试中,近义干扰 | 忧题各个选项之间的干 |
| 扰系数并不大,一般只需抓住题干中的 | 的个别关键词并对四个选项的 | 基本用法搭配有所了 |
| 解,就能选出正确答案。 | | |
| 1. This hotel \$60 for a single | room with bath. | |
| A. pays B. costs | C. prices | D. charges |
| 解析:本题四个选项都与钱有关, | 但只有 D. charge (索价,要 | 价)符合题意。 |
| 2. The lawyer advised him to drop the | , since he stands little c | hance to win. |
| A. event B. incident | C. case | D. affair |
| 解析:本题中虽然 A, B, C, D 都 | 有"事件,事务"的意思,但 | 旦是 case 还有"案件" |
| 的意思,而律师打交道的只能是 case (| 案件), 所以本题选 C。 | |
| | | |

四、固定搭配

这类试题在词汇题中所占比重较大,主要包括动词的句型用法,名词、形容词与介词、副词的搭配等。

| 1. | th | ne content is concerne | ed, the book is wo | rth reading. | | | |
|----|---|-------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|--|--|
| | A. As long | as B. As fa | r as C. | As well as | D. As good as | | |
| | 解析:该 | 题的正确答案为 B, | 搭配 as far as is/ | are concerned 意为 | "就而言, 对 | | |
| 来 | 说"。 | | | | | | |
| 2. | Not all perso | ons who are arrested | and with | a crime are guilty | , and the main function | | |
| | of criminal courts is to determine who is guilty under the law. | | | | | | |
| | A. sentence | d B. accus | ed C. | prosecuted | D. charged | | |
| | 解析:该 | 题的正确答案为 D, | 搭配 be charged | with sth. 意为"被 | 足起诉,被控告"。 | | |
| 3. | When worke | ers are organized in tr | ade unions, emplo | yers find it hard to | lay them | | |
| | A. off | B. aside | C. | out | D. down | | |
| | 解析:该 | 题的正确答案为 A, | 搭配 lay off 意为 | "(暂时)解雇" | 0 | | |

第二节

英语词汇构成法

一、派生法

- 1. 加前缀
- 1.1 表示否定
- ① 不, 非 un-, in-, im-, non-, dis-, il-, ir-

unfortunately 不幸地, informal 非正式的, impossible 不可能, impatient 没有耐心的, nonprescription 非处方的, nonsmoker 不抽烟的人, dishonest 不诚实的, illegal 非法的, irregular 不规则的

② 反对 anti-

antiwar 反战的, antiaircraft 防空的, antipathy 反感

③ 错误 mis-, mal-

mislead 误导; misunderstand 误解; malfunction 失灵, 发生故障; maltreatment 虐待

④ 相反 counter-

counterattack 反攻, counter-clockwise 逆时针, counterpart 对应的人或物

- 1.2 表数量
- ① 半 semi-

semicircle 半圆

②二,双bi-

bicycle 自行车, bilingual 通两国语言的, bimonthly 双月刊

3 \equiv tri-

triangle 三角形,三角关系

④多 multi-

multifunctional 多功能的, multinational 多民众的, multiply 相乘

1.3 表程度大小

① 在……之上, 超越 super-

superior 比……优秀, supernatural 超自然地, supermarket 超市, supervise 监督

② 在······之下, 不足 under-

underdeveloped 不发达的

③ 在……之上, 越过 over-

oversensitive 过分敏感的, overtime 加班时间

④ 极小的, 微型的 mini-

miniskirt 超短裙, minibus 小公共汽车

1.4 位置,方向

① 次于, 在下 sub-

subway 地铁, submarine 潜水艇, subcommittee 小组

② 在一起, 交互 inter-

internet 互联网, international 国际的, 世界的

③ 横过, 贯穿 trans-

transplant 移植, transmit 发射, transform 转变

④ 中, 中等的 mid-

midair 半空中

1.5 表时间和顺序

① 在前 fore-, pre-, ex-

foretell 预言, 预告; foremost 最重要的, 首先; pre-war 站前 pre-warning 预警; ex-wife 前妻; ex-president 前总统

② 之后 post-

post-war 战后, post-it note 即时贴, 便利贴

③ 返回, 重复 re-

react 反应, rely 回答, revise 修改

1.6 合作, 统一

① 合一 co- (变体为: col-, com-, con-, cor-等)

coexist 共存, collaborate 合作, concentrate 集中, correlate 相互关联

② 统一 uni-

uniform 制服, union 联合, universe 宇宙

2. 加后缀

2.1 名词后缀

-er, -or, -ee, -eer, -ist, -ess, -ant engineer 工程师; employee 雇员; psychologist 心理学家; hostess 女主人, 东道主; servant 佣人, 仆人; applicant 申请人

-ability, -ibility adaptability 适应性, 可变性; invisibility 看不见

-hood (……状态, ……时期)

manhood 男子, 男子气概; childhood 儿童时代

-ful (……的量) handful 一把, mouthful 一口, spoonful 一勺

-tion, -ion action 行动, 活动; education 教育; organization 组织

-ment movement 行动, development 发展

-age coverage 覆盖,覆盖范围; breakage 破坏,裂开; shrinkage 收缩,降低

-ness usefulness 有用,有益; selfishness 自私自利,自我中心

-ity (-ty) activity 活动, 行动, 活跃; rapidity 迅速, 急速; changeability 可变性

-ism idealism 理想主义,唯心主义; realism 现实主义; tourism 旅游业

-al proposal 建议;求婚; arrival 到达; refusal 拒绝
-ship friendship 友谊; membership 资格, 会员身份

2.2 动词后缀

-ify beautify 美化; diversify 使多样化; simplify 使简单化

-ize modernize 使现代化; realize 实现, 认识到; popularize 普及, 使通俗化

-en widen 放宽,变宽; darken 变黑,变模糊; threaten 威胁,恐吓

2.3 形容词后缀

-able (-ible) changeable 无常的,可改变的; readable 可读的,易读的; convincible

可信服的, 可说服的

-ful useful 有用的, 有意义的; hopeful 有希望的; fearful 可怕的, 担

心的

-less speechless 说不出话的,非言语所能表达的; childless 无子女的,

meaningless 无意义的, 无目的的

-ly manly 雄赳赳的, 男子气概的; brotherly 兄弟般的, 亲切的;

friendly 友好的

-like childlike 孩子似的, 天真烂漫的; statesmanlike 有政治家风度的, 与

政治家相称的

-y sandy 多沙的; silky 丝绸一样的, 柔滑的; sunny 阳光充足的, 快活的

-ish foolish 傻的; girlish 少女的; blackish 带黑色的

-some troublesome 麻烦的,令人苦恼的; tiresome 烦人的,无聊的

-ed pointed 突出的, 锐利的; wooded 树木繁茂的

-al cultural 文化的; personal 个人的,亲自的; musical 音乐的, 悦耳的

-ous glorious 光荣的, 辉煌的; gracious 亲切的, 高尚的; erroneous 错误

的, 不正确

-ic (-ical) historic 有历史意义的, 历史上著名的; historical 历史的, 史学的;

heroic 英雄的, 英勇的

-ive attractive 有吸引力的; talkative 多话的, 爱说的; sensitive 敏感的

2.4 副词后缀

-ly happily 快乐地,幸福地; boldly 大胆地,冒失地; attentively 聚精

会神地

-wise otherwise 否则; clockwise 顺时针方向地

二、合成法

1. 合成名词

handbook, spaceship, bottleneck, highway, deadline, pickpocket, worksite, sleeping-pill, ruling class, running dog, by-product, overcoat, aftereffect, heartbeat, handwriting, house-keeping, breakthrough, flyover, handout, statesman, forget-me-not, touch-me-not

2. 合成形容词

home-sick, world-famous, snow-white, bitter-sweet, light-blue, deaf-mute, freezing-cold, soaking-wet, peace-loving, English-speaking, home-made, snow-covered, easy-going, good-looking, new-born, quick-frozen, full-time, new-type, large-scale, first-rate, second-hand, a five-year plan, short-sighted, knee-deep

3. 合成动词

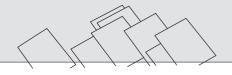
sightsee, baby-sit, window-shop, day-dream, white-wash, safeguard

4. 合成副词

upstairs, out-doors, whole-heartedly, eye-to-eye, face-to-face, hand-in-hand

第四章

词汇专项练习



| V | ocabulary Test 1: | | | |
|----|--------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. | | m, people's state of mind | tend to keep | _ with the rapid changes |
| | of society. | | | |
| | | B. progress | | |
| 2. | Our new house is very | for me as I ca | n get to the office in f | ive minutes. |
| | A. adaptable | B. comfortable | C. convenient | D. available |
| 3. | The people who objecte | ed to the new road were to | ld that since work had | already started there was |
| | no point in | | | |
| | A. contradicting | B. protesting | C. competing | D. refusing |
| 4. | Cambridge had announ | ced plans to establish a b | usiness school | the master's degree in |
| | business administration | ı . | | |
| | A. representing | B. offering | C. presenting | D. supplying |
| 5. | The directors' | _ to improve the comprel | nensive management in | the company have been |
| | very effective. | | | |
| | A. efforts | B. stocks | C. options | D. impressions |
| 6. | Eiffel Tower is a great | tourist drawing | g millions of visitors ev | ery year. |
| | | B. attraction | | |
| 7. | Young people are not | to stand and | look at works of art; | they want art they can |
| | participate in. | | | |
| | A. conservative | B. content | C. confident | D. generous |
| 8. | | Spanish when she went to | | C |
| | | B. keep up | | D. catch up |
| 9. | Please the re | elevant entry to find the | correct word for the ite | m concerned. |
| | | B. consult | | |
| 10 | |) fail we shall have to _ | | - |
| | | B. account for | | D. resort to |
| 11 | . He was criticized beca | ause he did not take imn | nediate action when he | e was that the |
| | submarine had sunk. | | | |
| | | B reformed | C informed | D unformed |

| 12. | William Penn, the fo | under of Pennsylvania, _ | defended the | right of every citizen to |
|-----|--------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| | freedom of choice in | religion. | | |
| | A. peculiarly | B. indifferently | C. energetically | D. inevitably |
| 13. | I must to y | ou that my delay in answ | vering your letter is due | e mainly to laziness. |
| | A. regret | B. apologize | C. confess | D. complain |
| 14. | The computer revol | ution may well change | society as | as did the Industrial |
| | Revolution. | | | |
| | A. likely | B. insignificantly | C. basically | D. comparatively |
| 15. | A survey released las | t week has suggested tha | at air pollution poses a | threat to the continued |
| | of this rare | e species. | | |
| | A. existence | B. presence | C. absence | D. reference |
| 16. | Allen's mother is very | short his mo | other, he is tall and sli | m. |
| | A. Dislike | B. Unlike | C. Alike | D. Liking |
| 17. | The manager tells us | that we are in | with several other com | panies for the contract. |
| | A. announcement | B. activity | C. payment | D. competition |
| 18. | The hopes, goals, fea | ars and desires | widely between men a | and women, between the |
| | rich and the poor. | | | |
| | A. alter | B. shift | C. transfer | D. vary |
| 19. | I'm sorry to | _ you, but can you direc | t me to the railway stat | ion? |
| | A. interfere | B. offend | C. impress | D. bother |
| 20. | I hope that you'll be | more careful in typing the | e letter. Don't | anything. |
| | A. lack | B. withdraw | C. omit | D. leak |
| V | ocabulary Test 2: | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | ces not only th | ne recovery of the sick | but also promote better |
| | health through prevent | ive medicine. | | |
| | A. permit | B. hasten | C. determine | D. exclude |
| 2. | The long time disagree | ment of the couple finally | y their divor | ce. |
| | A. stepped up | B. resulted in | C. brought up | D. set forth |
| 3. | Gun-control supporters | claim that handgun own | ers are more | _ to shoot themselves or |
| | their loved ones to stop | a criminal. | | |
| | A. likely | B. alike | C. unlike | D. like |
| 4. | Low pay and poor hous | sing conditions cause grea | _ | intellectuals in the city. |
| | A. disapproval | B. disgrace | C. distrust | D. dissatisfaction |
| 5. | In short, every time th | e issue of family structur | re has been raised, the | e response has been first |

| | , then retrea | t, and finally silence. | | |
|-----|-------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| | A. dispute | B. doubt | C. solution | D. conflict |
| 6. | Dr. Hill has just recei | ved an invitation from Wa | ashington University to | join the as a |
| | full-time professor. | | | |
| | A. committee | B. association | C. institution | D. staff |
| 7. | If I become aware that | at a project is | _ in fun or meaning, | I think seriously about |
| | dropping it. | | | |
| | A. lacking | B. leaking | C. licking | D. locking |
| 8. | Yesterday I met an old | friend of mine | _, which was really a | pleasant surprise. |
| | A. by means of | B. by the way | C. by chance | D. by and large |
| 9. | He prepares | and contracts by which | one person makes sure | that another person will |
| | carry out his promises. | | | |
| | A. agreements | B. documents | C. instruments | D. statements |
| 10. | Eye contact is importa | ant in relationships becau | se it to show | intimacy, attention and |
| | influence. | | | |
| | A. assists | B. promotes | C. serves | D. resorts |
| 11. | There are no specific | c rules concerning eye | behavior except that i | it is considered rude to |
| | especially | at strangers. | | |
| | A. stare | B. look | C. glance | D. glimpse |
| 12. | Many doctors are sti | ll general practitioners, | but the is | toward specialization in |
| | medicine. | | | |
| | A. tendency | B. security | C. rumor | D. significance |
| 13. | Benard James was a s | scientist. To be | _, he was an ornitholo | gist: he studied birds. |
| | A. accurate | B. correct | C. exact | D. precise |
| 14. | Professor Smith has b | een to design | a new course on intern | ational finance. |
| | A. disappointed | B. pointed | C. appointed | D. dispointed |
| 15. | shyness an | d fear, they felt very un | ncomfortable meeting 1 | people even though they |
| | understood that their | fear was not rational. | | |
| | A. Thanks to | B. Owing to | C. As to | D. Resort to |
| 16. | temporary | loneliness can be a no | ormal healthy part of | life, chronic (长期) |
| | loneliness can be a ve | ery sad and sometimes da | angerous condition. | |
| | A. While | B. As | C. Since | D. If |
| 17. | There was a courtyard | (院子) that had steps | leading down into the s | street, and there were no |
| | cars in | | | |
| | A. scene | B. sight | C. view | D. vision |

| 18. | But the young man st | opped in front of him | and put out his hand, s | saying in a Italian | | | | |
|-----|--|-------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| | accent. | | | | | | | |
| | A. considerable | B. heavy | C. serious | D. weighty | | | | |
| 19. | Others hoped that by | helping someone no | ow, they care | when they became old and | | | | |
| | dependent. | | | | | | | |
| | A. deserved | B. observed | C. preserved | D. reserved | | | | |
| 20. | Whatever the idealist | s may say, it is obvi | ious that what | to the public is success. | | | | |
| | A. differs | B. matters | C. signifies | D. weights | | | | |
| V | ocabulary Test 3: | | | <u></u> | | | | |
| 1. | Even if we can reduce | our birth | to 10%, it still means | 13 million new babies every | | | | |
| | year. | | | | | | | |
| | A. pace | B. level | C. speed | D. rate | | | | |
| 2. | The old French clock was eleven as I went upstairs to bed. | | | | | | | |
| | A. beating | B. striking | C. ringing | D. clapping | | | | |
| 3. | He went ahead with u | npopular changes, $_$ | to hostile critic | ism. | | | | |
| | A. opposed | B. indifferent | C. sensible | D. contrary | | | | |
| 4. | When my boss said he | e would me | e to another department, | I was very pleased because | | | | |
| | I had been waiting for | this change. | | | | | | |
| | A. transfer | B. interfere | C. dismiss | D. transform | | | | |
| 5. | We thought she would | like to go | , she intends to stay | where she is. | | | | |
| | A. In the contrast | | B. In the compar | ison | | | | |
| | C. For the contrary | | D. On the contrar | ry | | | | |
| 6. | After two weeks' work | on end I get | doing the same thing | g every day. | | | | |
| | A. fed with | B. fed up | C. feed up in | D. fed up with | | | | |
| 7. | John was so | in his book that he | did not hear the doorbe | ll ring. | | | | |
| | A. participated | B. occupied | C. absorbed | D. concentrated | | | | |
| 8. | Generally speaking, a | conservative person | is to see any | change. | | | | |
| | A. reluctant | B. satisfied | C. radical | D. content | | | | |
| 9. | Nothing must be allow | ed to our | plan for the weekend. | | | | | |
| | A. interfere with | B. disturb on | C. disturb with | D. interfere on | | | | |
| 10. | The new manager exp | plained to the staff th | hat she hoped to | new procedures to save | | | | |
| | time and money. | | | | | | | |
| | A. manufacture | B. establish | C. control | D. restore | | | | |
| 11. | I to him fo | or calling him so late | | | | | | |
| | A. excused | B. apologized | C. pardoned | D. congratulated | | | | |

| 12. | They all agree that the | color of that coat and ti | e do | on't | | |
|-----|--|---------------------------|-------|----------------------|-------|-----------------------|
| | A. suit | B. mix | C. | match | D. | imitate |
| 13. | What you said reminds | s me somethin | g I | read in a book a fe | ew d | ays ago. |
| | A. of | B. in | C. | with | D. | from |
| 14. | the widening | g of the roads wherever p | oss | ible in the city, it | is s | till not adequate for |
| | the increasing volume | of traffic. | | | | |
| | A. Despite of | B. Regardless | C. | In spite of | D. | Though |
| 15. | It is reported that all fa | actories and mines will b | ре _ | by govern | mer | nt officials. |
| | A. examined | B. surveyed | C. | inspected | D. | investigated |
| 16. | He was of h | aving asked such a silly | que | estion. | | |
| | A. sorry | B. guilty | C. | miserable | D. | ashamed |
| 17. | When he retired from l | his job the directors | | him with a clock | k. | |
| | A. offered | B. pleased | C. | presented | D. | satisfied |
| 18. | The actual cost of the | building was such higher | tha | an our original | | · |
| | A. estimate | B. consideration | C. | judgment | D. | plan |
| 19. | Science has brought _ | many changes i | n oı | ır lives. | | |
| | A. out | B. about | C. | into | D. | forward |
| 20. | This year the factory _ | almost twice as | ma | any motors as it did | las | t year. |
| | A. turns down | B. turns over | C. | turns to | D. | turns out |
| V | ocabulary Test 4: | | | | | |
| | <u>- </u> | | | | | |
| 1. | When John declared th | nat he would give up h | iis j | job, all his collea | gues | s him in |
| | amazement. | | | _ | | |
| | | B. watched | | stared at | | _ |
| | | school you'll be given a | test | to help the teache | rs to | you to a |
| | class at your level. | | _ | | _ | - |
| | | B. assign | | deliver | D. | place |
| | | nan usual this morning _ | | | | |
| | | | | in case of | D. | at the risk of |
| | | earning English in five r | non | ths. | | |
| | A. possible | • | | able | D. | capable |
| 5. | | and it has the | | | | |
| | - | B. declined | | refused | | denied |
| | | mean and then there wi | | | | |
| | A. frequently | B. eventually | C. | necessarily | D. | precisely |

| 7. | If you want to telephone | e her, you'll have to $_$ | the number in | the l | book. |
|-----|--------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|-------|-----------------------|
| | A. look at | B. look to | C. look through | D. | look up |
| 8. | By the age of twenty-fiv | ve he had hi | is ambition of becoming | a pia | anist. |
| | A. reached | B. completed | C. achieved | D. | obtained. |
| 9. | The woman was very tin | red after a day's work, | and in no for | dar | ncing. |
| | A. mood | B. emotion | C. temper | D. | mold |
| 10. | Samuel is always chee | rful, never | about his poor health an | d ot | her troubles. |
| | A. holding | B. bringing | C. complaining | D. | comparing |
| 11. | Blood in th | e body. | | | |
| | A. circles | B. cycles | C. circulates | D. | rounds |
| 12. | Most train tickets are | for two or fiv | ve days depending on the | e dis | stance you travel. |
| | A. effective | B. valid | C. efficient | D. | legal |
| 13. | A vast expanse of rice | fields was laid | before us as soon as | we | got off the bus. |
| | A. down | B. off | C. out | D. | open |
| 14. | The company had to p | out forward a(n) | that lay-offs be con | nside | ered. |
| | A. proposal | B. purpose | C. setback | D. | advertisement |
| 15. | This boy often dreams | a happier li | ife on some other planet. | | |
| | A. with | B. of | C. for | D. | in |
| 16. | They had an infinite _ | for patience. | | | |
| | A. ability | B. capability | C. capacity | D. | energy |
| 17. | Let's hang up some pa | intings or pictures on t | these walls. T | Then | it will look nice. |
| | A. bare | B. empty | C. blank | D. | vacant |
| 18. | This fire extinguisher | is to be used only in $_$ | · | | |
| | A. a crisis | B. an emergency | C. a hurry | D. | haste |
| 19. | The police investigation | n discovered that three | e young men were | | in the robbery. |
| | A. caught | B. involved | C. connected | D. | tightened |
| 20. | When John was electe | d president, his countr | ry was facing an | c | risis. |
| | A. economic | B. economical | C. economy | D. | economics |
| V | ocabulary Test 5: | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| 1. | The top post in the Oly | | Committee is still | | |
| | A. empty | B. vacant | C. vain | D. | bare. |
| 2. | What do you think is the | · | | | |
| | A. alike | B. liking | C. like | | likely |
| 3. | | portant appointment wit | th Prof. Smith, she | | _ the invitation with |
| | thanks. | | | _ | |
| | A. refused | B. rejected | C. declined | D. | repelled |

| 4. | It is possible to two completely opposite conclusions from this set of facts. | | | | | |
|-----|--|-----------------------------|----------------------|------------|-------------|--------------------------|
| | A. imply | B. suggest | C. | draw | | D. hint |
| 5. | All human communication messages to | ation experts agree that | we ı | ise both | verbal and | d nonverbal methods to |
| | A. transfer | B. move | C. | shift | | D. convey |
| | A huge military force | is maintained to protect c | itize | ns | enem | ies. |
| | A. for | B. of | C. | against | | D. with |
| | While we usually thin much more. | k the library a | as a | place wi | th books, | it is really a source of |
| | A. of | B. about | C. | in | | D. for |
| | countryside. | pollutes the air of indus | | | | areas of the |
| | C C | B. building | | | 0 | |
| | You did not say that you were present, but words that you were. | | | | | |
| | A. applied | 1 | | | | D. complied |
| 10. | It is that we keep discussing this issue, listening to different viewpoints, deciding what we believe. | | | | | |
| | A. virtue | B. violent | C. | visual | | D. vital |
| 11. | Reynolds | that the new model impro | ves | on the old | d one in se | ome obvious ways. |
| | A. pronounces | B. talks | C. | claims | | D. inquires |
| 12. | The doctor's task was to get this couple to acknowledge that $a(n)$ existed and had | | | | | |
| | been there for most of their fifteen-year marriage. | | | | | |
| | A. quarrel | B. conflict | C. | conveni | ence | D. ignorance |
| 13. | The changed IELTS | oral test since July 1s | t thi | is year _ | | three-main parts (oral |
| | interview, free talk and discussion), which will candidates' fluency, coherence, | | | | | |
| | vocabulary, grammar | and pronunciation. | | | | |
| | A. comprises; measu | ıre | В. | is comp | rised; rev | eal |
| | C. is made up of; prove | | D. composes of; test | | | |
| 14. | . We must get rid of this large table, for it too much room. | | | | | |
| | A. takes out | B. takes up | C. | takes ov | er | D. takes on |
| 15. | The news, though no work. | t wholly bad, was so | | that I | could no l | onger concentrate on my |
| | A. disastrous | B. anxious | C. | regretful | l | D. disturbing |
| 16. | With the gradual imp | provement of transportation | n ar | nd commi | unications | , farmers have now had |
| | easier to cities and towns. | | | | | |
| | A. access | B. reach | C. | contact | | D. touch |

| 17. | Scientists claim tha | t air pollution causes a | in world's average air temperature. | | | | |
|-----|---|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|--|--|--|
| | A. declarer | | | D. density | | | |
| 18. | Nuclear power's daradiation. | nger to health, safety and | even life itself can | be in one word: | | | |
| | A. made up | B. taken up | C. put up | D. summed up | | | |
| 19. | Did you notice the of the world? | on the man's fa | ce when he heard th | at Kino had found the pearl | | | |
| | A. appearance | B. expression | C. description | D. outlook | | | |
| 20. | Those who support | the "nature" side of the | conflict believe that | our and behavior | | | |
| | patterns are largely | determined by biological | factors. | | | | |
| | A. personalities | B. characteristics | C. abilities | D. qualifications | | | |
| V | ocabulary Test 6: | | | | | | |
| | <u> </u> | | | | | | |
| | | B. inference | | my second foreign language. | | | |
| | | | • | | | | |
| ۷. | | hat they can su | | | | | |
| 2 | A. get | B. achieve | G | | | | |
| | | lready in the bath so he di | | | | | |
| | A. bother | B. offend | | D. dispose | | | |
| | | onfusing that I could hard | | | | | |
| | A. sense | B. understanding | _ | | | | |
| Э. | | ric lamps went out so we | | | | | |
| _ | A. lead to | B. contribute to | | | | | |
| 6. | any time you like. | | | u can make use of them at | | | |
| | A. desirable | B. favorable | C. noticeable | D. available | | | |
| 7. | I know nothing about the car accident; it happened to my arrival. | | | | | | |
| | A. cautious | B. curious | B. previous | D. conscious | | | |
| 8. | It is often difficult to | find an examp | le to illustrate the us | sage of certain expressions. | | | |
| | A. accurate | B. adequate | C. appropriate | D. approximate | | | |
| 9. | We are lucky enough | n to have suppl | ies to last through the | e winter. | | | |
| | A. ancient | B. efficient | C. sufficient | D. proficient | | | |
| 10. | As we all know, M | arxism the imp | ortance of theory bec | ause it can guide action. | | | |
| | A. organizes | B. emphasizes | C. criticizes | D. memorizes | | | |
| 11. | | | 57, 000, is | the largest concentration of | | | |
| | Chinese outside As | | | | | | |
| | A. visitors | B. passengers | C. adults | D. inhabitants | | | |

| 12. He that a combination of recent oil discoveries and the advantage of the discoveries and the advantage of the discoveries and the advantage of the discoveries and the discoveries and the advantage of the discoveries and the discoveries are discoveries and the discoveries and the discoveries are discoveries are discoveries are discoveries and the discoveries are discoveries are discoveries are discoveries and discoveries are discov | | | | vance of new technology | | |
|--|--|-----------------------------|--------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| | will lead to a decline in the price of crude oil. | | | | | |
| | A. predicts | B. compels | C. arrang | ges | D. disputes | |
| 13. | Some students chose | to write a term paper, _ | cł | nose to take | the final exam. | |
| | A. somebody else | B. the other | C. and o | others | D. but another | |
| 14. | Until recently, Intern | et marketing activities ha | ave | strategie | es to pull customers into | |
| | sites. | | | | | |
| | A. figured out | B. let alone | C. appro | ved of | D. focused on | |
| 15. | Over the past century,, physical work has become easier, and work has become | | | | | |
| | less physical. | | | | | |
| | A. as a whole | B. in generally | C. as we | ell as | D. in spite | |
| 16. | Researchers around the | e world are discovering tha | at music car | n help healir | ng in a of ways. | |
| | A. variety | B. wonder | C. type | | D. thousand | |
| 17. | Customers who buy s | suitcases are likely to be | e looking i | for other ite | ms they might need for | |
| | traveling too, | travel alarms and iror | ıs. | | | |
| | A. as such | B. such as | C. as to | | D. to as | |
| 18. | Today in the U.S. th | here are many charitable | organizati | ons which _ | in helping the | |
| | weary travelers. | | | | | |
| | A. specialize | B. engage | C. opera | te | D. manage | |
| 19. | "Sorry, there are no | tickets for to | morrow's p | erformance" | , the ticket officer said | |
| | politely. | | | | | |
| | A. preferable | B. considerable | C. favora | able | D. available | |
| 20. | A lot of people were | ready to work long hour | s because | high unemp | loyment meant that they | |
| could easily be | | | | | | |
| | A. separated | B. appointed | C. transf | erred | D. replaced | |
| X 7 | | | | | | |
| V | ocabulary Test 7: | | | | <u> </u> | |
| 1. | When she heard from t | the hospital that her fathe | er had died | l, she | into tears. | |
| | A. burst | B. went | C. explo | ded | D. fell | |
| 2. | Doctors suggest that he | should try to make | for hi | s loss of slee | ep by going to bed early. | |
| | A. away | B. out | C. up | | D. with | |
| 3. | To tell you the truth, | what to me in | the papers | is the book | and the film reviews. | |
| | A. attracts | B. calls | C. intere | ests | D. appeals | |
| 4. | Tom hasn't been working lately; he won't get his examinations. | | | | | |
| | A. off | B. on | C. cross | | D. through | |

| 5. | Barbara to g | et very impatient if you | ask her more than two $$ | questions. | | | |
|-----|--|--------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|--|--|--|
| | A. tends | B. attends | C. intends | D. intent | | | |
| 6. | He didn't want to go to | the cinema but they b | egged so hard that he | and went with | | | |
| | them. | | | | | | |
| | A. gave up | B. gave in | C. gave out | D. gave over | | | |
| 7. | There are so many inco | onveniences that have to | be when yo | u are camping. | | | |
| | A. put down | B. put up with | C. put aside | D. put away | | | |
| 8. | Will you take my previ | ous experience into | when you fix my | salary? | | | |
| | A. possession | B. account | C. mind | D. amount | | | |
| 9. | The suggestions put for | ward by the workers to | improve their working c | onditions were | | | |
| | by the factory owner. | | | | | | |
| | A. turned out | B. turned down | C. turned over | D. turned off | | | |
| 10. | The price of beer | from 50 cent to | \$4 per liter during the | summer season. | | | |
| | A. altered | B. ranged | C. differed | D. changed | | | |
| 11. | There is real concern | that food supplies will | l not be to : | feed the increasing word | | | |
| | population. | | | | | | |
| | A. satisfactory | B. sufficient | C. equal | D. convenient | | | |
| 12. | When he realized the | e police had spotted hi | im, the man | _ the exit as quickly as | | | |
| | possible. | | | | | | |
| | A. made off | B. made out | C. made for | D. made toward | | | |
| 13. | The taxi driver pulled | up his car a | pedestrian waving to h | im. | | | |
| | A. at the interview of | • • | B. at the eye of | | | | |
| | C. at the eyesight of | | D. at the sight of | | | | |
| 14. | The match was canceled because most of the members a match without a standard court. | | | | | | |
| | A. objected to having | | B. were objected to have | | | | |
| | C. objected to have | | D. were objected to having | | | | |
| 15. | It was the old-world p | politeness that | _ me to go on with the | unbearable conversation | | | |
| | with him. | | | | | | |
| | A. persuaded | B. obliged | C. strained | D. upset | | | |
| 16. | Those gifts of rare boo | oks that were given to u | s were deeply | _• | | | |
| | A. appealed | B. applied | C. appreciated | D. approved | | | |
| 17. | Herman's success is d | lue to his hard work ar | nd his ability to | plans which will get | | | |
| | work done efficiently. | | | | | | |
| | A. fulfill | B. formulate | C. approve | D. flourish | | | |
| 18. | All experts agree that | the most important con- | sideration with diet dru | gs is carefully | | | |
| | the risks and benefits. | | | | | | |
| | A assessing | R valuinσ | C estimating | D weighing | | | |

| 19. | Shopping for a new sv | wimsuit is one of my leas | st activities, | bec | ause I almost always |
|-----|--------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------|-------|------------------------|
| | get salesclerk with a | sick sense of humor. | | | |
| | A. favorable | B. favorite | C. beneficial | D. | benevolent |
| 20. | We can't afford to let | the situation get worse. | We have to take | | to put it right. |
| | A. decisions | B. advantages | C. sides | D. | steps |
| V | ocabulary Test 8: | | | | |
| | | my resignation when new | | | |
| | I decided to | | | | , |
| | A. under the circumsta | | B. with the circumst | ance | es |
| | C. under the cases | | D. with the cases | | |
| 2. | It is generally accepted | l that industrial growth ar | nd urbanization (都市 | 化) | often go |
| | A. now and then | B. hand in hand | C. day and night | D. | heart and soul |
| 3. | Eventually, with | and hard work, the | e blind, deaf-mute girl | lear | med to speak. |
| | A. distance | B. curiosity | C. persistence | D. | anxiety |
| 4. | you have be | gun to answer the questi | on of why you are in o | olleg | ge, you can go on to |
| | choose the kind of stud | lent you want to become | | | |
| | A. Once | B. Though | C. Even | D. | So |
| 5. | People from all walks of | of life are learning English | h so that they can work | : | volunteers for |
| | the 2008 Beijing Olym | pics. | | | |
| | A. of | B. at | C. to | D. | as |
| 6. | They are faced with a | big problem of how to | | | |
| | Education. | | | | |
| | A. approved | B. disapproved | C. proved | D. | unproved |
| 7. | College freshmen have | difficulty to o | dormitory life. This is | parti | icularly true of those |
| | who are the only child | ren in their families. | | | |
| | A. adopting | B. adapting | C. abandoning | D. | adhering |
| 8. | Never use that kind | of when yo | u speak to students. | The | ey don't like to be |
| | lectured on. | | | | |
| | A. tune | B. voice | C. tone | D. | sound |
| 9. | The railway will be fur | ther to link w | ith the trans-Siberia ra | ilway | y in Russia. |
| | A. expanded | B. exported | C. exacted | D. | extended |
| 10. | Time is running | The international | community must take | imme | ediate action. |
| | A. away | B. over | C. down | D. | out |
| 11. | At first I felt a bit aw | kward. But as time | , I felt more at ea | se. | There people seemed |
| | just like my own folks | s. | | | |
| | A. went by | B. went away | C. went through | D. | went down |

| 12. | As soon as she got ho | ome, Mrs. Smith | preparing dinner fo | r the whole family. |
|-----|------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| | A. set to | B. set about | C. set out | D. set aside |
| 13. | In order to | without interpreters w | rith the English-speak | ing visitors, officials at |
| | ministerial levels are | learning English. | | |
| | A. accompany | B. confuse | C. remark | D. communicate |
| 14. | The survey shows that | at the of today | y's college students ar | re ready to work for the |
| | common good. | | | |
| | A. majority | B. disappointment | C. committee | D. interviewers |
| 15. | They say that I should | be for the defe | eat of our basketball ma | atch. I think it is unfair. |
| | A. aware | B. clear | C. responsible | D. satisfied |
| 16. | In fact, according to | Adam, the desire to | one's mater | ial life is an absolutely |
| | | nomic and social developm | | |
| | A. improve | B. extend | C. possess | D. encounter |
| 17. | Although both Diogene | es and Alexander lived in | ancient Greece, their | stories are out |
| | of date. | | | |
| | A. by all means | | B. by this means | |
| | C. by means of | | D. by no means | |
| 18. | He believes that our | worldly possessions have | e no true value and _ | take away our |
| | freedom and happines | s, and turn us into slave | es. | |
| | A. attend to | B. pretend to | C. intend to | D. tend to |
| 19. | It is largely | all these dramatic contra | asts that we are left with | n such a deep impression |
| | of these two character | es in the story. | | |
| | A. due to | B. previous to | C. close to | D. inclined to |
| 20. | In other, h | ne or she helps people get | out of trouble as well | as helping those who are |
| | already in trouble. | | | |
| | A. expressions | B. phrases | C. terms | D. words |
| Vo | ocabulary Test 9: | | | |
| | | 1 1 | | <u> </u> |
| | | to the proposal | | |
| | A. mood | B. emotion | C. attitude | D. feeling |
| | | tain that TV has been un | itairly criticized and ar | gue that the power of the |
| | medium is | D : 1: 1 | 0 . 1 | D 11 1 |
| | A. granted | - | C. exaggerated | |
| | | I dial to get the | if I want to ask | tor someone's telephone |
| | number? | D (6" : 1 | 0 1 1 | D |
| | A. secretary | B. official | C. clerk | D. operator |

| 4. | When people become u | nemployed, it is idleness | s which is often worse th | han of wages. | | | |
|----|--|----------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|--|--|--|
| | A. lick | B. luck | C. lack | D. lank | | | |
| 5. | Although her marriage | was very unhappy, Mrs. | Stephens remained with | n her husband | | | |
| | the children. | | | | | | |
| | A. for the sake of | B. on behalf of | C. in place of | D. in case of | | | |
| 6. | The manager's secretary | y told me that the firm co | ould not to p | oay such large salaries. | | | |
| | A. affect | B. afloat | C. afraid | D. afford | | | |
| 7. | The company announce | es with that pri | ces have to be increase | d due to the rise of cost. | | | |
| | A. sorrow | B. regret | C. sympathy | D. guilty | | | |
| 8. | There is a tough | between Ohio Stat | e and the University | of Michigan for the Big | | | |
| | Football Championships | 5. | | | | | |
| | A. difference | B. limitation | C. competition | D. argument | | | |
| 9. | He is about h | nis chances of winning a g | old medal in the Olymp | oics to be held next year. | | | |
| | A. optimistic | B. optional | C. outstanding | D. obvious | | | |
| 10 | . The leaders of the t | wo countries are plannir | ng their summit meeti | ng with a to | | | |
| | maintain and develop | good ties. | | | | | |
| | A. strategy | B. standpoint | C. promise | D. priority | | | |
| 11 | . The farm minister | an emergency n | neeting in Luxembourg | in hopes of easing the | | | |
| | world-wide "mad cow | " panic. | | | | | |
| | A. reserved | B. scheduled | C. verify | D. consult | | | |
| 12 | . All the staff members | of the department make | enthusiastic | to clean up the hall for | | | |
| | the coming Christmas | party. | | | | | |
| | A. efforts | B. concerns | C. hostilities | D. construction | | | |
| 13 | . He made a | with his wife "You take | care of the children a | nd I'll cook." | | | |
| | A. battery | B. bargain | C. basket | D. barrel | | | |
| 14 | . I'd his rep | utation with other farmer | s and business people | in the community, and | | | |
| | then make a decision about whether or not to approve a loan. | | | | | | |
| | A. take into account | B. account for | C. make up for | D. make out | | | |
| 15 | . In his speech he | to the great help the | he club received from | supporters. | | | |
| | A. referred | B. mentioned | C. expressed | D. remarked | | | |
| 16 | . Sometimes, the messa | ges are throug | h deliberate and consci | ous gestures; otherwise, | | | |
| | our bodies talk withou | ıt our even knowing. | | | | | |
| | A. conveyed | B. confronted | C. confessed | D. concluded | | | |
| 17 | . Many observers believ | e that the country will re | emain in a state of cha | nos if it fails to solve its | | | |
| | food shorta | ge problem. | | | | | |

| | A. separate | B. sedate | C. semantic | D. severe | | |
|-----|--|-----------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|--|--|
| 18. | . Factors leading to the | he crisis included poor re | egulation,, c | heating in the industry and | | |
| | | her types of financial firm | | | | |
| | A. mismanagement | B. misprint | C. misplacement | D. misquotation | | |
| 19. | . It is said that a | n immediate review of | what you have learn | ned will help make your | | |
| | knowledge | | | | | |
| | A. interesting | B. useful | C. permanent | D. deep | | |
| 20. | . The words of his ol | | | . He is still influenced by | | |
| | them. | | | | | |
| | A. motion | B. emotion | C. impression | D. expression | | |
| V | ocabulary Test 10: | | | | | |
| 1 | We all bis | m for his superior perfer | manaa in tha aamnatitii | on, and it's entirely within | | |
| 1. | | | nance in the competition | on, and it's entirely within | | |
| | our expectation that | - | C | D. I.: | | |
| 2 | | B. admire | | | | |
| 2. | | is how to express our | | | | |
| | A. altitude | B. attitude | e | | | |
| 3. | The bank manager asked his assistant if it was possible for him to the investment plan | | | | | |
| | within a week. | | | | | |
| | A. pick out | B. set out | C. work out | D. make out | | |
| 4. | The policeman stopped him when he was driving home last night and him of | | | | | |
| | speeding. | | | | | |
| | A. charged | B. blamed | C. frightened | D. accused | | |
| 5. | He sugges | tion to the manager, who | , after discussing it wi | th other members, decided | | |
| | to accept it. | | | | | |
| | A. put forward | B. put off | C. put on | D. put up | | |
| 6. | Our company decide | d to the contr | act because a number | of the conditions in it had | | |
| | not been met. | | | | | |
| | A. approve | B. consume | C. cancel | D. resist | | |
| 7. | To tell you the truth, | it never to me | e that the clue to the pr | oblem lies in such a simple | | |
| | experiment. | | | • | | |
| | A. occurred | B. meant | C. recollected | D. devoted | | |
| 8. | | | | on disease, and I think he | | |
| | is right. | | | , | | |
| | _ | B. invisible | C. capable | D. responsible | | |

| 9.] | I hope all the precar | utions against air pollutio | n,suggested | l by the local government, |
|------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| • | will be seriously con | sidered here. | | |
| | A. while | B. although | C. since | D. as |
| 10. | , I neve | r stay out late on a wee | ek night, because I h | ave to get up early every |
| | morning. | | | |
| | A. As far as | B. As a rule | C. As opposed to | D. As well |
| 11. | John soon received | l promotion, for his sup | eriors realized that he | was a man of |
| | ability. | | | |
| | A. considering | B. considerable | C. considerate | D. considered |
| 12. | It is reported that I | Parliament has passed an | act forbidding the killi | ng of animals. |
| | A. rare | B. row | C. strange | D. peculiar |
| 13. | the help | of the family, we would | not have the chance to | visit the Great Wall. |
| | A. Besides | B. Regardless of | C. But for | D. Despite |
| 14. | They lack the kind | of structure that | us to divide human | utterance into words. |
| | A. encourage | B. enable | C. enforce | D. ensure |
| 15. | The great tit (Ш | 雀) has about twenty d | ifferent calls, | in human language the |
| | | utterance is limitless. | | |
| | A. since | B. anyhow | C. somewhat | D. whereas |
| 16. | Students can learn | the right answers by he | art in class, and yet i | never them with |
| | their 68 working m | odels of the world. | | |
| | A. combine | B. compare | C. communicate | D. command |
| 17. | The gold medal wa | s to Mr. Smith | for his excellent perfor | rmance in the play. |
| | A. distributed | B. awarded | C. inspired | D. charged |
| 18. | Now commercial | farmers have become in | creasingly specialized | so that almost everything |
| | consumed on most | farms is now bought from | n outside sources | home-grown. |
| | A. other than | B. more than | C. less than | D. rather than |
| 19. | There are some dis | advantages in living in th | ne country, but | , we like it. |
| | A. nevertheless | B. above all | C. in all | D. on the whole |
| 20. | When we asked him | m about the accident, he | did not seem to have | any of what had |
| | happened. | | | |
| | A. reaction | B. concept | C. memory | D. knowledge |
| _ | | | | |
| ОТ | Keys | | | |
| | Vocabulary Test 1 | | | |
| | - | 6—10 RRARD | 11—15 СССС | A 16—20 BDDDC |

| Vocabulary Test 2 | | | | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------|-------|-----------|-------|-----------|--|
| 1—5 BBADA | 6—10 | DACAC | 11—15 | AACCB | 16—20 | ABBAB | |
| Vocabulary Test 3 | | | | | | | |
| 1—5 DBBAD | 6—10 | D C A A B | 11—15 | BCACC | 16—20 | D C A B D | |
| Vocabulary Test 4 | | | | | | | |
| 1—5 CBCDA | 6—10 | D D C A C | 11—15 | C B C A B | 16—20 | ВВВВА | |
| Vocabulary Test 5 | | | | | | | |
| 1—5 B D C C D | 6—10 | C A A B D | 11—15 | C B A B D | 16—20 | A B D B A | |
| Vocabulary Test 6 | | | | | | | |
| 1—5 CBAAD | 6—10 | $D \ C \ C \ C \ B$ | 11—15 | DACDA | 16—20 | A B B D D | |
| Vocabulary Test 7 | | | | | | | |
| 1—5 ACDDA | 6—10 | ВВВВВ | 11—15 | B C D A B | 16—20 | C B D B D | |
| Vocabulary Test 8 | | | | | | | |
| 1—5 ABCAD | 6—10 | A B C D D | 11—15 | A B D A C | 16—20 | A D C A D | |
| Vocabulary Test 9 | | | | | | | |
| 1—5 C C D C A | 6—10 | D B C A C | 11—15 | B A B A A | 16—20 | A D A C C | |
| Vocabulary Test 10 | Vocabulary Test 10 | | | | | | |
| 1—5 B C C D A | 6—10 | C A D D B | 11—15 | BACBD | 16—20 | A B D D C | |

For the want of a nail the shoe was lost,

For the want of a shoe the horse was lost,

For the want of a horse the rider was lost,

For the want of a rider the battle was lost,

For the want of a battle the kingdom was lost,

And all for the want of horse-shoe nail.

----Benjamin Franklin

因为少了一颗马蹄钉而掉了那块马蹄铁, 因为掉了那块马铁蹄而失去了那匹马, 因为失去了那匹马而缺了那一个骑兵, 因为缺了那个骑兵而输了那一场战役, 因为输了那场战役而丢了整个国家, 悔之晚矣!全是当初少了那颗马蹄钉……

——本杰明·富兰克林

第五章

语法、词汇综合练习及答案详解

| 7 | Test 1 | | |
|----|---|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. | As long as you the money back | c promptly, I'll lend it | to you with pleasure. |
| | A. return B. will return | C. have returned | D. returned |
| 2. | I am considering to the Yellow Mo | ountain. Do you consider | it a good idea here? |
| | A. going; to go B. to go; to go | C. going; going | D. to go; going |
| 3. | I'd appreciate these letters. | | |
| | A. you to mail B. you mail | C. your mailing | D. you would mail |
| 4. | to develop more accurate metho | ods of economic forecas | sting is generally recognized. |
| | A. There is need B. That a need | C. The need being | D. The need |
| 5. | If you that late movie last night | t, you wouldn't be slee | epy now. |
| | A. hadn't watched | B. didn't watch | |
| | C. haven't watched | D. wouldn't have wa | atched |
| 6. | The type of stories my mother told me in | my childhood | _ again. |
| | A. have never been heard | B. has never been h | neard |
| | C. have never heard | D. has never heard | |
| 7. | It is because English is useful | | |
| | A. why we study it hard | B. what we study ha | ard |
| | C. that we study it hard | D. which we study | hard |
| 8. | You are getting too old for football. You'd | d better tenn | is instead. |
| | A. take in B. take up | C. take for | D. take over |
| 9. | What to him is whether job all | ows him to pursue his | studies. |
| | A. applies B. happens | C. refers | D. matters |
| 10 | . He said that very clearly so that nobody | was in anya | about what was meant. |
| | A. doubt B. consideration | C. question | D. wonder |
| 11 | economically, one tin of oil w | vill last at least three m | onths. |
| | A. To use B. To be used | C. Using | D. Used |
| 12 | . Some members of the staff couldn't hand | lle Murray's condition, | hard they tried. |
| | A as B although | C when | D even if |

| 13. | The price of fruit has increased recently | the price of vegetables has gone down. |
|-----|---|--|
| | A. when B. whether | |
| 14. | This kind of glasses manufactured by exp | erienced craftsmen comfortably. |
| | A. is worn B. wears | C. wearing D. are worn |
| 15. | There were two small rooms in the beach | house, served as a kitchen. |
| | A. the smaller of which | B. the smaller of them |
| | C. the smaller of whose | D. the smaller of that |
| 16. | She ought to stop work; she has a headad | che because she too long. |
| | A. has been reading | B. had read |
| | C. is reading | D. read |
| 17. | Mike's uncle insists in this hot | el. |
| | A. staying not | B. not to stay |
| | C. that he would not stay | D. that he not stay |
| 18. | The reason Beethoven went away to the c | ountry is he was gradually going deaf. |
| | A. that B. because | C. since D. as |
| 19. | So little that the neighbors cou | ld not settle their differences. |
| | | C. did they agree D. they did agree |
| 20. | Anyone is entitled to such benefit, | of age or sex. |
| | | C. in case D. regardless |
| 21. | from the hilltop, the lake scen | ery is beyond description. |
| | A. To see B. Seeing | |
| 22. | for your laziness, you could ha | we finished the assignment by now. |
| | A. Had not it been | B. Weren't it |
| | C. It were not | D. Had it not been |
| 23. | It was very of you not to play | the piano while I was having a sleep. |
| | | C. considered D. considering |
| 24. | | cost him \$1,000. However, he would gladly have |
| | paid for it. | |
| | A. as much twice | B. much as twice |
| | C. twice as much | D. as twice much |
| 25. | It was to save the child he got | drowned. |
| | A. when B. while | C. as D. That |
| 26. | a certain doubt among the stud | |
| | A. It existed B. There existed | C. They had D. There had |
| 27. | | he keeps it clean, otherwise he will have to pay |
| | for the damage | |

| | A. so that | B. as far as | C. | as long as | D. | as soon as |
|-----|---------------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|-----|----------------|
| 28. | I regret | _you that you are to be | disn | nissed from next we | ek. | |
| | A. to inform | B. informing | C. | being informed | D. | to be informed |
| 29. | The chair looks r | ather hard, but it is very | coı | mfortable to | | |
| | A. sit | B. sit on | C. | be sat | D. | be sat on |
| 30. | We for | r her because she never o | ame | e. | | |
| | A. needn't wait C. mustn't wait | | B. needn't have waited | | | |
| | | | D. can't have waited | | | |
| | | | | | | |

答案详解:

- 1. A 本题考查动词时态。在时间、条件、让步状语从句中,动词要使用一般现在时表将来。本句意为:只要你能很快还钱,我就会乐意借给你。
- 2. **A** 本题考查动名词和动词不定式的使用。consider 后面要跟动名词做宾语,动词不定式在这里是真正的宾语,而 it 是形式宾语。本句意为:我正在考虑去黄山,你认为去那儿是个好主意吗?
- 3. C 本题考查动名词复合结构的使用。由于 appreciate 是及物动词,后面要跟动名词短语做宾语,动名词的逻辑主语要用宾格或所有格。本句意为:我会很感激你邮寄这些信。
- 4. **D** 本题考查不定式的使用方法。在本句中,动词不定式短语是 the need 的后置定语, 所以此空格处要填名词。本句意为:发展更精确的经济预报方法的需求是被公认的。
- 5. A 本题考查虚拟语气。本句是混合型的(错综时间)虚拟语气,逗号前与过去事实相反用 had done,逗号后与现在事实相反用 would do。本句意为:如果你昨晚没看那个晚场电影的话,你现在就不会困。
- 6. **B** 本题考查主谓一致。由 the kind, the type 后加名词引起的主语,谓语动词要用单数,表示一类、一种。本题还考查了动词的被动形式。本句意为: 儿时妈妈给我讲的这类故事没有再听过。
- 7. C 本题考查强调句型。It is/was + 被强调部分 + that。本句意为:正是因为英语有用,我们才努力学习它。
- 8. **B** 本题考查动词 take 的短语辨析。take in "接受,接待;吸收;理解"; take up "拿起,开始从事,继续,占据"; take for "认为,以为"; take over "把……从某一地带到另一地,接收,接管"。本句意为: 踢足球你年龄太大了,你最好还是打网球。
- 9. **D** 本题考查词义辨析。apply"申请"; happen"发生"; refer "指的是"; matter "要 紧"。本句意为:对他来说要紧的是,他的工作是否能让他继续从事研究。
- 10. A 本题考查词义辨析。doubt "疑惑"; consideration "考虑"; question "问题"; wonder "惊奇,惊愕"。本句意为: 他把那事说得非常清楚,所以没人怀疑他的用意。
- 11. **D** 本题考查分词做状语。由于分词与句子主语之间是被动关系,因此选项应选被动式。本句意为:如果节约使用的话,一罐石油可以持续使用三个月。

- 12. **A** 该题考查 as 引导的让步状语从句。本句意为:尽管他们努力尝试了,但有些员工 依然不能处理 Murray 的情况。
- 13. C 本题考查表达转折的过渡词。whereas 意为"然而……"。本句意为: 近期水果的价格上涨了, 而蔬菜的价格却下降了。
- 14. **B** 本题考查动词 wear 的使用。这里物做主语, wear 是系动词"穿, 戴起来"的含义。本句意为: 有经验的技工生产的这种眼镜戴起来很舒适。
- 15. A 本题考查定语从句。在定语从句中,起限定作用的介词后面要接 which。本句意为:在海滩的房子里有两个小屋子,小的那个当作厨房。
- 16. A 本题考查时态。现在完成进行时,表示动作已经发生并持续到现在,在说话的同时还没有停止,有持续下去的趋势。本句意为:她应当停止工作,因为她已经工作太长时间了,所以头痛。
- 17. **D** 本题考查单词 insist 的用法。insist 后面若跟动名词,需要加介词 on / up;若跟从句,则是特殊的虚拟句,从句里的动词应使用 should + 动词原形, should 可以省略。本句意为:麦克的叔叔坚持不让他待在宾馆里。
- 18. **A** 本题考查表语从句。这基本上是个固定搭配: the reason is that...。本句意为:贝多芬离开这个国家的原因是他逐渐耳聋了。
- 19. C 本题考查部分倒装结构。so + 形容词或副词被前置于句首时, 句子要使用部分倒装结构。本句意为: 邻居们达成一致的地方太少了, 这样就不能解决他们之间的分歧。
- 20. **D** 本题考查介词短语。instead of "代替"; in spite of "让步"; in case "万一", regardless "不管,不顾"。本句意为:不论年龄和性别,每个人都被赋予这样的利益。
- 21. **D** 本题考查分词短语做句首状语。由于湖的景色是被看, see 与句子主语之间是被动关系, 所以用 seen。本句意为: 从山顶上看, 湖的景色美得无以言表。
- 22. **D** 本题考查虚拟语气。由 by now 可知本题的虚拟语气是与过去事实相反,所以 if 从 句用 had done,且 if 省略,had 提前。本句意为:要不是因为你懒惰,现在你就已经 完成任务了。
- 23. **B** 本题考查形近的形容词词义辨折。considerable "相当大(或多)的,值得考虑的,相当可观的"; considerate 用来形容人,"考虑周到的,体贴的"; considered "考虑过,经过仔细考虑的"; considering 用做介词语或副词,"考虑到……,鉴于……"。本句意为: 当我睡觉时你不弹钢琴,真是非常体贴。
- 24. C 本题考查倍数的表达。倍数 + as + 形容词/副词 + as + 比较对象。该题是省略了 as + 比较对象。本句意为: 他非常喜欢这幅画,为此他花了一千美元。然而,他为之宁可花两倍的价钱。
- 25. **B** 本题考查强调句型结构 It is/was +被强调部分 + that...本句意为:是为了救那个孩子,他才淹死的。
- 26. **B** 使用 there be 和 there exists 句式均可。本句意为:对于这个单词的必要性,学生们

存在着相当的疑惑。

- 27. C 本题考查词组辨析, so that "于是, 因此", 引导结果状语从句; as far as "远到, 直到……为止"; as soon as "一……就……", 引导时间状语从句; 只有 as long as "只要……"表达了条件。本句意为: 只要能使之保持清洁, 谁都可以借这本词典, 否则借书的人就要赔偿损失。
- 28. A 本题考查 regret 后面跟不定式和动名词做宾语语义上的区别。regret doing sth. 是对已经发生过的事表示后悔;而 regret to do sth. 是对即将要发生的事表示遗憾。本句意为:我很遗憾地告诉你,从下周起你就被解雇了。
- 29. **B** 本题考查动词不定式放在形容词后面用主动形式表达被动,不定式和前面的名词构成实际上的动宾关系。本句意为:这个椅子看起来相当硬,但坐上去却非常舒适。
- 30. **B** 本题考查情态动词完成式的用法。情态动词 needn't have done 表示过去本来没有必要做但做了的事情。本句意为:我们本来没必要等她的,因为她压根儿没来。

| 1 | Γest 2 | | | | | |
|----|--------------------|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|------------|--------------------------|
| 1. | My sister is used | to wit | h all the win | dows open. | | |
| | A. sleep | B. have slept | C. | sleeping | D. | slept |
| 2. | His English is ve | ry good. He can | speak Englis | sh better than | | _ in his grade. |
| | A. any one | B. the one | C. | anyone else | D. | other student |
| 3. | is know | wn to the world, | Mark Twain | is a great Ame | erican wri | iter. |
| | A. That | B. It | C. | Which | D. | As |
| 4. | leaves | the room last sho | ould turn off | the lights. | | |
| | A. Whoever | B. Anyone | C. | Who | D. | Whomever |
| 5. | The current situa | ation urged that | more attenti | on | to proble | ems less studied by city |
| | government. | | | | | |
| | A. be given | B. should give | C. | paid | D. | should pay |
| 6. | It was quite some | time t | he president | managed to sa | ve his fir | m from near bankruptcy. |
| | A. until | B. when | C. | that | D. | before |
| 7. | It is necessary th | at a person | exercis | es every day if | he wishe | es to be healthy. |
| | A. does | B. did | C. | do | D. | takes |
| 8. | Don't have your o | children | _ for hours d | oing their hom | ework in | dark a room. |
| | A. sitting; so | | | | | |
| 9. | Professor Smith _ | be in N | lew York bed | ause I met hin | n in the t | own just now. |
| | A. can't | B. might not | C. | may not | D. | may |
| 10 | . The house needs | s, but | they plan to | wait until nex | t spring t | o do it. |
| | | B. to paint | | | | |
| 11 | . A smart appeara | | | | | |
| | A favorito | | | | | favored |

| 12. | It is recommende | ed that passengers | smoke during the f | llight. | | |
|-----|--|------------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|--|--|
| | A. not | B. need not | C. could not | D. would not | | |
| 13. | The price of been | from 50 cents | s to \$4 per liter durin | ng the summer season. | | |
| | A. altered | B. separated | C. ranged | D. differed | | |
| 14. | As we all know, | flesh air, nutritious food | and exercise | _ to better health. | | |
| | A. attribute | B. contribute | C. add | D. distribute | | |
| 15. | He failed in this | exam, proves | that he wasn't working | g hard enough. | | |
| | A. that | B. it | C. what | D. which | | |
| 16. | with th | ne size of the whole earth | , the highest mountain | does not seem high at all. | | |
| | A. Compared | B. Compare | C. Comparing | D. While comparing | | |
| 17. | After the flood, t | the villagers are trying the | eir best to get thing ba | ıck to | | |
| | A. ordinary | B. normal | C. common | D. usual | | |
| 18. | The murderer wa | s brought in, with his ha | ands behind | his back. | | |
| | A. being tied | B. having tied | C. to be tied | D. tied | | |
| 19. | To be flank, I re | eally prefer the former pro | ogram to the | | | |
| | A. late | B. later | C. lately | D. latter | | |
| 20. | We received 400 | applications tl | he job. | | | |
| | A. on | B. of | C. in | D. for | | |
| 21. | This hotel | \$ 60 for a single room | m with bath. | | | |
| | A. pays | B. costs | C. prices | D. charges | | |
| 22. | the co | ntent is concerned, the b | book is worth reading. | | | |
| | A. As long as | B. As far as | C. As well as | D. As good as | | |
| 23. | The firm decided to him to the Beijing branch. | | | | | |
| | A. exchange | B. transmit | C. transfer | D. remove | | |
| 24. | Not only you and | I I but Peter, the top stu | dent in our grade, _ | not able to solve the | | |
| | problem. | | | | | |
| | A. are | B. were | C. am | D. is | | |
| 25. | You should have | to your way o | f thinking to the new l | ife style. | | |
| | A. adept | | C. adapt | D. adjust | | |
| 26. | Tom is the only of | one of the students who _ | to Shanghai. | | | |
| | A. have gone | B. have been | C. has been | D. had gone | | |
| 27. | The European Ur | nion countries were once | worried that they would | d not havesupplies | | |
| | of petroleum. | | | | | |
| | A. sufficient | B. proficient | C. efficient | D. potential | | |
| 28. | This is | the first time you have l | been late. | | | |
| | A. by all means | B. by no means | C. in some cases | D. in any case | | |

| 29. | Not having a | ı good command of | f English can be a serious | preventing | you fron |
|-----|---------------|-------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|------------|
| | achieving you | ır goals. | | | |
| | A. obstacle | B. fault | C. offense | D. distress | |
| 30. | He thinks he | is superior | his classmates because his | s father is an importan | it person. |
| | A. than | B. to | C. of | D. with | |
| 答 | 茶案详解: | | | | |

- 1. C 本题考查 used to do sth. 和 be used to doing sth. 的使用。前者表示过去曾做过某事
- 而后者表示习惯于做某事。本句意为:我妹妹习惯睡觉时所有的窗户都开着。 2. C 在本句中,A 项和 B 项不符合逻辑,应不包含他在内的其他任何人。D 项没有使用
- 3. **D** 本题考查 as 引导的非限制性定语从句, as 指代逗号后面的整个句子 "Mark Twain is a great American writer"。本句意为: 众所周知, 马克·吐温是—位伟大的美国作家。

复数。本句意为:他的英语非常好,在年级里,他讲的英语比别的任何人都好。

- 4. A 本题考查 whoever 引导的主语从句, whoever 又在主语从句中做主语, 所以一定用主格形式, whoever 表示"任何一个人, 无论是谁"。本句意为: 无论是谁最后离开屋子都要把灯关上。
- 5. A 本题考查特殊虚拟语气。表示敦促或建议的一些词如: advise, suggest, recommend 等后跟 that 从句要使用虚拟语气,即 should + 动词原形, should 可以省略。本句意为: 近期形势敦促要对市政府很少研究的问题给予关注。
- 6. **D** 本题考查 before 引导的时间状语从句, before 表示"趁着还没发生; 在……之前; 直到……才"。本句意为: 总裁花了不少时间才将他濒临破产的公司拯救出来。
- 7. C 本题考查特殊虚拟语气。表示重要性、必要性的形容词,如: necessary 后跟 that 从 句要使用虚拟语气,即 should + 动词原形, should 可以省略。本句意为:如果一个人希望健康的话,每天都锻炼是有必要的。
- 8. A 本题考查 have sb. do sth. 和 have sb. doing sth. 的区别。两个短语都是"让某人干某事",但前者做的事不具有持续性,而后者做的事具有持续性,表示让某人一直做,总是做……。而且 such 之后要跟名词,so 之后要跟形容词。本句意为:别让你的孩子们在这样暗的屋子里一直做数小时的作业。
- 9. C 本题考查情态动词完成式表对过去情况的推测。否定的推测要用 can't/ couldn't have done。may/might 不能用于否定的推测,must 也不能。本句意为:史密斯教授不可能在纽约,因为刚才我在镇上见到他了。
- 10. C 本题考查动名词主动表被动的使用。物做主语,谓语动词为 need, require, want, deserve, be worth 时,后面要用动名词做宾语。本句意为:房子需要刷油漆,但他们计划等到明年春天再干。
- 11. **B** 本题考查形近词辨析。favorite "特别喜爱的"; favorable "赞成的,有利的"; favored "有天赋的"。本句意为:小巧精明的外表,在面试时,会给别人留下很好的印象。
- 12. **A** 本题考查虚拟语气。在结构"It is + adj. (建议、命令、请求……) + that"句型

- 中,从句用虚拟语气,谓语动词用 should + 动词原形, should 可省略。本句意为:建议乘客在飞行期间不能抽烟。
- 13. C 本题考查近义动词辨析。alter "改变,变化"; separate "分离,隔离"; range "排列,变化(在一定范围内)"; differ "不同"。本句意为: 夏季每升啤酒的价格由 50 美分到 4 美元不等。
- 14. **B** 本题考查动词短语辨析。attribute to "归因于"; contribute "导致……"; add to "加,增加"; distribute to "分配,分送"。本句意为: 众所周知,新鲜的空气、营养的食品和锻炼对身体有好处。
- 15. **D** 本题考查定语从句。非限制性定语从句,不能用 that,而是要用 which 来引导。本句意为:他没通过考试,这一点说明他学习不够刻苦。
- 16. A 本题考查分词短语做状语。compare 引导的分词短语在句中做伴随状语,在本题中,compare 与其逻辑主语 mountain 之间构成被动关系。本句意为:和整个世界的大小相比,最高山脉似乎也没那么高了。
- 17. **B** 本题考查形容词辨析。ordinary "普通的,平常的"; normal "正常的,正规的"; common "普通的,普遍的"; usual "通常的,惯常的"。本句意为:洪水过后,村民尽最大努力让一切回归正常。
- 18. **D** 本题考查独立主格结构:分词逻辑主语+过去分词。本句意为:谋杀者被带了进来,手被绑在了背后。
- 19. **D** 本题考查近形词词义辨析。late "晚的"; later "较晚的,后来"; lately "最近,近来"; latter "后者"。本句意为:坦白地说,比起后者我更喜欢前一个节目。
- 20. **D** 考查固定搭配。apply for "申请", 其名词形式 application 也与 for 搭配。本句意为: 这份工作我们收到了 400 份申请书。
- 21. **D** 本题考查近义动词词义辨析。pay "支付"; cost "花费, 成本为……"; price "标价, 定价"; charge "要价, 收费"。本句意为: 这家旅馆有一间带卫生间的单人房, 要价 60 美元。
- 22. **B** 本题考查固定搭配。as far as...is concerned 意为"就……而言"。本句意为:就内容而言,这本书值得一读。
- 23. C 本题考查动词词义辨析。transfer 意为"调动工作"; remove 意为"移动, 去除" exchange 意为"交换, 交易, 互换, 交流"; transmit 意为"传送, 传染, 使传播"。本句意为:公司决定把他调动到北京分部去。
- 24. **D** 本题考查主谓—致。not only…but also…连接主语时,谓语动词遵循"就近原则",依据 but also 之后的单词来确定谓语的单复数形式。这样的规则还适用于 neither…nor…; either…or…。本句意为:不仅是你我,就算是比特,全年级最好的学生,也解不了这 道难题。
- 25. C 本题考查形近词辨析。adapt "使适合,使适应"; adjust "校正,校准", adopt 是及物动词,意为"收养,领养;采用,采取"; adept "熟练的,擅长的"。本句意为:

你应该让你的思维方式适应新的生活。

- 26. A 本题考查定语从句中谓语动词的单复数形式。"one of +复数名词"结构前有 the only,则定语从句的动词形式使用单数形式。本句意为:汤姆是唯一一个去过上海的学生。
- 27. A 本题考查形容词词义辨析。sufficient 意为"充分的,足够的"; potential 意为"潜在的,可能的"; proficient 意为"熟练的,精通的"; efficient 意为"有效率的,能干的"。本句意为: 欧盟国家曾经担心他们会没有充足的石油供给。
- 28. **B** 本题考查短语辨析。by no means "决不"; by all means "尽一切办法,一定"; in any case "无论如何,总之"; in some cases "在一些情况下"。本句意为:这绝不是你第一次迟到了。
- 29. **A** 本题考查名词词义辨析。obstacle "障碍,妨害物"; distress "穷困,不幸,危难,忧伤"; fault "过错,缺点"; offense "冒犯,违反,过错"。本句意为:英语掌握不好会成为你达到目标的一个严重障碍。
- 30. **B** 本题考查特殊形容词比较级别。英文中表示比较—般会用到 than, 但是 superior 一词需要和介词 to 搭配,构成固定短语 be superior to sb. /sth.,意为"比……优越的,较好的"。这样的形容词还有 prior, inferior 等。本句意为:他认为自己优越于他的同学们,因为他父亲是个重要人物。

| ' | Test 3 | | | | |
|----|--------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|-----|----------------------|
| 1. | Would you please | lend me your bike? Min | e is not | | |
| | A. enough good | B. good one | C. good enough | D. | very good enough |
| 2. | Without air, the o | candle will | | | |
| | A. go off | B. go through | C. go out | D. | go over |
| 3. | One of the most is | mportant problems is how | to the inter | est | in learning English. |
| | A. rise | B. arise | C. raise | D. | arouse |
| 4. | When we face diff | ficulties in our English le | arning, we will never | | · |
| | A. give out | B. give in | C. give off | D. | give away |
| 5. | Tony as well as h | is brothers and sisters | from America. | | |
| | A. is | B. are | C. have been | D. | were |
| 6. | Tomorrow I'm leav | ving for New York and I'l | l stay there for | | |
| | A. sometimes | B. some times | C. sometime | D. | some time |
| 7. | How much did yo | u on this new | car? | | |
| | A. cost | B. spend | C. pay | D. | take |
| 8. | When the police l | broke into the house, the | y found old man | | dead on the floor. |
| | A. laying | B. laid | C. lain | D. | lying |
| 9. | I'm not good at m | ath. This problem is quit | te me. | | |
| | A. above | B. over | C. beyond | D. | against |

| 10. | your co | oming to see me, I would | d ha | we been very lonely | у. | | |
|-----|---|---------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------|-------|-------------------------|--|
| | A. But for | B. On account of | C. | Owing to | D. | Thanks to | |
| 11. | That is a hot tour | rist line. You should boo | k th | e tickets | | | |
| | A. in turn | B. in return | C. | in advance | D. | in schedule | |
| 12. | We are quite | to our parents and | d ou | r teacher. | | | |
| | A. respectable | B. respectful | C. | respective | D. | respected | |
| 13. | —Shall I help yo | ou with the washing up? | | | | | |
| | —Don't | I'll do it later. | | | | | |
| | A. bother | B. care | C. | trouble | D. | disturb | |
| 14. | Those who felt | like the stor | y a | gain came over aı | nd a | added themselves to the | |
| | audience. | | | | | | |
| | A. hearing | B. to hear | C. | to be heard | D. | being heard | |
| 15. | Mary told me tha | t Father would | | | | | |
| | A. have the hut | be repaired | В. | get the hut to be | repa | ired | |
| | C. have the hut | repaired | D. | get the hut being | repa | aired | |
| 16. | 16. I can hardly hear what he's saying, and | | | | | | |
| | A. so can all these other people | | В. | so can hardly all | hes | e other people | |
| | C. nor can all th | ese other people | D. | nor all these other | e pe | ople can | |
| 17. | what you intended, I should not have wasted my time trying to explain matters to you. | | | | | | |
| | A. I had realized | | B. Had I realized | | | | |
| | C. Realized had | I | D. | Had realized I | | | |
| 18. | I prefer clothes w | which are made out of nat | tural | materials, | | cotton and wool. | |
| | A. as | B. such as | C. | like | D. | just like | |
| 19. | It was his doctor | who advised that he | | a holiday away : | fron | the city. | |
| | A. would have | B. had | C. | has | D. | have | |
| 20. | I don't think | necessary for Julie | e to | make such a fuss a | bou | t that sort of thing. | |
| | A. her | B. it | C. | that | D. | this | |
| 21. | I left very early l | ast night, but I wish I _ | | so early. | | | |
| | A. didn't leave | | В. | hadn't left | | | |
| | C. haven't left | | D. | couldn't leave | | | |
| 22. | North America pr | oduces a great deal more | e wh | eat | | | |
| | A. as South America | | В. | B. than does South America | | | |
| | C. like South An | nerica does | D. | than like South A | mer | ica | |
| 23. | You must rememb | ber to all your | bel | ongs out of this off | ice 1 | today. | |
| | A. fetch | B. take away | C. | bring | D. | take | |
| 24 | She has got fifty | dollars but she wishes t | റ ഉദ | ·† | | | |

| | A. one other fifty dollars | | B. the same amount also | | | | |
|-----|----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|--|--|
| | C. another fifty | | D. | more fifty | | | |
| 25. | I saw | boys at the cinema. | | | | | |
| | A. the both | B. many a | C. | both the | D. the several | | |
| 26. | diction | nary is enough for me. | | | | | |
| | A. Such one | B. One such | C. | Such a one | D. One such a | | |
| 27. | In order to finish | the task in time we mus | t ag | greea pla | an of action. | | |
| | A. with | B. on | C. | to | D. in | | |
| 28. | By the time next | week, the winners | | _ their awards. | | | |
| | A. will have rece | eive | В. | will be received | | | |
| | C. will have rece | eived | D. | will have been red | ceiving | | |
| 29. | George is delight | ed his new sec | ereta | ary because she wor | rks very hard. | | |
| | A. To | B. with | C. | of | D. at | | |
| 30. | The young man s | still denies the | fire | behind the store. | | | |
| | A. to start | B. to starting | C. | having started | D. having been started | | |
| な | 文安详知 | | | | | | |

- 1. **C** 本题考查 enough 的用法。enough 用做形容词,放在被修饰的名词前面;用做副词,放在被修饰的形容词、副词之后。本句意为: 你能把你的自行车借给我么? 我的不够好。
- 2. C 本题考查动词 go 短语辨析。go off"被切断; (食物) 腐败; (疼痛) 消失"; go through"(法案)被通过; (计划等)被批准; (交易)被谈妥"; go over"翻越而过; 走过去", go out"(灯,火)熄灭,停止"。本句意为: 没有空气,蜡烛将熄灭。
- 3. **D** 本题考查近形词辨析。rise 不及物动词,"上升"; arise 不及物动词,"出现,发生"; raise 及物动词,"提高或举起"; arouse 及物动词,"唤起,激励兴趣"。本句意为:最为重要的事情之一是怎样激发学生学习英语的兴趣。
- 4. **B** 本题考查动词 give 的短语搭配。give out "用尽,用光"; give off "放出 (蒸汽,烟等)"; give in "投降,屈服,放弃"; give away "赠送,分配"。本句意为:我们在英语学习中遇到困难,我们要永不言弃。
- 5. A 本题考查主谓一致。本题考点为句子主语后跟 with, together with, followed, as well as 等引导的短语,谓语单复数形式跟前面的主语发生变化。本句的主语是 Tony,为第三人称单数形式。本句意为:托尼和他的兄妹们都是美国人。
- 6. **D** 本题考查近形词辨析。sometimes "有时"; some time "日后",表示在未来的不确定时间,现在用得极少。for some time "一段时间"。本句意为:明天我动身去纽约,将暂时在那儿逗留。
- 7. **B** 本题考查近义词用法。某人花费时间或金钱于某事上用 spend...on sth.。本句意为: 你买这辆车花了多少钱?

- 8. **D** 本题考查动词 lie, lay 的变形用法。lie 当"躺"来使用,其变形为 lay, lain, lying; laid 为 lay 的过去式,"放置"。本句意为: 当警察破门而入后,他们发现老人躺在地板上死了。
- 9. C 本题考查介词用法。beyond "超出……能力以外; 为……所不能够"。本句意为: 我不擅长数学, 这个难题超出了我的能力。
- 10. A 本题考查 but for 引导虚拟语气的用法。on account of "考虑到……", but for "若非" 本题与过去事实相反; owing to 和 thanks to "由于"。本句意为: 若不是你来看我,我会感到孤独的。
- 11. **C** 本题考查介词短语。in advance "预先地", on schedule "准时", 而非 in schedule; in return "作为回报"; in turn "轮流"。本句意为: 那是一条旅游热线, 我们应该提前订票。
- 12. **B** 本题考查同根词用法。respectable "应受尊敬的,值得尊敬的"; respectful "恭敬的,有礼貌的"; respective "各自的,各个的"; respected "受尊敬的"。本句意为:我们对师长是恭敬有加。
- 13. A 本题考查近义词用法。bother "使烦扰……"; care "介意,理会"; trouble "烦恼"; disturb 常用于被动语态,"使心不安,烦恼"。本句意为:——我帮你清洗吧?——不麻烦你了,我一会儿清洗。
- 14. A 考查介词 like 用法。feel like doing sth. "喜欢做某事"。本句意为:那些想再次听这个故事的人又走过来,加入到听众中。
- 15. C 本题考查分词结构。have sth. done "让别人做某事"。本句意为: 今年晚些时候, 父亲要叫人修一下茅屋。
- 16. C 本题考查 neither/nor 放句首引起的倒装。neither/nor 位于句首时,用部分倒装语序,表示前句的情形也适用于后句。本句意为:我听不到他正在说什么,其他人也没有听到。
- 17. **B** 本题考查省略 if 的虚拟条件句用法。if 从句中助动词 had 提前,if 省略;表示与过去事实相反的情形。本句意为:如果我当时认识到你的意图,我就不会费口舌向你解释这些事情了。
- 18. **B** 本题考查功能词(连接词和介词)用法。like 用法类同 just like,都是介词,表示"像……,恰似……"。as 是连接词,表实质相同。such as = for example 表举例说明。本句意为:我较喜欢天然材料,如棉花和羊毛制作的衣服。
- 19. **D** 本题考查虚拟语气。在 advise 后宾语从句中用 should do 或 do 表虚拟。本句意为: 正是他的医生建议他离开这座城市去度假的。
- 20. **B** 本题考查代词 it 做形式宾语的用法。it 用作形式宾语, for Julie to make such a fuss about...这个动词不定式复合结构用作真正宾语。本句意为: 我认为朱莉对这种事情小题大做没有必要。
- 21. B 本题考查虚拟语气的用法。虚拟语气要注意时态的使用,如果是与过去事实相反,

从句的时态是过去完成时 had done, 主句是 would have done。本句意为: 昨天晚上我很早就离开了, 但我希望我没有那么早离开。

- 22. **B** 本题考查比较级的使用,要注意比较对象要对等。more 应该与 than 搭配,助动词 does 和 produces 在本句中的用法一样。本句意为:北美小麦的产量远远超过南美。
- 23. **D** 本题考查近义词辨析, bring 和 take 的使用方向相反, bring 意思为"拿来", take 的意思是"拿走", fetch 含义为"to take and bring back 去拿来"。本句意为:今天, 你一定要记得把你所有的东西带出办公室。
- 24. C 本题考查整体名词的使用。在本题中 50 dollars 是一个整体概念, 所以用 another 来表示"另一个五十美元"。本句意为: 她已得到了五十美元, 可是她希望再得五十美元。
- 25. C 该题考查搭配。both 应放在定冠词的前面, several 应和 of 搭配使用, many a 表示 "许多", 后面所跟名词应该用单数。本句意为: 在电影院里, 我看到了两个男孩。
- 26. **D** 固定搭配。such 无比较级及最高级,遇到不定冠词 a(n)时,要放在该冠词之前;遇 all, one, few, several, some, any 等时则放在其后。本句意为:一本这样的字典对我来说已经足够了。
- 27. **B** 本题考查 agree 的搭配用法。agree with 后面应跟人, agree on 意为"对……达成协议,对……取得一致意见", agree to 意为"同意……",没有 D 项的搭配。本句意为:为了按时完成任务,我们必须对一项行动计划达成一致意见。
- 28. C 本题考查将来完成时。要注意和其他时态进行比较。将来完成时表示到将来某一时间为止已经完成的动作。本句意为:下周此时之前,胜利者们将已经拿到他们的 奖品。
- 29. **B** 本题考查 delighted 的搭配用法。be delighted to 后面要跟动词不定式,而 be delighted with / in 后面要跟名词或代词。本句意为:因为新秘书工作努力,乔治对她很满意。
- 30. C 本题考查了动名词做动词宾语。在本句"having started the fire behind the store"充当句子的宾语,表示动名词的动作已发生过。本句意为:那个年轻人依然否认在商店后面放过火。

| | Test 4 | | | | | | — |
|----|--|------------|----------------------|-------------|------------|---------------------|----------|
| 1. | I canno | find my | umbrella. I must h | ave | it on th | e bus. | |
| | A. lost | | B. forgotten | C. | mislaid | D. left | |
| 2. | 2. The streets are all wet. It during the night. | | | | | | |
| | A. mus | t be raini | ng | В. | must have | been raining | |
| | C. had | to rain | | D. | must have | rained | |
| 3. | Paul jus | t had | · | | | | |
| | A. cut | his hair | B. his hair cut | C. | hair cut | D. his hair cutting | |
| 4. | Look _ | t | he different meaning | gs of these | words in a | dictionary. | |

| | A. out | B. for | C. | up | D. | on |
|----|----------------------|-----------------------------|-------|----------------------|-------|---------------------------|
| 5. | Because they usu | ally receive the same so | core | on examinations, | the | re is disagreement as to |
| | is the b | etter student. | | | | |
| | A. who | B. which | C. | whom | D. | whose |
| 6. | Only after a year _ | to see the resul | lts o | f my experiment. | | |
| | A. I began | B. I had begun | C. | have I begun | D. | did I begin |
| 7. | I cannot imagine a | a time when to | solv | ve. | | |
| | A. there no proble | ems will be | В. | there will be no p | robl | ems |
| | C. no problems th | nere will be | D. | no problems will h | oe tl | nere |
| 8. | It is generally beli | ieved that teaching is | | it is a science. | | |
| | A. an art much as | \mathbf{s} | В. | much an art as | | |
| | C. as an art much | ı as | D. | as much an art as | | |
| 9. | A computer can or | nly do you hav | e in | structed it to do. | | |
| | A. how | B. after | C. | what | D. | when |
| 10 | him to | omorrow? It's too late now | • | | | |
| | A. Why not to c | all on | В. | Why don't call on | | |
| | C. Why not calli | ing on | D. | Why not call on | | |
| 11 | . There is miserable | le news that very few peo | ple | the earth | ıqua | ıke. |
| | A. recovered | B. survived | C. | existed | D. | discovered |
| 12 | . I asked him to _ | me a few minute | es so | that I could have | a w | ord with him. |
| | A. spend | B. spare | C. | save | D. | share |
| 13 | your b | oook and do this work firs | st. Y | You may read it late | er. | |
| | A. Put out | B. Put away | C. | Put up | D. | Put on |
| 14 | . Until then did I | realize that their marriage | e hac | d becaus | e th | ey had little in common. |
| | A. put off | B. given up | C. | broken down | D. | called off |
| 15 | . —Would you like | e to come to see a film w | ith 1 | me tonight? | | |
| | —I'd love to, $_$ | I didn't finish m | y ho | mework yet. | | |
| | A. and | B. so | C. | as | D. | but |
| 16 | you've | got an opportunity, you | shou | ıld take good advaı | ntag | e of it. |
| | A. Now that | B. After | C. | Although | D. | As soon as |
| 17 | . Many companies | are seeking to exploit and | d de | velop the rich natur | al _ | in west regions. |
| | A. sources | B. resources | C. | materials | D. | power |
| 18 | . Some local compa | anies are making great eff | forts | to with | forei | ign companies for a share |
| | of the market. | | | | | |
| | A. connect | B. combine | C. | compete | D. | compare |
| 19 | . Many students w | ill watch TV only to | | _ time during the s | sumi | mer vacation. |

| | A. spend B. waste | C. | enjoy | D. kill |
|----------|--|-------|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| 20. | We were all when we heard the | | news that the rescue | e team found another survivor. |
| | A. excited; excited | В. | exciting; exciting | |
| | C. excited; exciting | D. | exciting; excited | |
| 21. | A survey of the opinions of students | | _ that they also adm | nit several hours of sitting in |
| | front of the computer harmful for | | | |
| | A. show; are B. shows; is | C. | show; is | D. shows; are |
| 22. | Tired she was, there was no ho | ре о | of her being able to | sleep. |
| | A. if B. though | C. | even if | D. unless |
| 23. | By the time your plane lands tonight, I $_$ | | at the airport | for 3 hours. |
| | A. had waited | | have been waited | |
| | C. had been waiting | D. | will have been was | iting |
| 24. | The activity was delayed, was e | exac | tly we w | anted. |
| | A. which; what B. which; which | C. | that; what | D. that; that |
| 25. | The room is in a terrible mess; it | c | eleaned. | |
| | A. can't have been | | shouldn't have bee | en |
| | C. mustn't have been | D. | wouldn't have been | n |
| 26. | a postgraduate, I would at least | t ma | ster two foreign lar | iguages. |
| | A. Was I to become | В. | Were I to become | |
| | C. Had I become | D. | I should become | |
| 27. | It is the third times I to the Pa | lace | Museum, and I st | ill think it is marvelous. |
| | A. have gone B. go | C. | have been | D. will go |
| 28. | He made the proposal that wea | a rol | e play at the Engli | sh evening. |
| | A. have B. had | C. | will have | D. have had |
| 29. | All you can do to comfort her is | s to | listen to her story | patiently. |
| | A. what B. that | C. | which | D. things |
| 30. | The manager a rise in salary for | r ag | es, but nothing has | s happened yet. |
| | A. is promised | В. | is promising | |
| | C. has been promising | D. | promised | |
| 发 | 条详解: | | | |
| | | | | <u> </u> |

- 1. **D** 本题考查词汇辨析。lost "遗失,丢失"; forgotten "从记忆中忘记"; mislay "放错地方"; D 项意为 "忘在某地没有拿走"。本句意为:我找不到雨伞了,我一定是把它忘在公共汽车上了。
- 2. **D** 本题考查情态动词的用法。情态动词的完成式表示对过去动作的肯定推测,且有依据的推测。一般使用"must have done"。本句意为:大街上到处很湿,晚上一定下雨了。

- 3. **B** 本题考查分词做宾补。have sth. done 意为"让别人做某事"。本句意为:保尔刚刚理了发。
- 4. C 本题考查动词 look 的短语辨析。look out "小心,当心,注意"; look for "寻找,查询"; look on "旁观"。本句意为:请在词典里查询这些单词的不同含义。
- 5. A 本题考查名词性从句中连接代词 who 的用法。在本句中, as to 之后从句的逻辑主语 为人, 要用到宾格代词, 而后面宾语从句中又缺主语, 需要主格的代词, 因此选用 who。本句意为: 因为在考试中总是得相同的分数, 所以就有争议, 他们俩谁是更好的 学生。
- 6. **D** 本题考查倒装结构。当 only 置于句首后跟状语时,后面要用部分倒装结构,本句意为:仅一年后,我就开始看到我的试验结果了。
- 7. **B** 本题考查定语从句中的句子语序。when 引导定语从句,修饰先行词 time 要用到陈述语序,从句不用倒装语序。本句意为:我不敢想象没有问题需要解决的时候。
- 8. **D** 本题考查 much...as 的使用方法。as...as 是原级比较结构,一般为 as + adj. / adv. + as + 比较对象。本句意为:通常教学被认为是和科学一样的一门艺术。
- 9. C 本题考查代词 what 引导的宾语从句的使用。在 do 后的宾语从句中, what 充当 do 的逻辑宾语。本句意为: 计算机可以做你指导它做的事情。
- 10. **D** why not 表示建议,其后要用动词原形。本句意为:为什么不明天给他打电话呢?现在太晚了。
- 11. **B** 本题考查动词词义辨析。recover "恢复"; exist "存在"; discover "发现"; survive "幸存,比……活得长久"。本句意为: 不幸的消息传来,几乎没有人在地震中幸存。
- 12. **B** 本题考查动词词义辨析。spend"花费"; save "节省"; share "分享"; spare "(为某人或某目的)提供(时间、钱等)"。本句意为: 我让他给留出几分钟时间,这样我就能和他说几句话。
- 13. **B** 本题考查动词 put 短语辨析。put out "扑灭"; put away "放到一边"; put up "悬挂"; put on "穿上, 戴上"。本句意为: 把书放在一边, 先做工作。你可以晚些时候再看书。
- 14. C 本题考查动词短语辨析。put off "推迟"; give up "放弃"; break down "失败; 崩溃, 解体"; call off "取消"。本句意为: 直到那时我才意识到他们没有共同语言, 婚姻已经解体。本题还要注意 put off, give up, call off 都是及物动词短语, 只有 break down 是不及物动词短语。
- 15. **D** 本题考查连词用法。and 表示并列, but 表示转折。本句意为: 你愿意今晚和我一起看电影吗? 我倒想去,可是我还没有完成作业呢。因此,需要选择转折连词。
- 16. A 本题考查状语从句的引导词, now that 引导原因从句, 意为"既然"; after 引导时间状语从句, 意为"……之后"; although 引导让步状语从句, 意为"即使"; as soon as 引导时间状语从句, 意为"一……就"。本句意为: 既然你得到这么好的机会, 就要好好利用。因此, 前半句为原因从句, 需要使用 now that 引导。

- 17. **B** 本题考查名词词义辨析。source "来源"; resource "资源",通常使用复数形式; material "材料"; power "力量,电力"。本句意为:许多公司正在寻求西部地区丰富的自然资源。
- 18. C 本题考查形近词辨析。connect "连接"; combine "组合"; compete "与……竞争"; compare "比较"。本句意为:一些本地公司正在努力与外国公司竞争,以获取市场份额。
- 19. **D** 本题考查动词词义辨析, kill time, 意思为"消磨时间"。spend"花费"; waste "浪费"; enjoy"享受", 均不符合题意, 特别是本处表目的, 看电视的目的不是故意 浪费时间。本句意为: 许多学生在暑假里看电视只是为了消磨时光。
- 20. C 本题考查 excite 的现在分词和过去分词的不同用法。excited 用于描述人, 意为 "感到兴奋的"; exciting 用于描述物, 意为 "令人兴奋的"。本句意为: 救援队又找到 了一名幸存者, 这条振奋人心的消息让我们感到非常兴奋。
- 21. **B** 本题考查主谓一致。主句主语为 A survey, 其谓语动词用单数形式,即 is; 从句主语为 hours of sitting in front of the computer,为抽象概念,其谓语动词也应使用单数形式,即 shows,因此正确选项为 B。本句意为:对学生观点进行的一次调查表明:学生们也承认连续几小时坐在电脑前对健康有害。
- 22. **B** 本题考查 though, as 引起的倒装。在让步状语从句中, although 引导的从句使用正常语序, as 引导的让步状语从句需要倒装, 而 though 用于这两种情况均可。本句还可以表达为: Though (Although) she was tired / Tried as she was...。本句意为: 她尽管很累, 却无法入睡。
- 23. **D** 本题考查动词时态。动词的主要时态是由与其相关的时间状语决定,在本句中 tonight 决定了动词要使用将来时态, by the time 表明动词要使用完成式, for 3 hours 表示时间的持续,因此还应使用进行时态。综合起来,本题需要使用现在将来完成进行时。本句意为:等到今晚你的飞机到达时,我在机场就已经等3个小时了。
- 24. A 本题考查从句的引导词。前一空格处为非限制性定语从句的引导词,应选 which; 后面空格处为名词性从句(此处为表语从句)的引导词,因从句本身缺失宾语。因此 要使用 what。本句意为:活动推迟了,而这正是我们希望的。
- 25. A 本题考查情态动词表达推测的用法。对推测内容持有依据的肯定态度的,使用 must;在语气较弱时,也可使用 may, might;对推测内容持否定态度时,使用 can't 或 couldn't。如果对已经发生的事情进行推测,则使用情态动词 + have done 形式。本句意为:屋子里一团糟,肯定没有打扫过。
- 26. **B** 本题考查虚拟语气的用法。在虚拟条件句中,如果谓语表示的是将来的情况,可用 were to/should + do 形式表达。另外,虚拟条件句可以不用 if 引导,将 did/had/were/should 等前移至句首,形成部分倒装句。本题是与将来事实相反,从句要用 were to do, 主句用 would do。本句意为:如果我去读研究生,至少会掌握两门外语。
- 27. C 本题考查动词时态。如果动词相关的时间状语为"It be + 序数词 + times",表示

第几次,则动词要使用完成式。本题还需注意 go 无法表达动作的延续,因此不能选择 have gone。本句意为:这是我第三次去故宫了,可我依然认为它令人惊叹。

- 28. A 本题考查虚拟语气的用法。在表达"命令、祈使、要求、坚持、建议"等意义的 动词、名词、形容词后的从句中,从句动词需要使用虚拟语气,一般以 should do 形式 表现, should 可以省略。本句意为:他提议说,我们在英语晚会上应该有一个角色扮演的节目。
- 29. **B** 本题考查定语从句的关系代词。如果定语从句的先行词是 all, none, nothing, something, everything, anything, much, little, the one 等代词时, 引导词只能使用 that。本句意为:要想安慰她,你能做的就是耐心地听她讲自己的遭遇。
- 30. C 本题考查现在完成进行时的用法。现在完成进行时表示一个动作从过去开始,到现在仍然进行。题干中状语 for ages 表明动词 promise 需要完成式, but 后的分句暗示该动作依然进行,因此需要使用 have been promising 的形式。本句意为:经理很久以来就许诺加薪,但是到现在还一直没有动静。

| , | Test 5 | | | | |
|----|----------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|-------|--------------------------|
| 1. | Last year the adve | ertising rate by | 20 percent. | | |
| | A. raised | B. aroused | C. arose | D. | rose |
| 2. | When he arrived, | he found the a | aged and the sick at he | ome. | |
| | A. nothing but | B. none but | C. none other | D. | no other than |
| 3. | The student was ju | ust about to the | e question, when sudd | enly | he found the answer. |
| | A. arrive at | B. give up | C. submit to | D. | work out |
| 4. | | ur proposal that the discu | | | |
| | A. be put off | B. was put off | C. should put off | D. | is to put off |
| 5. | The first, second, | , and third prizes went to | Jack, Tom, and Harr | у | |
| | A. equally | B. different | C. similarly | D. | respectively |
| 6. | He had never give | en a speech to so many p | eople, so he felt | | <u>.</u> |
| | A. excited | B. stupid | C. disappointed | D. | nervous |
| 7. | Success in the lab | doesn't always mean imr | nediate success on a la | ırge | • |
| | A. business | B. account | C. way | D. | scale |
| 8. | Mr. Smith said tha | nt he did not want to | any further resp | onsil | bilities. |
| | A. get on | B. look up | C. put up | D. | take on |
| 9. | It is impossible to | with a person | whose methods are com | plet | ely opposed to your own. |
| | A. cooperate | B. correspond | C. compete | D. | compare |
| 10 | . It was the trainin | ng that he had as a young | man made | him | such a good engineer. |
| | A. has | B. later | C. which | D. | that |
| 11 | . When the interva | nl came, everyone | the bar. | | |
| | | B. made into | | D. | made up |

| 12. | The wide use of computers is a | | of the Information Age. | | | | |
|-----|--|-----------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|------|----------------------------|--|
| | A. urgent | B. characteristic | C. | remarkable | D. | feature | |
| 13. | If either of you h | nad been able to | _ yo | our anger, the fight | wo | uld have been avoided. | |
| | A. hold up | B. hold out | C. | hold back | D. | hold onto | |
| 14. | By lip reading or | watching the movements | of t | he speakers lips, a | dea | of person can actually see | |
| | the pe | erson at the other telephor | ne is | s saying. | | | |
| | A. that | B. how | C. | what | D. | where | |
| 15. | The story of the | homeless orphan has | | from the public. | | | |
| | A. aroused | B. attracted | C. | defended | D. | adopted | |
| 16. | She will tell us v | why she feels so strongly | that | each of us has a r | ole | in making the | |
| | earth a better pla | ace to live on. | | | | | |
| | A. to have playe | ed | В. | to play | | | |
| | C. to be played | | D. | to be playing | | | |
| 17. | The place the bridge is supposed to be built should be the cross-river | | | | | | |
| | traffic is the hear | | | | | | |
| | A. which; where | e | В. | at which; which | | | |
| | C. at which; where D. which; in which | | | | | | |
| 18. | The cost of living in Glasgow is among the lowest in Britain, the quality of life is | | | | | | |
| | probably one of | the highest. | | | | | |
| | A. since | B. when | C. | as | D. | while | |
| 19. | Thank you for al | l your hard work. I don't | thir | nk weit | with | nout you. | |
| | A. can manage | | В. | could have manage | ed | | |
| | C. could manage | e | D. | can have managed | | | |
| 20. | According to the | air traffic rules, you | | switch off your m | obil | e phone before boarding. | |
| | A. may | B. can | C. | would | D. | should | |
| 21. | Had he worked h | narder, he the | exa | ms. | | | |
| | A. must have go | t through | В. | would have got the | oug | h | |
| | C. would get thr | rough | D. | could get through | | | |
| 22. | The reason why | he didn't come to school | was | ill. | | | |
| | A. due to | | В. | that he fell | | | |
| | C. because he fe | ell | D. | because of falling | | | |
| 23. | —I can't find my | y purse anywhere. | | | | | |
| | —You | have lost it while shopp | ing. | | | | |
| | | B. can | | should | D. | would | |
| 24. | We should learn | from those are | alw | ays ready to help o | the | rs. | |
| | A. who | B. whom | C. | they | D. | that | |

| 25. | Mr. Herpin is one of the foreign experts w | ho in China | ı . |
|-----|--|------------------------|---------------------|
| | A. works B. is working | C. are working | D. has been working |
| 26. | Only when he had done it that | he had made a mistak | e. |
| | A. he then realized | B. he realized | |
| | C. did he realize | D. before he realize | |
| 27. | I, your good friend, will try m | y best to help you out | |
| | A. who is B. who am | C. that is | D. which am |
| 28. | The old man has two sons, are | lawyers. | |
| | A. both of them B. both of who | C. both of whom | D. both of they |
| 29. | He is a man of great knowledge, | _ much can be learne | ed. |
| | A. in whom B. about whom | C. from whom | D. of whom |
| 30. | Do you know the man just now | ? | |
| | A. to who I nodded | B. I nodded to | |
| | C. whom I nodded | D. whom I nodded to | o him |
| - | | | |

答案详解:

- 1. **D** 本题考查形近词辨析。raise "提升; 养育"; arouse "唤醒"; arise "出现"; rise "上升"。要注意四个动词及物和不及物的用法。本句意为: 去年广告费率上升了 20%。根据题意,需要用不及物动词,所以答案应选 D。
- 2. **B** 本题考查短语辨析。nothing but 用于指物"仅仅", none 用于修饰人"只有", no other than 意为"正是"。本句意为: 他到达时,发现只有老人和病人在家。所以答案 选 B。
- 3. **B** 本题考查动词短语辨析。arrive at "到达"; give up "放弃"; submit to "屈服于,提交"; work out "制定出;解决"。本句意为:这个学生正要放弃这道题时,突然找到了答案。
- 4. A 本题考查虚拟语气。一些表示"命令、建议、要求、惊叹、愿望"等的动词、名词和形容词后跟名同性从句,从句谓语动词要用虚拟语气,其形式为 should do, should 可以省略。proposal 是表示建议的名词,其后从句要用此形式。本句意为:我们都赞成你推迟讨论的建议。
- 5. **D** 本题考查副词辨析。equally "平等地"; differently "不同地"; similarly "相似地"; respectively "分别地"。respectively 是专升本考试常见考点,也常和 respectful, respectable 进行辨析考查。本句意为:一、二、三等奖分别授予杰克、汤姆和哈利。
- 6. **D** 本题考查形容词辨析。excited "兴奋的"; stupid 意为 "愚蠢的"; disappointed 意为 "失望的"; nervous 意为 "紧张的"。本句意为: 他从没有当着这么多人的面讲过话, 因此感觉有点紧张。
- 7. **D** 本题考查名词辨析。business"商务;事务"; account 意为"账目;理由"; way 意为"方法;方式"; scale 意为"规模",常见于短语 on a large scale"大规模地"。本句

意为:在实验室中取得成功,并不总是意味着就能立刻获得大规模的成功。

- 8. **D** 本题考查动词短语辨析。get on "登上"; look up "查阅"; put up "悬挂"; take on "承担; 呈现"。本句意为: 史密斯先生说他不想承担任何更多的责任。
- 9. A 本题考查形近词辨析。cooperate "合作"; correspond "通讯"; compete "竞争"; compare "比较"。本句意为: 和一个方法与你完全不同的人合作是不可能的。
- 10. **D** 本题考查强调句的用法。强调句型结构为: It is/was +被强调部分 + that。本题目是对 that 的考查。这也是专升本英语考试常见考点,几乎每年必考。本句意为: 正是他年轻时的训练才使他成为一名优秀的工程师。
- 11. C 本题考查动词 make 短语的辨析。make out "辨认出"; make into "把 ……做成"; make for "朝……前进"; make up 意为 "构成; 弥补"。本句意为: 休息时间到了, 大家都朝吧台走去。
- 12. **B** 本题考查单词词义及词性辨析。urgent 意为"紧急的"; characteristic "典型的"; be characteristic of "是·····特征"; remarkable 意为"显著的"; feature 意为"特征"。 根据句意, 空格处应填"特征", 同时根据结构, 此处应使用名词, 因此应选择 B。 本句意为: 广泛使用计算机是信息时代的特征。
- 13. C 本题考查动词 hold 短语的辨析。hold up "停顿"; hold out "坚持; 提供", hold back "控制, 抑制"; hold on to "坚持"。本句意为: 如果你们二人中的任何一个能够控制一下火气, 就能避免打起来了。
- 14. **C** 本题考查宾语从句的引导词 what。本句空格后的从句中动词 say 缺宾语,因此要选择 what,因为 what 在名词性从句中做句子成分。本句意为:通过唇读或观察讲话人嘴唇的动作,聋哑人实际上可以看出另一个打电话的人在说什么。
- 15. A 本题考查动词词义辨析。arouse "引起"; attract "吸引"; defend "防御"; adopt "采纳; 收养"。本句意为: 这个无家可归的孤儿的故事引起了众人的同情。故应选择 A。
- 16. **B** 本题考查不定式结构做后置定语的用法。本题中 play 与 role 形成动宾关系, to play a role, 因此要使用主动形式。本句意为: 她会告诉我们为什么她强烈地感到, 我们每个人都应该在使地球成为更好的生存之地方面发挥作用。
- 17. C 本题考查从句的引导词。The place 后为定语从句,从句本身缺失地点状语,因此使用 where 或 prep. + which 引导。be 后为表语从句,从句本身缺少状语,因此也使用 where 或 prep. + which 引导,但是不能用 prep. + which 引导表语从句。本句意为:修建桥梁的地点应该是跨河交通最繁忙的地方。
- 18. **D** 考查状语从句的引导词。while 引导让步状语从句,表示对照,一般可译为"然而"。本句意为:格拉斯格的生活费用在英国属最低之列,而生活质量则属最高之列。
- 19. **B** 考查含蓄条件的虚拟语气。本题中 without you 构成含蓄虚拟条件,意思为"若是没有",句子的动词要使用虚拟语气,又由于动作已经发生,因此本题答案为 B。尤其注意的是 because 也可以引导原因状语从句,但句子主语不能是 the reason。本句意

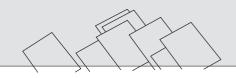
- 为:谢谢你的辛苦工作,我想如果没有你,我们就无法做成这件事了。
- 20. **D** 本题考查情态动词的用法。本句意为:根据航空守则,你应该在登机之前关闭手机。因此应该选择 should。
- 21. **B** 本题考查虚拟语气。本句是省略 if 的条件句,表示与过去事实相反的情形,因此 主句动词要使用 would have done 形式,故答案为 B。本句意为:如果他当时学习再努力些,就能通过考试了。
- 22. **B** 本题考查表语从句。形成固定表达 The reason...is that...,因此本题答案为 B。本句意为:他不来学校的原因是他病了。
- 23. A 本题考查情态动词的用法。may 表示没有依据的肯定推测, 意思为"或许"。本句 意为: ——我到处都找不到我的钱包。——你可能买东西时丢了吧。
- 24. **A** 本题考查引导定语从句的关系代词。those 表示人时,其后的定语从句使用 who 来引导。本句意为:我们应该向那些乐于助人的人学习。
- 25. C 本题考查定语从句中动词的形式。"one of + 复数名词",其后的定语从句是修饰 复数名词本身,因此从句中使用复数谓语动词。故本题选择 C。本句意为: 郝平先生 是在中国工作的外国专家之一。
- 26. C 本题考查倒装句。only 位于句首, 修饰状语时, 其后的句子主干需要部分倒装, 助动词 did 提到主语之前。本句意为: 只有当他做的时候他才发现之前他犯了个错误。
- 27. **B** 本题考查定语从句中的主谓一致。定语从句中谓语动词的人称和数应与先行词的人称、数保持一致。由于句中 I 为先行词,因此从句谓语应使用 am。本句意为: 作为你的好朋友,我会尽力帮你走出困境。
- 28. C 本题考查定语从句的关系代词的用法。who, whom 都可以引导定语从句,区别在于 who 在从句中做主语和宾语,而 whom 在从句中只能做宾语。两者中介词后面只能用 whom,因此本题需选 whom,做介词 of 的宾语。本句意为:老人有两个儿子,他们都是律师。
- 29. C 本题考查定语从句中介词 + which (whom) 的用法。from 与 learn 一起形成短语 learn from, 意为"向……学习"。本句意为: 他是个知识渊博的人, 从他那儿可以学 到很多东西。
- 30. **B** 本题依然考查定语从句中关系代词和介词的用法。从句中的介词 to 可以前置,形成 to whom I nodded,也可以留在从句中,形成 whom I nodded to,因此答案为 B。注意介词后只能用 whom 不能用 who。如果介词不前置,做宾语的 whom 或 who 可以省略。本句意为:你认识我刚才点头示意的那个人吗?

第三部分

阅读理解及练习

第一章

阅读理解概述



在山东省专升本英语考试中,阅读理解(Reading Comprehension)部分所占分值比重最大,共30分,包括选择题和搭配题两种形式。该部分重点测试学生从书面文字材料中获取信息、理解内在含义的能力。总阅读量约为1000词,由两部分(Section A和 Section B)组成。其中,Section A为三篇阅读选择题,Section B为搭配题。本部分的得分占总分的30%。测试时间为35分钟。

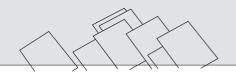
在本章中,我们主要讲述比重和难度都较大的客观选择类阅读理解题目。考试大纲要求考生掌握语篇和段落的主旨和大意;了解用以阐述主旨的事实和有关细节;理解语篇上下文的逻辑关系;对语篇进行一定的判断、推理和引申;根据上下文正确理解生词的意义;领会作者的观点和态度。阅读理解的题材广泛,包括人物传记、社会、文化、日常生活、科普知识、风土人情等,但所涉及的背景知识为学生所理解;文章的语言难度适中,无法猜测而又影响理解的关键词,若超过考试大纲词汇表的范围,用汉语注明词义。在近几年的试题中,科普文章所占比例最大,其次是社会生活方面的文章。四级考试阅读体裁多样化,包括记叙文、说明文、议论文等等,其中以说明文(约 45%)和议论文(约 40%)居多。

而搭配题的难度较小,考生只需看一下真题和模拟题,熟悉题型模式即可。在实际考试过程中,考生极少在该题型上出现失误,因此我们就不再进行介绍。

考生若想在阅读理解部分取得优异成绩,就必须要掌握"读"和"解"两方面的能力。这两方面是相辅相成的,缺一不可,即首先要不断扩大阅读量,增强对英文句式结构特点的理解感悟能力,培养快速、准确把握英文信息的能力。其次,考生还需要掌握阅读中的各种技巧和方法,善于总结规律,并通过大量阅读训练将各种技巧方法付诸实践。下面就有关提高阅读能力的几个重要环节进行简要论述,给考生一些建议。

第二章

提高阅读能力



一、扩大词汇量

词汇是语言的基本单位。词汇的记忆和应用是阅读理解的第一步,是最基本的要求。不具备一定的词汇量,阅读理解根本无从谈起。对于专升本英语考试来说,为了满足阅读理解的需要,考生至少要掌握《基本要求》规定的 3 400 个单词和 900 个左右的短语。由于近年来考试难度的加大,也由于阅读材料中一般会有一定数量的超纲词(一般不超过文章单词总数的 2%),因此考生还应在此基础上尽可能扩充词汇量,并且要了解一定的构词知识,以减少生词在阅读理解中可能造成的障碍。

二、巩固语法知识

英语是一种逻辑性很强的拼音语言,其结构比较规整,有很多规律性的内容。体现在 具体的行文里,就是存在大量的固定句型,惯用说法等等,这些相当于数学里的公式,可 以把类似的词语往里套,构成不同的句子。根据英语的这一特点,如果掌握足够多的英语 常用语法,便对句子结构有一个总体性的把握,在脑海内建立起一个理解语句的框架,能 够较快地捕捉句子所要表达的意思,这样必然会提高阅读的效率。

除记忆某些习惯用法和常用结构外,还要学会分析长难句。在阅读中,我们经常会遇到一些长而难的句子。长难句通常含有较多、较长的修饰成分、并列成分或从句。长难句的丰富内容和复杂结构往往会导致理解的困难。理解长难句的关键是了解长难句的类型,理清句子成分,抓住句子中的关键部分。分析长难句可遵循以下三种方法:

(一) 结构分析法

所谓结构分析法,就是通过语法分析,迅速弄清句子的结构,把握住句子的基本框架。基本步骤是:首先,判断该句是简单句、并列句还是复合句;然后,找出句子的核心成分,分清主语和谓语,再分清句子的附属成分。试分析下面的句子,把握其主要结构与重点信息:

- 1. Some companies have made the manufacturing of clean and safe products their main selling point and emphasize in their advertising.
 - 2. Miss Germaine's mother looked anxious through the wedding and Mr. Cordell's parents are

reported to be less than delighted.

- 3. Whereas a woman's closest female friend might be the first to tell her to leave a failing marriage, it wasn't unusual to hear a man say he didn't know his friend's marriage was in serious trouble until he appeared one night asking if he could sleep on the sofa.
- 4. If you ask people to name one person who had the greatest effect on the English language, you will get answers like "Shakespeare", "Samuel Johnson", and "Webster" but none of these men had any effect at all compared to a man who didn't even speak English-William, the Conqueror.

分析 1. 此句的主语为 some companies, 有两个谓语, 即 have made 和 emphasize。

- 2. 此句中的 and 是连接两个并列成分的, 连接两个并列单句。
- 3. whereas 引导了一个从句,即 a woman's closest female friend might be the first to tell her to leave a failing marriage, 而 wasn't unusual to hear a man say he didn't know his friend's marriage was in serious trouble until he appeared one night asking if he could sleep on the sofa 为主句,其中 it 为形式主语,真正的主语为不定式。
- 4. 首先弄清并列复合句,即 but 连接的两个句子,but 前有一个条件状语从句,but 后为一个单句,单句里又有一个 who 引导的定语从句。

(二) 意群阅读法

意群阅读法即把意义和语法结构上有关联的几个词连接成较完整的信息。此方法不仅 有利于提高阅读速度,而且有利于对句子进行整体理解。

①When two cars travelling at 30 m/h hit each other, ②an unbelted diver would meet the windshield ③with a force equal to diving headfirst into the ground from a height of 10 meters.

分析 ①是状语从句,②是主句,③是 with 引导的介词短语作状语修饰谓语。这样,把整个句子划为3个意群,可以大大提高阅读速度。

(三) 辨认信号词

每篇文章为使主题思想体现得更加充分、明显,作者会通过一定的思维形式和语言手段,把分散、复杂的材料组织在一起,使之形成一个结构严谨、层次分明、形式与内容相一致的语言整体。这种语言手段就是通过语言信号词来实现的。语言信号词能使文章前后逻辑清晰,段落与段落之间、句子与句子之间结构紧凑、语义连贯。所以,如果在阅读时能抓住这些信号词就能加深对文章的理解,从而提高阅读速度和理解能力。常见的信号词大体可作如下分类:

1. 表同类性质的词。主要包括: and, more, furthermore, what is more, moreover, also, likewise, in addition, for instance, for example 等。在段落中出现这些词时,则其前后语句是含义相近或描述相似性质的事物。可通过不同语句对该语段的意思进行反复确认、既能提

高阅读速度又加深了记忆。

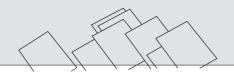
- 2. 表因果关系的词。主要包括: because, because of, for, since, as thus, therefore, accordingly, consequently 等。这种词主要分析原因,引出结果。
- 3. 表先后顺序的词。主要有: first, second, after, before, next, in the first place, finally 等。这类词在文中往往使文章变得层次分明,很有立体感。表先后顺序的词有时表示一定的因果关系。
- 4. 表转折意义的词。这类词主要有: but, however, yet, nevertheless, although, in spite of, despite, otherwise 等。这类词大多连接相反意义的语句,往往要从反方向对所连接的不同语句进行理解。
- 5. 表结论的词。主要包括: in conclusion, in a word, in brief, in short, therefore 等。这 类词一般对前几句或全段甚至全文进行总结,这些词后的语句为所表示范围的中心句。掌握好这些词,对把握文章的整体意思很有帮助。也是回答对中心意思提问题型的关键技巧之一。

值得注意的是:上述分类不是绝对的,有些词可表示多种类型。如"therefore"即可表同类性质,也可表结论,还可表原因。切忌对上述分类进行生搬硬套,熟练地掌握这些词,要靠平时多积累,带着技巧多训练。同时,信号词辨认法应该与其他方法综合起来应用,才能使各方法起到事半功倍的作用。

掌握了信号词,考生在阅读中了解句与句之间,段落与段落之间的逻辑关系,就可以 较为清晰地把握文章脉络,了解文章主题,明确考查重点,确定问题答案,从而为大幅度 提高阅读理解方面的成绩打下坚实基础。

第三章

提高解题能力



第一节

提高辨别信息的能力

一、提高辨别事实的能力

事实细节题在历年考题中比例几乎是最大的,是针对文章的某句话,某个对象等细节而出题。此类试题的提问方式灵活多变,往往用 what, why, how, when, where, who 等来提问。而答题的依据一般均在文章中能直接找到,对文中关键词汇作同义词或同义结构的解释。

实例演练

You have been made a conditional offer. As soon as you have met the conditions set for you, please inform International Admissions in writing by letter or fax with a copy of your certificate if applicable. International students in their first year of study at Luton can apply for a place to stay in the university.

What should Li Dong do when he has met the conditions set for him?

- A. Prepare a copy of his resume.
- B. Travel to the UK immediately.
- C. Inform International Admissions.
- D. Send a short notice to his sponsor.

解析: C 根据题干关键词 met the conditions (符合那些条件) 可定位到第三段第二句。该句用 as soon as 引导时间状语从句, 题干替换成同义的 when 引导, 因此答案就在主句中。本句提到, 你一旦符合那些为你设定的条件, 就请通过写信或传真通知国际招生处 (inform International Admissions), C 项 inform International Admissions 与原文一致, 为答案。本句提到如果可以的话, 附上证书复印件 (a copy of your certificate), 而非 A 项提到的 resume "简历"。B 项说要马上去英国, D 项是给担保人发送简短通知, 这些内容在文中都没有提到。

参考译文: 你已经获得了有条件的录取通知书。一旦达到这些为你设定的条件,可以的话,就请复印你的证书,通过写信邮寄或传真通知国际招生处。国际学生在卢顿的第一学年可以申请住在学校某处。

● 应试技巧

- 1. 在辨别细节事实题目时,考生需找准题干中的关键词(句),定位到关键词(句) 在文章中出现的具体位置,答案就在关键词(句)的前后找,再对比选项作答。
 - 2. 将标志主要事实或细节的语言标志做记号,下面即是需要划出的语言标志:
- ① 与主旨大意有关的重要事实或细节,如举例、引用、调查、实验、结果等,体现在语言形式上有: for example, that is, a case in point, in fact, it is essential 等。
- ②表示因果关系的词语,如: because, since, so, in that, therefore, with, as a result, result in, stem from, derive from 等,以及冒号、破折号等标点符号。
- ③ 表示转折对立的词语,如: while, however, but, although, yet, still, on the other hand, on the contrary 等。

二、辨别信息是否属实的能力

是非判断题要求考生对某一细节做出正确判断,或就文章是否提及某一细节或事实进 行提问。这种题型测试考生能否全面而精确地理解全文的细节信息。

此类题常以"Which of the following is not true?"或是"The following statements are true except..."等形式提问,考生应保持思维清晰,需要进行逆向思维,紧扣题意答题,不宜匆忙武断。

实例演练

Start your day off right with our continental breakfast free. Not only do we offer a generous variety of traditional continental foods, but also a couple of hot items each day. Too busy to sit down for breakfast? During the week, you can choose to take away a breakfast bag...

Which of the following is TRUE about the breakfast in the hotel?

- A. Chinese foods are also available.
- B. All the items provided are hot food.
- C. Free continental breakfast is provided.
- D. Breakfast can be taken away at weekends.

解析: C 本题询问关于酒店早餐哪个说法正确。根据该段第1句话可知酒店向客人免费提供欧陆式早餐,因而选项C为正确答案。

参考译文: 早上起床后,请免费享用我们的欧陆式早餐。我们不但提供丰富多样的传统欧陆美食,而且每天还附送两款热菜。太忙,难以坐下来享用早餐吗? 在本周,您可以选择把早餐打包带走……

● 应试技巧

- 1. 审题时, 应对 not true, be not mentioned / included, all the following except 等词语,保持相当的敏锐性。
- 2. 该题解题的关键在于根据题干句与选项,仔细比较与原文若干相关细节的异同, 尤其应关注的是有些同义转换的表达方法。

3. 排除法不失为常用且保险系数较高的方法。选项措辞过于绝对化的,应首先排除。

三、辨别指代成分的能力

在文章中为了避免用词重复以使上下文语义连贯,而使用替代词(一般有 it, they, them, such 等),代替上文出现的词、句或句子。

常见提问句型: In Line...of paragraph..., the word "they" refers to ...

实例演练

We have probably all had lectures pointing out that laziness is immoral, that it is wasteful, and that lazy people will never amount to anything in life. But laziness can be more harmful than that, and it is often caused by more complex reasons than simple wish to avoid work.

The pronoun "that" in Line Three of Paragraph One refers to _____.

- A. laziness is immoral
- B. laziness is wasteful
- C. lazy people will never amount to anything in life
- D. all of the above

解析: **D** 第一段第二句 "We have probably all had lectures pointing out that laziness is immoral, that it is wasteful, and that lazy people will never amount to anything in life." (我们可能都参加过一些讲座,讲座中指出懒惰是不道德的,就是浪费时间,懒人将在生活中一事无成)中 A、B、C 全部涉及,因而 that 应指代 D。

参考译文: 我们可能都参加过一些讲座, 讲座中指出懒惰是不道德的, 就是浪费时间, 懒人在生活中将一事无成。但是懒惰的危害性可能比这更大, 懒惰往往是由复杂的原因而不是简单的愿望引起的, 以避免工作。

▶ 应试技巧

考生应培养利用上下文的语义线索,正确确定指代词所代替的词义,语义对象。可采用以下方法:

- 1. 就近原则:即与该代词或名词最近的名词或名词短语最有可能为被替代词。
- 2. 顺藤摸瓜:如果按就近原则找不到替代词,则继续往上寻找,分析句子成分,理解句意,判断逻辑关系。

四、辨别词义的能力

语义题也是对文章中的关键词语,如生词、多义词进行提问,需要考生知道或推断出 该生词的同义词或该短语(句)的引申意义或另一种表述方式。

常见题干类型:

Judging from the context, the word "..." in this passage most probably means . .

实例演练

Great business presenters relate their ideas and concepts to their audience by using simple, powerful diagrams instead of relying on text-based slides. In fact, drawing diagrams forces a presenter to make the idea clear even at the preparation stage. It is impossible to draw a diagram when you are not clear about an idea. When your idea is clear, it is easier to transfer it.

The underlined word "transfer" in this passage most probably means _____.

A. create B. pass on C. take off D. describe

解析: B 该段讨论的主要是关于如何才能让介绍的信息简单、易懂,也就是如何才能将信息传达给听众,其中一个做法就是降低信息的难度,信息越浅显,就越容易"传达"出去,根据这个主要内容,可推断 transfer 在原文也和信息的"传达""表达"有关,故本题选 B 项 pass on 最符合上下文的意思。观点不是被"创造"的,所以 A 项 create 排除。C 项 take off 与上下文的内容不属于同一个领域。D 项 describe 不如"传达"那么契合上下文的意思。

参考译文:高明的业务介绍人会通过简单而具有感染力的图表将他们的理念和观众 联系起来,而非只使用文本幻灯片。事实上,画图的方式迫使陈述人在准备阶段理清观点。如果你对观点没有清晰的把握,你是不可能画出图来的。清晰的观点才更容易传达出去。

▶ 应试技巧

- 1. 在答词汇题时,可以依据上下文语义的内在线索和一定的逻辑关系来确定。例如利用被考词的修饰、限定成分判断其含义。这种修饰、限定成分的表现形式多样,可以是定语、其他修饰语、特殊标点符号后面的内容,甚至是该词下属的例子及定义,可以通过这些表达从侧面理解被考词的含义。
- 2. 还可以通过把握连接词(如 and, or 等)所表达的关系来判断被考词的含义。一般来说, and 连接的内容在含义上是接近的或递进的, 而 or 连接的内容在含义上往往相反,但有时 or 后面的内容也是对前面内容的进一步解释和说明。当然其他表递进、转折、因果等关系的信号词均可用来帮助判断词义。
- 3. 选项含义与被考词含义表面上相近的一般不是答案项。而选项内容全面,概括性强的,一般是正确答案。

第二节

提高检测、归纳、概括的能力

一、概括、归纳文章主题思想的能力

主旨题主要测试考生对整篇文章的理解能力。解答主旨题时, 最有效的办法是找到并

仔细研读文章的主题句。主题句在大多数情况下出现在比较重要的位置,如文章的开头或结尾。如果一篇文章包括多个段落,一般来说每个段落的首句也是本段的主题句。文章主题句之外的其他内容一般都是对主题句的解释、补充说明或列举事实等。另外,有些阅读材料的主题思想不是十分明确,需要通读全文,抓住主要论点或论题来归纳出中心思想。应该注意的是,在归纳中心思想时,要从文章实际内容出发,在事实依据的基础上进行判断、推论和归纳。

主旨题常见题干类型如下:
What is the main idea/subject of this passage?
What does the passage mainly discuss?
What does this passage mainly / primary concern?
This passage is mainly about _____.

The main point of the passage is .

实例演练

Finding a good work-at-home job is not easy. Although you see all the online advertising, there aren't that many of them. Those that are available may require that you live in a certain area or spend at least some time in the office. Others may be only part-time jobs.

Keep in mind that the skills needed for home employment are similar to those needed for working in an office. You'll also need a home office with a high-speed Internet connection, phone, fax, computer, printer, and other basic office equipment.

To get started, consider your job search as your job. Spend as many hours per week on your job search as you would spend working. If you're looking for full-time work, you should be spending full-time hours seeking a job.

Networking (人际关系) remains the top way to find a job and it does work. Develop contacts—friends, family, even the other job seekers—anyone who might have the information you need. You can take a direct approach and ask for job information or try a less formal approach and ask for information and advice. Contact everyone you know and tell them you want to work from home. You may be surprised by the people they know and the job information they can provide.

The passage is mainly about _____.

- A. how to build a work-at-home office
- B. how to look for a work-at-home job
- C. the equipment needed for home working
- D. the skills required for working from home

解析: B 本文第1段主要分析了寻找在家上班的工作的困难, 第2段主要介绍了这

种工作的要求,第3、4 段提供了如何找这类工作的建议。总结来看,全文主要围绕"如何找一份在家上班的工作"这一主题,即 B 项。文中没有提及如何打造在家上班的办公室的相关信息,A 项没有原文依据。C 项是第2 段第2 句提到的细节,而 D 项是第2 段第1 句的细节,均不能概括全文。

● 应试技巧

- 1. 解此类主旨题时,首先要抓住主题段和各段中的主题句。由于目前考试文章以议论文和说明文居多,其主题段往往位于首段或末段,再加上各段主题句,中心比较容易找到。
- 2. 阅读时,注意出现频率高的单词,这些词可能就是蕴含中心思想的关键词。这些 关键词可能是同一词多次出现,也可能是同一类词贯穿全文。
- 3. 单从选项内容上判断,那些概括全文、内容全面、含义深刻、说明道理的选项一般是答案项,而内容片面、单一的选项应排除。
- 4. 主旨题干扰项特点: (1) 只是局部信息,或是一句没有展开论述的话,或只是某一段的主要内容; (2) 概括范围太宽,概括文章的内容过于一般化,包含的内容超出或多于文章阐述的内容,或是没有具体的内容; (3) 无关信息,即在文章中未提到或找不到语言根据的信息。

二、归纳文章写作目的的能力

写作目的题属于主旨归纳题的范畴,要求考生理解文章基本内容,抓住文章中心思想,从而弄清作者的写作意图。

该题型的各种提问形式可以归纳如下:

What is the author's main purpose of this passage?

Why does the author mention...?

The author's purpose in writing this passage is ______

● 实例演练

Dear Mr. Li Dong,

I am pleased to confirm that you have a conditional offer of a place at the University of Luton.

You should arrive in time for Welcome Week, which begins on 16th September, 2018. Teaching begins on 30th September, 2018. However, the university will admit students up to two weeks after this date.

You have been made a conditional offer. As soon as you have met the conditions set for you, please inform International Admissions in writing by letter or fax with a copy of your certificate if applicable. International students in their first year of study at Luton can apply for a place to stay in the university. You should therefore ensure that you or your sponsor can provide at least \$600

per month to support yourself. All students whose first language is not English are expected to obtain formal English proficiency certificates.

Please return the attached Reply Slip to us as soon as possible, indicating whether or not you wish to accept the conditional place offered to you. We look forward to hearing from you again soon. If you have any questions about your offer or your stay in the university, please do not hesitate to contact International Admissions.

The purpose of the letter is to ask the applicant whether . .

A. he accepts the offer

- B. he needs financial support
- C. he wants help in applying for a visa
- D. he wishes to share a flat with others

解析: A 本题要求判断这封信的写作目的。开头一句就提到收信人获得了有条件的录取通知书(have a conditional offer);最后第一段开头提及要尽快回复回执,并明确告之是否希望接受条件。由此可推断这封信是询问申请人是否接受这份有条件的录取通知,故A项 he accepts the offer(他接受录取通知)正确。B项提到的 financial support(经济支持)是由申请人或担保人提供的,而这封信是由校方发出的,与他们无关。C项中的 visa(签证)和D项中的 share a flat(共享公寓)都没有在文中提到。

● 应试技巧

- 1. 务必认清主题, 牢记写作目的是围绕主题来归纳的。
- 2. 特殊标点符号,尤其是段首的特殊标点符号之后的内容,往往表达了作者的论点, 阐释了全文主题,因而成为重点考查内容。
- 3. 语义转折处,尤其是段首的语义转折处,常是考点。因为转折后面的内容往往是 作者真实的写作目的或基本观点,而这又正是文章中心思想的所在。
 - 4. 因果句常考。因果句也可表现出作者的目的、观点或文章的主题,因此可成考点。

三、确定文章标题的能力

一篇文章必须体现一个主题,而主题的高度概括便是体现在文章的标题中。文章标题的选择即是主题的选择,因此,要求考生在归纳全文中心大意的前提下,选出最能完整概括全文的标题,标题一般以短语出现,标题中的用词既不能太"宽",也不能太"窄",而应适中,能概括全文的中心思想。

常见题型为:

Which of the following is the best title?

What is the best title for the passage?

实例演练

The business cycle is composed of many phases and one of them is the expansion phase. This

phase is a two-fold one, including recovery and prosperity.

During the recovery period there is an ever-growing expansion of existing equipment. And new facilities for production are created. More businesses are created and older ones expanded. Improvements of serious kinds are made. There is an ever increasingly positive view about the future of economic growth. Much capital is invested in machinery or "heavy" industry. More labor is employed. More raw materials are required.

As more parts of the economy develop, other parts are affected. For example, the expansion in automobiles results in an expansion of the steel and rubber industries. Roads are required; thus the cement and machinery industries are activated. Demand for labor and materials results in greater prosperity for workers and suppliers of raw materials. This increases the amount of goods bought and sold. Thus prosperity develops among the various parts of the population.

This prosperity period may continue to rise without an obvious end. However, a time comes when this phase reaches a peak and stops going upwards. This is the end of the expansion phase.

Which is probably the best title for this passage?

- A. Development of Economy.
- B. Recovery of Economy.

C. Expansion of Economy.

D. Prosperity of Economy.

解析: C 本题询问下面哪一项最适合作为这篇文章的题目。这篇文章主要讲了经济扩张阶段的情况,详细介绍了其中的经济复苏与经济繁荣两个阶段,故选项 C 为正确答案。选项 A (经济发展)过于笼统,选项 B (经济复苏)和选项 D (经济繁荣)仅仅概括了经济扩张的一部分内容,不够全面。故此三项都不选。

▶ 应试技巧

- 1. 全面把握文章的中心大意,避免片面。
- 2. 分析各选项,内容过窄过宽均属偏颇单一,应排除。
- 3. 标题应具有概括性,全面性和简洁性。
- 4. 归纳作者观点、态度的能力。

作者在文章中对他(她)所描述的人或物持某一种观点或态度,而这一观点或态度不可能直截了当地传递给读者,这就要求读者通过文章的主题,作者的选词尤其是一些形容词,动词的选择来概括出作者的态度或观点。

常见题干类型:

| In the passage the author's attitude towards "" is |
|--|
| The author argues that |
| The author uses the example of to show that |
| Which of the following is the author's view on? |

实例演练

Educational research should be required to meet the same standards as scientific research, but it cannot be raised to those standards without comparable support and duty. Competent educational research is no more a part-time activity than competent scientific research. The relatively trivial (琐碎的) educational research so common in the universities is an inseparable result of trivial duties by the universities.

What is the author's attitude towards trivial educational research?

- A. It should not be paid attention to by professors.
- B. It can be looked down upon by competent professors.
- C. It does not have the same duties with competent research.
- D. It does not need improvement.

解析: C 本题询问作者对琐碎的教育研究的态度如何。根据第二段第一句话后半部分可知,健全的教育研究规划标准要分清不同的责任,第三句话表明琐碎的教育研究也是研究规划的一部分。所以,琐碎的教育研究应该和高水平的教育研究责任不同,故选项 C (与高水平研究职责不同)为正确答案。根据第二段最后一句话可知,大学教授们不应该歧视琐碎的教育研究,他们应该有义务提高这些研究的水平,说明了教授应该重视这样的研究,故选项 A (教授不应该重视这些研究)、选项 B (有能力的教授可以看不起这些研究)以及选项 D (这些研究不需要改善)等说法均不符合文意,故不选。

参考译文:教育研究应该符合科学研究的标准,但是,教育研究要达到这样的标准需要获得相当的支持并分清不同责任。高水平的教学研究与高水平的科学研究一样,都需要人们全力以赴。相对琐碎的教育研究在大学里极为常见,这是大学职责琐碎必然的产物。

● 应试技巧

- 1. 理解篇章,掌握文章主旨主题。
- 2. 综合分析文章上下文信息、措辞及语言感情色彩。
- 3. 忠实把握作者观点、态度, 切忌受自身主观倾向的影响。

四、句子转述的能力

文章中某些包括重要信息或体现文章主题,或说明文章主题的句子往往出现在问题中,要求考生加以理解,这类语句在语言形式或语法结构上有一定的难度,而且在特定上下文中有特定的含义;而正确选择项的表达往往对题干句中的句子或短语进行重新叙述,所表达的语义不变。

常见题干类型:

| By saying that "" | in Line of paragraph, the writer means | · |
|-------------------|--|---|
| The statement "" | in Line of paragraphsuggests that | |

● 实例演练

We try to ensure that GFL Solid Waste *Haulage* (清运) Division is a company that acts safely and responsibly at all times and in all places. We never tolerate any conduct that puts our customers and the communities we serve at risk. At GFL, safety is more than a program; it is a core value of our company. GFL is equally committed to improving the environment for the future of the communities we live in and we serve. We believe that our services play an essential part in improving the environment and we are always mindful of having the most cost-effective waste management solutions for our customers...

In the first paragraph, "we are always mindful of..." means ...

A. we are always worried about

B. we always look forward to

C. we are always aware of

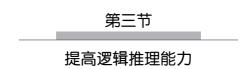
D. we always put up with

解析: C 在本题中,需要推断的核心词是 mindful。文章第 1 段是对 GFL 公司服务作总体介绍,在本题所在的最后一句中,应该指出 GFL 公司的服务性质,把四个选项逐一套入原文,只有 C 项可以概括 GFL 的服务性质。另外,如果对英语单词的构词法有所了解的话,便可知道 mindful 这个词可拆成 mind (注意力) 和形容词后缀-ful,由此便不难看出选项 C 与 mindful 的意思最为相近。这样,就算上下文没有完全看懂,也能选中正确选项。

参考译文: 我们尽力确保 GFL 固体废品清运公司无论何时何地都能安全、负责地运作。对于任何让我们服务的客户或社区面临风险的行为,我们都不会容忍。对 GFL 公司而言,"安全"不仅仅是工作程序,它更是我们公司的核心价值。同时,GFL 公司还致力于改善环境,为我们居住和服务的社区带来更好的未来。我们相信,我们的服务对于改善环境起着不可或缺的作用,而且,我们总是注意为我们的客户提供最为经济有效的废品处理方法。

▶ 应试技巧

- 1. 解答语义转换题时,不能孤立看待单句,要注意依据文章主旨或段落主旨来理解句子含义,以及上下文语义的连贯。
 - 2. 如句子较长应首先分析句子结构,然后根据上下文的线索、主题的表达等来理解句意。
 - 3. 注意题干句子与文中句子的逻辑关系有助于理解特定的句子含义。



一、细节推理能力

推断题要求考生根据自己从文中获取的信息进行推理判断。它要求考生不但要掌

握文章所表达的字面含义,还要有一定的逻辑判断能力,从文章表面推出更深层的 含义。

这类题的答案一般不会直接出现在文章中,文字表面往往没有明显反映作者的全部意图,有些含义需要考生从字里行间去体会,靠自己的逻辑推理能力去判断,从上下文的连贯性及文中有关部分的暗示去分析隐含的意思。这类题常见的主要是对原因、结果、观点、立场等的判断。需要特别指出的是,做这类题时必须把握住问题的关键,紧紧围绕原文,千万不能脱离原文,凭主观臆断进行无依据的推论。

支持主题思想的细节部分常考。这些细节部分表现形式多样,可以使列举、例证、实验论证、人物论断等,要求考生对这部分内容进行判断推理。

具体常见提问方式如下:

What do we know about...?

What's the problem with... mentioned in Paragraph...?

According to the passage, which of the following ...is more likely to ...?

According to the passage ... is related primarily to _____.

实例演练

Over the past years, service requests have changed dramatically from basic waste disposal to comprehensive waste management or "green" programs. Our new "green" waste management program is now gaining respect and popularity in the community.

What can we learn about the company's new "green" waste management program?

- A. The quality of waste management has become worse.
- B. The program is becoming more and more popular.
- C. Waste management has remained unchanged.
- D. More workers are involved in the program.

解析: B 本题考查关于 GFL 公司新的"绿色"废品管理计划的正确理解。根据题于中的关键词 new "green" waste management program 可快速定位到最后一段。该段最后一句提到这个计划越来越受到重视和欢迎, B 项中的 becoming more and more popular 对应原文gaining...popularity。

参考译文:在过去的日子里,对我们服务的要求已发生了巨大的改变,基本的垃圾处理变成了综合性废品管理计划(或称为"绿色"计划)。我们新的"绿色"废品管理计划在社会上得到了越来越多的重视,也越来越受欢迎。

● 应试技巧

- 1. 若对某段内容进行判断、推理,则只看题干要求作答的那一段即可。
- 2. 有时需仔细阅读全文来确定推理的依据范围,再结合上下文的实例证据、问题或

事件来推断。

- 3. 选项措辞过于绝对化的,一般不是答案项。
- 4. 合乎常理、意义深刻或符合一般常识的选项一般是答案项, 而照抄原文或对原文 作字面解释的则不是答案项。

二、概括性推理能力

概括性推理题常会围绕全文出题。要求将篇首、篇尾、段落中主题句概括归纳并从中推断出全文主题。还会围绕文章若干段落出题。要求推论和判断出段落间的关系。

② 实例演练

The environment and transport departments were well aware of all this and proposed many of these measures internally, only for the Treasury to reject most of them, arguing they "would be politically very difficult, especially given the impacts on motorists".

It can be inferred from the passage that the Treasury . .

- A. was quite clear about the current situation of air pollution
- B. opposed almost every proposal about reducing air pollution
- C. believed the anti-pollution measures to be unaffordable
- D. made such objections partly due to the effects on drivers

解析: D 由题干中的 the Treasury 定位到第五段。由定位段可以推出,对于环保部和交通部提出的治理污染措施,财务部认为实施起来非常困难,从而否决了大部分措施,尤其是考虑到它们对汽车驾驶员的影响,故答案为 D。A "非常清楚空气污染的现状",定位句提到清楚这一问题的是环保部和交通部,并未提及财政部是否清楚现状,该项与原文表述不符,可以排除; B "反对几乎每一项减少空气污染的提议",定位句提到财政部否决了大部分的提议而不是几乎每一项,故排除; C "认为治污措施成本过高,难以实施",文中提到这些措施实施起来会非常困难是由于政治原因,而不是经济原因,故排除。

参考译文: 环保部和交通部对这一切非常清楚,还曾在内部提出了很多类似的措施,结果财政部却否决了其中的大部分,并辩称"从政治角度来看,这些措施实施起来会非常困难,尤其是考虑到对汽车驾驶员的影响"。

▶ 应试技巧

- 1. 通过紧扣文章的主题段和段落主题句来分析文章中心,来推断综合推理题。
- 2. 善于从各选项中筛选出最具概括性的论断。
- 3. 切忌选择过于抽象或具体的选项。

三、预测能力

预测题是推理题中的一种,要求考生对上文讨论了什么或下文将要讨论什么进行推理

或预测。

预测题的题型通常为:

What does the above/preceding/previous paragraph discuss?

What will the following/next paragraph be about?

▶ 实例演练

Both the buyer and the seller should be familiar with not only the money amount, but with the amount and quality of the product or service to be exchanged, the time and place at which the exchange will take place and the payment will be made, the form of money to be used, and the credit terms and discounts that supply to the transaction, guarantees on the product or service, delivery terms, return privileges and other factors that comprise the total "package" being exchanged for the asked-for amount in order that they may evaluate a given price.

The paragraph following the passage likely discusses _____

- A. the unusual ways to advertise products
- B. types of payment plans for service
- C. theories about how products affect different levels of society
- D. how certain elements of price "package" influence its market value

解析: D 题干的大意是:本文接下来的段落可能会讨论_____。由文中最后段最后一句中"...and other factors that comprise the total 'package' being exchanged for the askedfor amount in order that they may evaluate a given price."可推知,接下来可能会讨论的是"形成这个价格整体的特定因素是如何影响市场价格的"。

参考译文: 买家和卖家不仅应该熟悉金钱数额,还应该熟悉以下内容:交易产品或服务的数量及质量、交易及付款发生的时间和地点、用到的货币的币种、交易中使用的信用条款及折扣、商品或服务的售后保证、运送条款、退货权限,以及其他各项要素。形成这个价格整体的特定因素可能会影响市场价格。

● 应试技巧

- 1. 理清文章结构的主旨, 充分理解首尾两句。
- 2. 根据首尾两句的线索及暗示, 进行推测。
- 3. 解题时应当区分各选项之间的差异. 逐一匹配排除。

● 范文

Passage One

Cancer is among the top killer diseases in our society today and scientists have found out that stress (紧张) helps to bring it on. It is worthwhile to consider, therefore, what are the causes of stress in our life, and whether we can do anything about them.

Are we under-employed, or overburdened with too many responsibilities? Do we have a right balance of work and leisure (闲暇) in our lives? Are our relationships with family, friends or fellow workers all they should be?

All these things can be a cause of stress, and it is best to face them honestly, and bring our frustrations (沮丧, 挫败) into the open. People who have a good row and then forget it are doing their health better than shoes who bottle up their feelings.

If our self-examination has brought any causes of stress to light, let us consider what we can do about them. It is possible to change jobs. We can make more leisure and fill it more happily, if we will accept a different living standard. We can improve our personal relationships by a different attitude. It is we who allow other people to make ourselves unhappy. Often the little things that disturb us are not worth an hour's anger. The teaching in the *Bible* "Don't let the sun go down upon your wrath (愤怒)" is good advice from the health point of view as well as the religions (宗教,信仰).

- 1. Which of the following statement is TRUE?
 - A. Freedom from responsibilities helps relieve (减轻) stress.
 - B. Stress is the direct cause of cancer.
 - C. The cause of stress are worthy of serious study.
 - D. Cancer is the number one killer in our society today.
- 2. According to the text, which of the following people is more likely to suffer from stress?
 - A. People who have cancer.
 - B. People who like to quarrel with others.
 - C. People whose living standard is low.
 - D. People who have more responsibilities than they can handle.

| 3. | The word "row" in the third paragraph most | probably means |
|----|--|------------------------|
| | A. a noisy quarrel | B. a very loud noise |
| | C. a neat line of things side by side | D. a journey in a boat |

- 4. Which of the following is NOT mentioned as a way to reduce our stress?
 - A. Changing our jobs.
 - B. Changing our attitude about little things that make us unhappy.
 - C. Speaking out about our frustrations.
 - D. Reading the Bible.
- 5. "Let not the sun go down upon your wrath" probably means ______
 - A. don't let your anger last long
 - B. don't get angry while the sun is going down
 - C. don't get angry easily about little things
 - D. don't watch the sun set while you are angry

Passage Two

Doctors are starting to find more and more information that suggests a connection between exercise and brain development. According to her research, it seems that exercise can make blood vessels, including those in the brain, stronger and more fully developed. The effects of exercise on brain development can even be seen in babies. Babies who do activities that require a lot of movements and physical activities show greater brain development than babies who are less physically active. Margaret Barnes, a pediatrician (儿科医师), believes in the importance of exercise. She thinks that many learning disabilities that children have in elementary school or high school can be traced back to a lack of movement as babies.

In studies with seniors, research has shown that exercise helps older people as well. The exercise does not have to be very difficult. The main goal is just to increase the heart rate. And especially when learning new movements, such as yoga or tai chi, it appears that new memory paths open up in the brain. This can improve people's short-term memory.

| _ | W/L | | | | |
|----|---|--|--|--|--|
| 6. | What is the main idea of this passage? | | | | |
| | A. How to take exercise. | B. How exercise helps the brain. | | | |
| | C. How to enjoy music. | D. How the brain can change. | | | |
| 7. | According to the passage, how does exercise aff | ect the brain? | | | |
| | A. It helps people think more clearly. | B. It improves long-term memory. | | | |
| | C. It makes babies more intelligent. | D. It strengthens blood vessels. | | | |
| 8. | According to Margaret Barnes, many learning | problems that children have in school may be | | | |
| | caused by | | | | |
| | A. low intelligence | B. a lack of exercise when very young | | | |
| | C. social problems | D. difficult relationships with teachers | | | |
| 9. | Why are yoga and tai chi recommended to senio | rs? | | | |
| | A. They are new movements. | B. They are good for memory. | | | |
| | C. They can slow down their heart rate. | D. They are good for joints. | | | |
| 10 | 10. What type of patients does a pediatrician probably treat? | | | | |
| | A. Patients with mental problems. | B. Patients with physical problems. | | | |
| | C. Children. | D. Old people. | | | |
| - | 交安解析. | | | | |

Passage One

1. C 细节题。题干的大意是:下列哪一项叙述是正确的?由第一段第二句话"It is worthwhile to consider, therefore, what are the causes of stress in our life, and whether we can do anything about them."可知, C 为正确答案。



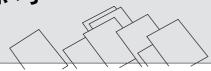
- 2. **D** 推理题。题干的大意是:根据文章,下列哪一种人更容易遭受压力的痛苦?由第二段第一句话 "Are we under-employed, or overburdened with too many responsibilities?"和第三段第一句话 "All these things can be a cause of stress."可推知,那些所负责任超出自己可承受范围的人们压力最大、最痛苦。故 D 为正确答案。
- 3. A 词汇题。题干的大意是:从文中判断,第三段中的单词 "row"最接近的意思是 _____。此词出现在"People who have a good row and then forget it are doing their health more good than those who bottle up their feelings."一句中。bottle up their feelings 意为"压抑他们的感情",由并列对比法可以猜出"row"在此应为"使情感发泄出来",故选项中"noisy quarrel"最贴切。
- 4. **D** 细节题。题干的大意是:作为减轻我们压力的方式,下列哪一项没有提到?由文章最后一段可知 A、B 两项均已提到,而 C 项在第三段中已经提到。只有 D 项没有提到,因此选 D。
- 5. A 推理题。题干的大意是: "Let not the sun go down upon your wrath" 的意思可能是 ______。句中 "wrath" 意为 "怒火"。由前一句 "Often the little things that disturb us are not worth an hour's anger." 可推知, A 项较为合适。本句意为 "不可含怒到日落。"

Passage Two

- 6. **B** 推理题。题干的大意是:本篇文章的主旨是什么?文章第一段开头便指出运动与大脑发育有联系,接下来又通过一些研究分别说明了运动对幼儿和老人大脑发育的促进作用。故本题的正确答案为B。
- 7. **D** 细节题。题干的大意是:根据文章内容,运动是如何影响大脑的?根据文章第一段第二句话 "According to some researches, it seems that exercise can make blood vessels... stronger and more fully developed."可知通过运动可以强化血管,最终达到促进大脑发育的效果,故正确答案为 D。
- 8. **B** 细节题。题干的大意是:根据 Margaret Barnes 所说,学校里孩子们的许多学习问题是由______引起的。根据文章第一段最后一句"She thinks that many learning disabilities that children have... can be traced back to a lack of movement as babies."可知,孩子们的学习问题是源于婴儿期的运动缺乏。故选 B。
- 9. **B** 推理题。题干的大意是:瑜伽和太极为什么被推荐给年长者?根据文章最后两句话可知,这些运动有助于提高人们的短时记忆,故本题选 B (它们对记忆力有益)。
- 10. C 词汇理解题。题干的大意是: pediatrician 最可能治疗的是哪类病人? 本题主要考查 考生对 "pediatrician (儿科医生)"一词的理解。由文章第一段最后一句中她对儿童学 习能力缺陷的观点可推断,她的研究或诊断对象是儿童。故选 C。

第四章

阅读理解专项练习



Test 1

Reading Comprehension (1.5 points each, 30 points)

Section A

Directions: In this part there are three passages followed by questions, each with four suggested answers marked A, B, C and D. Choose the one that you think is the best answer. Mark your answer on the **Answer Sheet**.

Passage One

Not all memories are sweet. Some people spend all their lives trying to forget bad experiences. Violence and traffic accidents can leave people with terrible physical and emotional scars. Often they relive these experiences in nightmares.

Now American researchers think they are close to developing a pill, which will help people forget bad memories. The pill is designed to be taken immediately after a frightening experience. They hope it might reduce, or possibly erase, the effect of painful memories.

In November, experts tested a drug on people in the US and France. The drug stops the body releasing chemicals that fix memories in the brain. So far the research has suggested that only the emotional effects of memories may be reduced, not that the memories are erased.

The research has caused a great deal of argument. Some think it is a bad idea, while others support it.

Supporters say it could lead to pills that prevent or treat soldiers' troubling memories after war. They say that there are many people who suffer from terrible memories.

"Some memories can ruin people's lives. They come back to you when you don't want to have them in a daydream or nightmare. They usually come with very painful emotions," said Roger Pitman, a professor of psychiatry at Harvard Medical School. "This could relieve a lot of that suffering."

But those who are against the research say that is very dangerous to changing memories because memories give us our identity (特质). They also help us all avoid the mistakes of the past.

"All of us can think of bad events in our lives that were horrible at the time but make us who we

- 1. The word "scars" in Paragraph One is close in meaning to ...
 - A. good stories
- B. pains
- C. experiences
- D. memories

- 2. The drug tested on people can _____.
 - A. cause the brain to fix memories
 - B. stop people remembering bad experiences
 - C. prevent body producing certain chemicals
 - D. erase the emotional effects of memories
- 3. We can infer from the passage that .
 - A. people doubt the effects of the pills
 - B. the pill will stop people's bad experiences
 - C. taking the pill will do harm to people's health
 - D. the pill has probably been produced in America
- 4. Which of the following does Rebecca Dresser agree with?
 - A. Some memories can ruin people's lives.
 - B. People want to get rid of bad memories.
 - C. Experiencing bad events makes us different from others.
 - D. The pill will reduce people's sufferings from bad memories.

Passage Two

Blind people can "see" things using other parts of their bodies apart from their eyes. This fact may help us to understand our feelings about color. If they can sense color differences, then perhaps we, too, are affected by color without knowing it. Salesmen have discovered by experience over a long period of time that sugar sells badly in green wrappings, that blue foods are considered not agreeable to the taste, and that cosmetics (化妆品) should never be packed in brown. These discoveries have grown into a whole subject of color psychology.

Some of our preferences are clearly psychological. Dark blue is the color of the night sky and therefore connected with calm, while yellow is a day color connected with energy and encouragement. Experiments have shown that colors, partly because they are connected with psychology, also have a direct effect on people's mind. People in bright red surroundings show an increase in breathing speed, heartbeat and blood pressure. Red is exciting. Pure blue has exactly the opposite effect; it is a calming color. Being exciting, red was chosen as the signal for danger, but a closer study shows that a bright yellow can produce a more basic state of alarm, so fire engines in some advanced areas are now rushing around in bright yellow colors that stop buses, trucks and cars.

- 5. The passage tells us that salesmen have
 - A. found out that colors affect sales

| | B. discovered the relationship between | en color and psychology |
|----|--|--------------------------------------|
| | C. tried colors on blind people | |
| | D. developed a special subject of co | or psychology |
| 6. | If people are exposed to pure blue, | |
| | A. their body pressure rises | B. they won't easily feel nervous |
| | C. they want to taste blue foods | D. they will feel like buying things |
| 7. | The most effective color in the passaş | ge for warning people is |
| | A. red B. bright yellow | v C. dark blue D. green |
| 8. | Which of the following do you think | is the best title of the passage? |
| | A. Color and Feelings. | B. Colors and Sales. |
| | C. The Blind and Colors. | D. Preferences for Colors. |
| | _ | |
| | | Passage Three |

Passage Tillee

In the United States and several other countries, 2.5 million children play baseball in an organization called Little League. They play on teams in their hometowns. Their parents and other adults in the community coach or instruct them and serve as umpires to make sure that everyone follows the rules. Local businesses give money for the ball fields and the uniforms. Local teams compete against each other and the winners get to play teams that are more distant. Eventually, the top teams go to the Little League World Series.

One hundred years after Abner Doubleday invented baseball in Cooperstown, New York, in 1839, Little League got started in Pennsylvania. Three men started the game for neighborhood boys with a smaller playing field and fewer innings than adult baseball. Little League became popular after World War II when the game spread across the United States. By 1955 it was played throughout North America and within five years it had spread to Europe. Children's baseball really caught on in Japan and Taiwan of China and teams from those areas won the World Series seven out of eight years. After this, the organization tried banning foreign teams from the World Series, but the ban came to an end after one year.

At first, Little League was only for boys aged nine to twelve. However, in 1974, the parents of girl baseball players brought a law suit. The courts ruled that Little League had to include both boys and girls. Later Little League added on softball and other games for teenagers up to age eighteen. Occasionally a Little Leaguer becomes a professional player. For example, Gary Carter went from Little League to play nineteen seasons in the Major Leagues, ten of them as an All-Star player. But, by and large, youngsters play baseball for fun and because their parents are proud of them.

| 9. | The mothers and fath | ners of Little League playe | ers | · | |
|----|-----------------------|-----------------------------|-----|-------------------|-------------|
| | A. help run the gam | es | В. | travel in coaches | |
| | C. give the teams m | oney | D. | play in the World | Series |
| 10 | . In what year was Li | ttle League established? | | | |
| | A. In 1839. | B. In 1939. | C. | In 1955. | D. In 1960. |

- 11. Why do most players take part in Little League?
 - A. To play in the Major League.
 - B. To have fun and please their parents.
 - C. They expect a profit from All-Star games.
 - D. They want to learn how to serve as umpires.
- 12. What is TRUE about players today?
 - A. Little League is only for neighborhood boys.
 - B. Girl players have to buy their suits.
 - C. Girls and boys can participate to age eighteen.
 - D. Children can only play until age twelve.

Section B Sentence Understanding and Matching

Directions: Match the Chinese sentences in the left column with the English in the right column and mark the corresponding letter on the **Answer Sheet**.

Part 1

| 13. 直到 20 世纪后期,中国运动员才以他们 在奥运会上的杰出表现让世界对他们刮 | A. It has never occurred to me that a person who has experienced ups and downs of life should believe such a |
|---|---|
| 目相看。 | ridiculous trick. |
| 14. 杰作不是为了迎合某种预期的东西, 而 是内心真情的表露。 | B. It was not until the late twentieth century that Chinese athletes began to surprise the world with their excellent performances at the Olympics. |
| 15. 我从未想到一个经历人生起伏的人竟相 信这荒唐的诡计。 | C. I was on the point of buying that piano when my wife reminded me that this amount of money was for my son's tuition. |
| 16. 我刚要买那架钢琴时,突然我太太提醒 我这笔钱是付我儿子学费的。 | D. A masterpiece is not something that can conform into an expectation but something that has to be an expression from the heart. |

Part 2

| 17. 因病离开舞台时,他有着一种情感,这种情感与其说是留恋,还不如说是遗憾。 | A. As a doctor, it is necessary for you to pay a regular visit to your patients, assuring them that your attention is still focused on them. |
|---|--|
| 18. 作为医生, 你定期看望病人, 让他们相 信你仍然关注着他们是必要的。 | B. I translate for my daughter, your daughter and every kid and for the coming generations. |
| 19. 别问这样的问题。你知道这没有固定的 答案。每个人在内心都会有个答案。 | C. Being obliged to leave the stage due to his illness, he has an emotion, which is more of regret than attachment. |
| 20. 我是为我的女儿,你的女儿以及未来所有的女儿做这个翻译。 | D. Don't ask such a question. You know it has no certain answer. Everyone knows it is in his heart. |

Test 2

Reading Comprehension (1.5 points each, 30 points)

Section A

Directions: In this part there are three passages followed by questions, each with four suggested answers marked A, B, C and D. Choose the one that you think is the best answer. Mark your answer on the **Answer Sheet**.

Passage One

It is physically impossible for a well-educated, intellectual (理性的), or brave man to make money the chief of his thoughts; as physically impossible as it is for him to make his dinner the principal object of them. All healthy people like their dinner, but their dinner is not the main object of their lives. So all healthy-minded people like making money but the main object of their lives is not money; it is something better than money.

A good soldier, for instance, mainly wishes to do his fighting well. He is glad for his pay very properly so, and justly grumbles (抱怨) when you keep him ten months without it; still his main motion of his life is to win battles, not to be paid for winning them.

So of doctors, they like fees no doubt—ought to like them; yet if they are brave and well-educated, the entire object of their lives is not fees. They, on the whole, desire to cure the sick, and they are good doctors, and the choices were fairly put to them would rather cure their patients and lose their fees than kill him and get it. And so with all other brave and rightly trained men, their work is first, their fee second, very important always, but still second.

| 1. | The mai | n idea of the text is that |
|----|----------|--|
| | A. peop | le can't live without money |
| | B. mone | ey is as important as work |
| | C. the r | main object of the people's lives should not be money but work |
| | D. the | entire object of the people's lives is making money |
| 2. | The pass | sage implies that healthy-minded people best enjoy |
| | A. the l | nappiness of accomplishing their work |
| | B. the s | satisfaction of making money |
| | C. the p | pleasure of having their dinner |
| | D. the f | Fun of fighting battles |
| | | |

- 3. According to the author, a good soldier _____.
 - A. dislikes his pay

 B. ignores his pay
 - C. ought to enjoy his pay

 D. doesn't complain when kept without pay for months

| 4. | The author believes that a good doct | or | |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| | A. makes money the entire object o | f his life B. | places curing his patient above all |
| | C. doesn't like making money | D. | enjoys his work only |
| Passage Two | | | |

When we talk about intelligence (智力), we do not mean the ability to get good scores on certain kinds of tests or even the ability to do well in school. By intelligence we mean a way of living and behaving (表现), especially in a new or upsetting situation. If we want to test intelligence, we need to find out how a person acts instead of how much he knows what to do.

For example, when in a new situation, an intelligent person thinks about the situation, not about himself or what might happen to him. He tries to find out all he can, and then he acts immediately and tries to do something about it. He probably isn't sure how it will all work out, but at least he tries. And, if he cannot make things work out right, he doesn't feel ashamed (羞愧) that he failed. He just tries to learn from his mistakes. An intelligent person, even if he is very young, has a special outlook (看法) on life, a special feeling about life, and how he fits into it.

If you look at children, you'll see great difference between what we call "bright" children and "not-bright" children. They are actually two different kinds of people, not just the same kind with different amount of intelligence. For example, the bright child really wants to find out about life he tries to get in touch with everything around him. But, the unintelligent child keeps more to himself and his own dream-world; he seems to have a wall between him and life in general.

| 5. | In a new situation, an intelligent person | · | | |
|--|--|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| | A. knows more about what might happen to him | | | |
| | B. is sure of the result he will get | | | |
| | C. cares more about himself | | | |
| | D. keeps his mind on what to do about the | situation | | |
| 6. | If an intelligent person failed, he would | | | |
| | A. try not to feel ashamed | B. learn from his mistakes | | |
| | C. try to find all he could | D. make sure what result he would get | | |
| 7. | Bright children and non-bright children | · | | |
| | A. are two different types of children | | | |
| | B. are different mainly in their degree of c | leverness | | |
| | C. have difference only in their way of thir | king | | |
| | D. have different knowledge about the world | ${ m d}$ | | |
| 8. | The author of this passage will probably con | ntinue to talk about | | |
| | A. how to determine what intelligence is | | | |
| B. how education should be found | | | | |
| | C. how to solve practical problems | | | |
| D how an unintelligent person should be taught | | | | |

Passage Three

Venice is such a strange city. It is built on an Italian lagoon (环礁湖, 咸水湖) in the Adriatic Sea. It has canals instead of roads, which means there are no cars or buses, no trams or trains or bicycles running past us. Best of all, you could walk or jump or play hide-and-seek on its cobbled streets or its countless bridges whenever you choose to.

Daily life in Venice skims over its waterways, especially the sweeping double curve of the Grand Canal and the 180 smaller water passages that run through the 118 islands that make up the city.

For generations, tiny boatyards have built these lopsided (向一侧倾斜的) boats, with one side curving further outwards than the other. Why? To balance the weight of the oarsman at the end of the boat.

This Italian city is known for its festivals, especially the popular ten-day Carnival in April. Children, teenagers and adults dress in special costumes, unusual stockings and shoes, then do masks before they take part in this celebration. It's difficult to make out who is behind each mask, but it's easy to make friends during this constant party in the streets. What fun!

On other occasions, Venetians celebrate with a regatta or boat race. The city loves the Vogalonga, on the first Sunday of May, best of all. That's when anyone who can row with oars is welcome to join the other boats on the great Grand Canal, especially in fancy dress. Imagine the sight!

Venice is an unusual city, but it is facing an unusual threat. It's sinking. Since it is built on a lagoon, the weight of the city on the silt beneath it threatens its life. "Venice today is sinking three times as fast as before, at 300mm per century," explains an environmentalist.

We feel sad about the thought that beautiful Venice, with its splendid churches, its collections of art and its happy spirit, may be buried under the sea someday. May the Lion of St. Mark, the symbol of Venice, never face that day.

9. The boats in Venice are designed with one side curving further outwards than the other because

- A. the Venetians wanted to make them special
- B. it will be easier to keep the balance
- C. it is designed for the oarsman who is over-weighted on the boat
- D. there are 180 smaller water passages that run through the 118 islands
- 10. What do we know about festivals in Venice?
 - A. The festivals are based on the strange Italian lagoon.
 - B. The residents will make masks during the Carnival.
 - C. Festivals are held for people to make friends.
 - D. People can have a boat race during the Vogalonga in April.

- 11. According to this text, the sinking of Venice is because of ______.
 - A. the pollution in the city
- B. collapse of the silt beneath the city
- C. the industry of this city
- D. so many canals there
- 12. Where do you think this text comes from?
 - A. A magazine for travelers.
- B. An advertisement from a travel agency.
- C. A scientific magazine.
- D. A magazine for Venice merchants.

Section B Sentence Understanding and Matching

Directions: Match the Chinese sentences in the left column with the English in the right column and mark the corresponding letter on the **Answer Sheet.**

Part 1

13. 在别人眼里无论他们看起来是多么的不 A. Lose money as he did, he got a lot of experience, which 和谐, 只要他们彼此相爱, 就能享受 contributed to his success in life. 生活。 14. 除非这问题是从历史的观点来分析和解 B. A good teacher is the one from whom the more we need 释, 否则你理解起来会有困难。 academically, the more she can supply. C. You will have difficulty in understanding the problem 15. 一个好的老师是这样一个人, 我们对她 unless it is explained and analyzed from the historical 越有学业方面的需求,她能提供的越多。 perspective. 16. 虽然他失去了钱, 但他得到了许多经验, D. However inharmonious they look in other people's eye, 这促成了他人生的成功。 they can enjoy life so long as they love each other.

Part 2

17. 正是这场沙尘暴的后果才使人们充分认 A. To face whatever you might prefer to hide rather than 识到植树的重要性。 acknowledge requires courage. 18. 要面对你宁可隐藏也不承认的任何事需 B. It was the result of the dust storm that made people fully 要勇气。 realize the importance of planting trees. 19. 除了和以前不一样的一点, 我们没有方 C. After going through the past year, I become more 便、简单的方程式取消,这在以前发生 confident in overcoming difficulties. 过,因为它们存在。 D. Except that unlike before, we don't have the convenient 20. 经历了过去的一年, 我在克服困难时变 and simple cancellation of the equations. That happened 得更加自信。 before, because they were there.

Test 3

Reading Comprehension (1.5 points each, 30 points)

Section A

Directions: In this part there are three passages followed by questions, each with four suggested answers marked A, B, C and D. Choose the one that you think is the best answer. Mark your answer on the **Answer Sheet.**

Passage One

By adopting a few simple techniques, parents who read to their children can greatly increase their children's language development. It is surprising but true. How parents talk to their children makes a big difference in the children's language development. If a parent encourages the child to actively respond to what the parent is reading, the child's language skills increase.

A study was done with 30 three-year-old children and their parents. Half of the children participated in the experimental study; the other half acted as the control group. In the experimental group, the parents were given a two-hour training session in which they were taught to ask open-ended questions rather than yes-or-no questions. For example, the parent should ask, "What is the doggie doing?" rather than "Is the doggie running away?" The parents in the experimental group were also instructed in how to help children find answers, how to suggest alternative possibilities and how to praise correct answers.

At the beginning of the study, the children did not differ in measures of language development, but at the end of one month, the children in the experimental group showed 5.5 months ahead of the control group on a test of verbal expression and vocabulary. Nine months later, the children in the experimental group still showed an advance of 6 months over the children in the control group.

- 1. Which of the following can be inferred from the passage?
 - A. Children who talk a lot are more intelligent.
 - B. Parents who listen to their children can teach them more.
 - C. Active children should read more and be given more attention.
 - D. Verbal ability can easily be developed with proper methods.
- 2. What does "it" in Line 2 can most probably be replaced by?
 - A. Parents increasing children's language development.
 - B. Reading techniques being simple.
 - C. Parents reading to children.
 - D. Children's intelligence development.
- 3. According to the author, which of the following questions is the best type to ask children about?
 - A. Do you see the elephant?
- B. Is the elephant in the cage?



- C. What animals do you like?
- D. Shall we go to the zoo?
- 4. The difference between the control group and the experimental group was $_$
 - A. the training that parents received
- B. the age of the children
- C. the books that were read
- D. the number of the children

Passage Two

A year ago, August, Dave Fuss lost his job driving a truck for a small company in west Michigan. His wife, Gerrie, was still working in the local school cafeteria, but it was hard for Dave to find work, and the price of everything was rising. The Fusses were at risk of joining the millions of Americans who have lost their homes in recent years. Then Dave and Gerrie received a timely gift—\$7,000, a legacy (遗产) from their neighbors Ish and Arlene Hatch, who died in an accident. "It really made a difference when we were meeting difficulty," says Dave.

But the Fusses weren't the only folks in Alto and the neighboring town of Lowell to receive unexpected legacy from the Hatches. Dozens of other families were touched by what the Hatches had done. In some cases, it was a few thousand dollars; in others, it was more than \$100,000. It surprised nearly everyone that the Hatches had so much money, more than \$3 million—they were an elderly couple who lived in an old house on what was left of the family farm.

Children of the Great Depression, Ish and Arlene were known for their habit of saving. They preferred comparison shopping and would go from store to store, checking prices before making a new purchase.

Through the years, the Hatches paid for local children to attend summer camps when their parents couldn't afford it. "Ish and Arlene never asked if you needed anything," says their friend Sandy Van Weelden. "They could see things they could do to make you happier, and they would do them."

Even more extraordinary was that the Hatches gave away their farmland. It was the Hatches' wish that their legacy—a legacy of kindness as much as one of dollars and cents—should enrich the whole community and last for generations to come.

Neighbors helping neighbors—that was Ish and Arlene Hatch's story.

- 5. According to the text, the Fusses _____.
 - A. were employed by a truck company B. led a difficult life
 - C. worked in a school cafeteria
- D. lost their home
- 6. What can we learn about the Hatches?
 - A. They had their children during the Great Depression.
 - B. They left the old house to live on their family farm.
 - C. They gave away their possessions (财产) to their neighbors.
 - D. They helped their neighbors to find jobs.
- 7. Why would the Hatches go from store to store?

- A. They decided to open a store.
- B. They wanted to save money.
- C. They couldn't afford expensive things.
- D. They wanted to buy gifts for local kids.
- 8. What Sandy Van Weelden said mainly tells us that the Hatches were
 - A. understanding
- B. kind
- C. childlike
- D. wealthy

Passage Three

MySpace, the social networking website, is different from other websites which only provide stories about other people. MySpace is a place that allows you to broadcast your own stories and personal information to as many people as you like. Started two years ago, it is a big source of information for and about American kids.

Teenagers and their parents feel very differently about it. Teens are rushing to join the site, not sharing their parents' worries. It signals yet another generation gap in the digital era (数字时代).

For teenagers, it is reliable network to keep in touch with their friends. They will often list their surnames, birthdays, after-school jobs, school clubs, hobbies and other personal information.

"MySpace is an easy way to reach just about everyone. I don't have all the phone numbers of all my acquaintances (熟人). But if I want to get in touch with one of them, I could just leave them a message on MySpace," said Abby Van Wassen. She is a sixteen-year-old student at Woodland Hills High of Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania.

Parents on the other hand are seriously concerned about the security problems of MySpace. "Every time we hold a parents meeting, the first question is always about MySpace," said Kent Gates, who travels the country doing Internet safety seminars (研讨会). The National Center for Missing and Exploited Children has received at least 288 MySpace related complaints, according to Mary Beth Buchanan, a lawyer in Pittsburgh.

"Your profile on MySpace shows all your personal information to anyone on the Web. And MySpace even lists this information by birthplace and age. It's like a free checklist (清单) for troublemakers and it endangers children," Buchanan said.

- 9. From the passage we can learn that MySpace _____.
 - A. brings about the generation gap
 - B. is very careful about people's privacy
 - C. encourages you to list your personal information
 - D. lists the telephone numbers of your friends
- 10. Why are some parents against MySpace?
 - A. Because MySpace has a bad influence on their children.
 - B. Because they don't want to pay so much money for MySpace.

C. Because it takes up too much of their children's spare time.

D. Because troublemakers can easily approach their children through the site.

11. The writer's attitude towards MySpace is _____.

A. negative B. positive C. optimistic D. objective

12. Which of the following can be the best title of the passage?

A. Internet Safety.

B. My Space.

Section B Sentence Understanding and Matching

D. The Digital Era.

Directions: Match the Chinese sentences in the left column with the English in the right column and mark the corresponding letter on the **Answer Sheet.**

Part 1

C. Generation Gap.

| 13. 即使只有两个人在抗议,能够这么做也 是因为它是被决定好了的。 | A. There are some of us who keep up our morale by being always busy. |
|--|---|
| 14. 在谈论你的成功时你应当保持矜持,否则的话会给别人留下你在夸口或者你在证明什么的印象。 | B. Even if there were only two people protesting, it happens because it has been decided. |
| 15. 我们当中有些人总是保持自己忙忙碌碌的斗志。 | C. You should be conservative in descriptions of your success, lest you leave the impression that you are bragging, or have something to prove. |
| 16. 我们一直在寻求持续的改进,为我们的客人提供最好的产品与服务。 | D. We are always on our toes to seek for constant improvements, providing the best products and services to our guests. |

Part 2

| 17. 虽然我不完全赞同这种人生哲学,但是 今天我非常敬佩的人却是那些天天纠正 自己的错误,并抓住第二次机会,努力 使自己振作起来的人。 | A. The dispute at the moment revolved about the question of whom to send. |
|---|---|
| 18. 当时的争论是围绕着派谁去好这一问题而进行的。 | B. Although I don't agree with this philosophy of life, but today I'm very admire people that have correct their mistakes every day, and hold a second chance, trying to cheer myself up. |
| 19. 当人们知道如何解决他们的问题时,他 们诉诸暴力的可能性就小一些。 | C. The government decided the only solution was to bail the state enterprise out. |
| 20. 政府认为唯一的解决办法是帮助该国企 摆脱困境。 | D. When people know how to solve their problems, they are less likely to resort to violence. |

Test 4

Reading Comprehension (1.5 points each, 30 points)

Section A

Directions: In this part there are three passages followed by questions, each with four suggested answers marked A, B, C and D. Choose the one that you think is the best answer. Mark your answer on the **Answer Sheet.**

Passage One

In only two decades Asian American have become the fastest-growing US minority. As their children began moving up through the nation's schools, it became clear that a new class of academic achievers was emerging. Their achievements are reflected in the nation's best universities, where mathematics, science and engineering departments have taken on a decidedly Asian character. This special liking for mathematics and science is partly explained by the fact that Asian-American students who began their education abroad arrived in the US with a solid grounding (基础) in mathematics but little or no knowledge of English. They are also influenced by the promise of a good job after college. Asians feel there will be less unfair treatment in areas like mathematics and science because they will be judged more immediate in something like engineering than with an arts degree.

Most Asian-American students owe their success to the influence of parents who are determined that their children take full advantage of what the American educational system has to offer. An effective measure of parental attention is homework. Asian parents spend more time with their children than American parents do, and it helps. Many researchers also believe there is something in Asian culture that breeds success, such as ideals that stress family values and emphasize education.

Both explanations for academic success worry Asian-Americans because of fears that they feed a typical racial image. Many can remember when Chinese, Japanese and Filipino immigrants were the victims of isolation (隔离, 与世隔绝). Indeed, it was not until 1952 that laws were laid down giving all Asian immigrants the right to citizenship.

- 1. While making tremendous achievements at college, Asian-American students ______
 - A. feel they are mistreated because of limited knowledge of English
 - B. are afraid that their academic successes bear a strong Asian character
 - C. still worry about unfair treatment in society
 - D. generally feel it a shame to have to depend on their parents
- 2. What are the major factors that determine the success of Asian Americans?
 - A. A solid foundation in basic mathematics and Asian culture.
 - B. Hard work and intelligence.
 - C. Hard help and a limited knowledge of English.
 - D. Asian culture and the American educational system.

- 3. Few Asian-American students major in human sciences mainly because _____.
 - A. their English is not good enough
 - B. they are afraid they might meet with unfair judgment in these areas
 - C. there is a wide difference between Asian and Western cultures
 - D. they know little about American culture and society
- 4. Why do the two "explanations" (Para. 3) worry Asian Americans?
 - A. They are afraid that they would again be isolated from American society in general.
 - B. People would think that Asian students rely on their parents for success.
 - C. Asian-Americans would be a threat to other minorities.
 - D. American academic achievements have taken on too strong at Asian character.

Passage Two

Adam Smith was the first person to see the importance of the division of the labor. He gave us an example of the process by which pins were made in England.

One man draws out the wire, another strengthens it, a third cuts it, a fourth points it, and a fifth gives it a head. Just to make the head requires two or three different operations. The work of making pins is divided into about eighteen different operations, which in some factories are all performed by different people, though in others the same man will sometimes perform two or three of them."

Ten men, Smith said, in this way, turned out twelve pounds of pins a day or about 4,800 pins a worker. But if all of them had worked separately and independently without division of labor, they certainly could not have made twenty pins in a day and not even one.

There can be no doubt that division of labor is an efficient way of organizing work. Fewer people can make more pins. Adam Smith saw this, but he also took it for granted that division of labor is itself responsible for economic growth and development and it accounts for the difference between expanding economies and those that stand still. But division of labor adds nothing new, it only enables people to produce more of what they already have.

- 5. Adam Smith saw that the division of labor _____.
 - A. enabled each worker to design pins more quickly
 - B. increased the possible output per worker
 - C. increased the number of people employed in factories
 - D. improved the quality of pins produced
- 6. Adam Smith mentioned the number 4, 800 in order to _____.
 - A. show the advantages of the old labor system
 - B. stress how powerful the individual worker was
 - C. show the advantages of the division of labor
 - D. stress the importance of increased production
- 7. According to the writer, Adam Smith's mistake was in believing that the division of labor
 - A. was an efficient way of organizing work

- B. was an important development in methods of production
- C. finally led to economic development
- D. increased the production of existing goods
- 8. According to the writer, which one of the following is NOT true?
 - A. Division of labor can enable fewer people to make more pins.
 - B. Division of labor helps people to produce more of what they already have.
 - C. Division of labor is by no means responsible for economic growth.
 - D. Division of labor is an efficient way of organizing work.

Passage Three

Many mammals live through the winter by hibernating (冬眠). There is a nice problem of definition here. Most experts now agree that a mammal can be said to hibernate only if body temperature drops greatly and its whole metabolism (新陈代谢) —including respiration and heart rate—is much reduced. This is the case with animals like the woodchucks, hamsters, and hedgehogs which hibernate in their burrows, and bats, which gather in caves. Bears, however, are not classed as hibernators. They pass most of the winter sleeping, but their body temperature drops only a few degrees, and they can become active without going through a slow process of warming up. Bears, relying on fat reserves to keep them going, even produce their young during this period.

Mammals are warm-blooded, that is, they have a means of keeping the temperature of their bodies quite constant despite the normal temperature changes of the outside world. Cold-blooded animals, fish, reptiles, insects, amphibians, also have a certain amount of control over their body temperature. They can warm up, if they are too cold, by sunning themselves, or cool off by getting into the shade. But it is hard for cold-blooded animals to keep warm in the winter. For any animal to be active, its body temperature must be above freezing. This is because the chemistry of life depends on water in a liquid state. If the body actually freezes, the whole system is disrupted and the animal dies. So cold-blooded animals in the north must either find some place to spend the winter where temperatures do not reach the freezing points, or develop a special resting stage in which the water content of the protoplasm (原生质) is much reduced. This will make its freezing point much lower than usual. Thus animals about to hibernate often dig down into the soil.

| 9. | Most experts agree that true hibernation involves | | |
|-----|---|--|--|
| | A. sleeping through the winter | B. reduced heart rate and temperature | |
| | C. decrease in water content of the body | D. spending the winter in burrows or caves | |
| 10. | Cold-blooded animals are so called because | e they | |
| | A. cannot keep their body temperature con | nstant | |
| | B. cannot warm up their body temperature | e in the winter | |
| | C. can cool themselves off by getting into | a shade | |
| | D. are not active in the winter | | |
| 11. | It is implied that the body temperature of | a cold-blooded animal | |
| | | | |

- A. is lower than that of a warm-blooded animal
- B. is always very cold
- C. stays at a fairly constant level
- D. changes in response to air temperature
- 12. The reduction of the water content of an animal's body protoplasm will enable the animal .
 - A. to reduce its body temperature
 - B. to survive the freezing temperature in the winter
 - C. to dig down deep into the soil
 - D. to stay completely motionless

Section B Sentence Understanding and Matching

Directions: Match the Chinese sentences in the left column with the English in the right column and mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet.

Part 1

- 13. 他们坚持认为,医生无权给病人开足以 A. As I've written before, th 控制痛苦的药物,如果那样做会加速死 亡的话。

 A. As I've written before, th an insurance company with all the major components
- 14. 是你自己做出的每一个选择,决定了你自己的感受,造就了你现在的自己。
- 15. 正如我以前说过的那样,联邦政府基本 上是一个拥有军队的保险公司,所以我

只是列出联邦政府开支的所有主要部分。

16. 生活乏味的人总在想,生活之所以枯燥、 乏味完全是因为运气不佳。

- A. As I've written before, the federal government is basically an insurance company with an army, so I've just described all the major components of federal spending.
- B. They contend that a doctor has no right to give a patient sufficient medication to control his pain if that may hasten death.
- C. People with dull lives often think that their lives are dull by chance.
- D. Your choices, each and every one, determine how well you feel and how well you are.

Part 2

- 17. 中国奉行独立自主的和平外交政策,愿意 为维护世界和平、促进共同发展做出努力。
- A. Thanks to this collaboration, he not only managed to deal with his alcohol problem, but also obtained supportive permanent housing for himself.
- 18. 总体而言, 你所看到的是一个趋势, 距 离自己的原因。
- B. Lights were sparkling in the distance; a town or a restaurant.
- 19. 在远处有灯火在闪耀着: 一座小镇或一家饭店。
- C. China pursues an independent foreign policy of peace and is committed to world peace and common development.
- 20. 由于这次的合作,他不仅成功的戒除了酒精成瘾,而且为他自己获得了支持性住房。
- D. Overall, what you see is a tendency to distance the causes from themselves.

Test 5

Reading Comprehension (1.5 points each, 30 points)

Section A

Directions: In this part there are three passages followed by questions, each with four suggested answers marked A, B, C and D. Choose the one that you think is the best answer. Mark your answer on the **Answer Sheet.**

Passage One

Robert Owen was born in Wales in 1771. At the age of ten he went to work. His employer had a large private library so Owen was able to educate himself. He read a lot in his spare time and at nineteen he was given the job of superintendent $(\frac{\parallel k}{\ln} \pm 1)$ at a Manchester cotton mill. He was so successful there that he persuaded his employer to buy the New Lanark mill in Scotland.

When he arrived at New Lanark it was a dirty little town with a population of 2,000 people. Nobody paid any attention to the workers' houses or their children's education. The conditions in the factories were very bad. There was a lot of crime and the men spent most of their wages on alcoholic drinks.

Owen improved the houses. He encouraged people to be clean and save money. He opened a shop and sold the workers cheap, well-made goods to help them. He limited the sale of alcoholic drinks. Above all, he fixed his mind on the children's education. In 1816 he opened the first free primary school in Britain.

People came from all over the country to visit Owen's factory. They saw that the workers were healthier and more efficient than in other towns. Their children were better fed and better educated. Owen tried the same experiment in the United States. He bought some land there in 1825, but the community was too far away. He could not keep it under control and lost most of his money.

Owen never stopped fighting for his idea. Above all he believed that people are not born good or bad.

He was a practical man and his ideas were practical. "If you give people good working conditions," he thought, "they will work well and, the most important thing of all, if you give them the chance to learn, they will be better people."

- 1. For Owen, his greatest achievement in New Lanark was
 - A. improving workers' houses
 - B. helping people to save money
 - C. preventing men from getting drunk
 - D. providing the children with a good education
- 2. From the passage we may infer that Owen was born .
 - A. into a rich family

B. into a noble family

C. into a poor family

D. into a middle class family

| 3. | Owen's experiment in the United State | es failed because | | |
|----|--|--------------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| | A. he lost all his money | | | |
| | B. he did not buy enough land | | | |
| | C. people who visited it were not imp | pressed | | |
| | D. it was too far away for him to orga | anize it properly | | |
| 4. | We may infer form the passage th | nat no children in | Britain could enjoy f | ree education |
| | until | | | |
| | A. 1771 B. 1816 | C. 1825 | D. 1860 | |
| | - | Passage Two | | |
| | - | | | |

between their lives and what they see on TV—if they ever get home in time. There are similarities, of course, but the cops (policemen) don't think much of them. The first difference is that a policeman's real life revolves round (以……为中心) the law. Most

Real policemen, both in Britain and the United States, hardly recognize any similarity

The first difference is that a policeman's real life revolves round (以……为中心) the law. Most of his training is in criminal law. He has to know exactly what actions are crimes and what evidence can be used to prove them in court. He has to know nearly as much law as a professional lawyer.

Most television crime drama is about finding the criminal; as soon as he's arrested, the story is over. In real life, finding criminals is seldom much of a problem. Except in very serious cases like murders and terrorist attacks where — failure to produce results reflects on the standing of the police — little effort is spent on searching. The police have an elaborate (细节, 详细说明) machinery which eventually shows up most wanted men. Having made an arrest, a detective really starts to work. He has to prove his case in court and to do that he often has to gather a lot of different evidence. Much of this has to be given by people who don't want to get involved in a court case. So, as well as being overworked, a detective has to be out at all hours of the day and night interviewing his witnesses and persuading them, usually against their own best interests, to help him.

A third big difference between the drama detective and the real detective is that the real detective lives in an unpleasant moral twilight (暮色). Detectives tend to have two opposing pressures: first, as members of a police force they always have to behave with absolute legality; secondly, as expensive public servants they have to get results. They can hardly ever do both. Most of the time, some of them have to break the rules in small ways.

| 5. | It is essential for a policeman to be trained in crimin | al law so that he can |
|----|---|--------------------------------------|
| | A. arrest criminals in the street | B. justify his arrests in court |
| | C. know as much law as a professional lawyer | D. justify himself on TV |
| 6. | Only when very serious cases like murders and terroris | t attacks occur, will the police |
| | A. show up their elaborate machinery | B. fail to produce results |
| | C. spend a lot of effort in finding the criminals | D. pay attention to their reputation |
| 7. | "Most wanted men" in the third paragraph refers to | <u>.</u> |
| | A. the most dangerous criminals | |

- B. most of the witnesses wanted
- C. the majority of those the police are searching for
- D. the men the police are most interested in arresting
- 8. The real detective lives in an unpleasant moral twilight because he
 - A. is an expensive public servant
 - B. often feels rather depressed
 - C. is obliged to break the law in order to preserve it
 - D. must always behave with absolute legality

Passage Three

In the same way that a child must be able to move his arms and legs before he can learn to walk, the child must physiologically be capable of producing and experiencing particular emotions before these emotions can be modified through learning. Psychologists have found that there are two basic processes by which learning takes place. One kind of learning is called "classical conditioning". This occurs when one event or stimulus is consistently paired with, or followed by, a reward or punishment. It is through classical conditioning that a child learns to associate his mother's face and voice with happiness and love, for he learns that this person provides food and comfort. Negative emotions are learned in a similar fashion.

The second kind of learning is called "operant conditioning". This occurs when an individual learns to do things that produce rewards in his environment and learns not to do things that produce punishments. For example, if a mother always attends to her baby when he cries and cuddles him until he is quiet, she may teach him that if he cries, he will get attention from mother. Thus, the baby will learn to increase his crying in order to have his mother more.

Every day, we grow and have new experiences. We constantly learn by reading, watching television, interacting with other people, and so forth. This learning affects our emotions. Why is it that we learn to like some people and dislike others? If a person is nice to us, cares about us, we learn to associate this person with positive feelings, such as joy, happiness, and friendliness. On the other hand, if a person is mean to us, does not care about us, and even deliberately does things to harm us, we learn to associate this person with negative feelings, such as unhappiness, discomfort, and anger.

- 9. The author's main purpose in writing the passage is to . .
 - A. teach children how to learn to produce and experience certain emotions
 - B. tell the general readers an account of two basic kinds of learning
 - C. give parents some advice on how to modify their children's emotions through learning
 - D. discuss with psychologists how positive and negative feelings are produced
- 10. If your jokes often find a ready echo in a person, you will learn through _____ that telling jokes to this person is fun, and you will try with greater efforts to be humorous in his presence.

| | A. classical conditioning | B. operant conditioning |
|----------|---|--|
| | C. neither of them | D. some other sorts of conditioning |
| 11. | | mes by a dog, he may learn to associate furry animals a fear of furry animals. This is a typical example of |
| | learning through | |
| | A. classical conditioning | B. operant conditioning |
| | C. both of them | D. neither of them |
| 12. | In the third paragraph, the author is _ | · |
| | A. discussing how we grow and have n | ew experiences every day |
| | B. talking about learning to modify em- | otions through operant conditioning |
| | C. concentrating on learning by reading, | watching television, interacting with people, and so on. |
| | D. using examples to further illustrate | learning through classical conditioning |
| | Section B Sentence | Understanding and Matching |
| Dir | ections: Match the Chinese sentences in t | he left column with the English in the right column and |
| mai | k the corresponding letter on the Answer | Sheet. |
| _ | | |
| (| Part 1 | |
| 13 | . 经济数据目前稳定了一点, 但很有可能 | A. I enjoyed hanging out by the water. I would sit there for |
| | 再次下降。 | hours and stare at my reflection. |
| | | B. "When all means are exhausted, changes are necessary; |
| 14 | . 我喜欢沿着湖边散步,在湖边一坐就是 几个小时,长久地凝视着自己的倒影。 | once changes are made, things will improve." Whether |
| | 几十万吨,入入地坡忧有自己的固形。 | for a country or the entire world, adaptation to keep pace with the times is necessary in order to maintain its vigor. |
| 15 | . "穷则变, 变则通。" 无论是一个国家, | |
| | 还是世界, 都需要与时俱进, 这样才能 | C. The economic data, having stabilized a little, could |
| | 保持活力。 | always turn down again. |
| 16 | . 不管什么原因你不必假装, 也不要去模 | D. You need not to pretend and imitate others for whatever |
| | 仿别人。 | reasons. |
| | | |
| D | Part 2 | |
| | | |
| 17 | . 既然在网上有这么多图片资源, 所以不 | A. The global governance system is built and shared by the |
| 17 | . 既然在网上有这么多图片资源,所以不要为使用糟糕的图片找借口。 | A. The global governance system is built and shared by the world, not monopolized by a single country. |

19. 在那之前,预期的商业价值只是一种估计。

20. 全球治理体系是由全球共建共享的,不

可能由哪一个国家独自掌握。

C. Until then, the expected business value is just an estimate.

D. And with the resources on the web, there should be no

excuse for using poor imagery.

Test 6

Reading Comprehension (1.5 points each, 30 points)

Section A

Directions: In this part there are three passages followed by questions, each with four suggested answers marked A, B, C and D. Choose the one that you think is the best answer. Mark your answer on the **Answer Sheet.**

Passage One

Under normal conditions the act of communication requires the presence of at least two persons: one who sends and one who receives the communication. In order to communicate thoughts and feelings, there must be a conventional system of signs or symbols which mean the same to the sender and the receiver.

The means of sending communications are too numerous and varied for systematic classification; therefore, the analysis must begin with the means of receiving communications.

Reception of communication is achieved by our senses. Sight, hearing and touch play the most important roles. Smell and taste play very limited roles.

Examples of visual communication are gesture and imitation. Although both frequently accompany speech, there are systems that rely solely on sight, such as those used by deaf and dumb persons. Another means of communicating visually is by signals of fire, smoke, flags or flashing lights. Feelings may be simply communicated by touch such as by handshaking, although a highly-developed system of handshaking disables blind, deaf, and dumb persons to communicate intelligently. Whistling to someone, clapping hands in a theater, and other forms of communication by sound rely upon the ear as a receiver. The most fully-developed form of auditory communication is, of course, the spoken language.

The means of communication mentioned so far have two features in common: they last only a short time, and the persons involved must be relatively close to each other. Therefore, all are restricted in time and space.

- 1. In the author's opinion, the reception of communication should be dealt with first because . .
 - A. communication depends on a conventional system of signs and symbols
 - B. only through our senses can we communicate
 - C. to classify the means of sending communications is a very difficult task
 - D. there are more means of receiving than those of sending communications
- 2. Gesture is specially mentioned as an example of .
 - A. communication by language
- B. communication by mimicry
- C. auditory communication
- D. visual communication



- 3. According to the passage alone, which of the following statements is NOT true?
 - A. The spoken language is the most highly developed form of auditory communication.
 - B. Normally, the act of communication requires the presence of at least three persons.
 - C. The means of communication mentioned in the passage last only for a moment.
 - D. Fire, smoke, flags and flashing lights can all be signals of visual communication.
- 4. What is the passage mainly about?
 - A. Spoken language is the best way of communication.
 - B. Reception of communication can be achieved by our sight, hearing and touch, and these means of communication share two features in common.
 - C. In communication a conventional system of signs and symbols means the same to the sender and receiver.
 - D. The means of communication are restricted in time and space.

Passage Two

Acting is such an overcrowded profession that the only advice that should be given to a young person thinking of going on the stage is "Don't!" But it is useless to try to discourage someone who feels that he must act, though the chances of his becoming famous are slim. The normal way to begin is to go to a drama school. Usually only students who show promise and talent are accepted, and the course lasts two years. Then the young actor or actress takes up work with a repertory company, usually as an assistant stage manager. This means doing everything that there is to do in the theatre: painting scenery, looking after the furniture, taking care of the costumes, and even acting in very small parts. It is very hard work indeed. The hours are long and the salary is tiny. But young actors with the stage in their blood are happy, waiting for the chances of working with a better company, or perhaps in films or television.

Of course, some people have unusual chances which lead to fame and success without this long and dull training. Connie Pratt, for example, was just an ordinary girl working in a bicycle factory. A film producer happened to catch sight of her one morning waiting at a bus stop, as he drove past in his big car. He told the driver to stop, and he got out to speak to the girl. He asked her if she would like to go to the film studio to do a test, and at first she thought he was joking. Then she got angry and said she would call the police. It took the producer twenty minutes to tell Connie that he was serious. Then an appointment was made for her to go to the studio the next day.

The test was successful. They gave her some necessary lessons and within a few weeks she was playing the leading part opposite one of the most famous actors of the day. Of course, she was given a more dramatic name, which is now world-famous. But chances like this happen <u>once in a blue moon!</u>

| 5. An assistant stage manager's job is difficult because he has to | |
|--|--|
|--|--|

- A. do all kinds of stage work
- B. work for long hours
- C. wait for a better opportunity
- D. have a talent for acting

| 6. | "Young actors with the stage in their | blood are happy" means | _• |
|----|--|------------------------------|------------|
| | A. they don't care if their job is har | B. they like the stage natur | ally |
| | C. they are born happy | D. they are easily satisfied | |
| 7. | Connie Pratt thought the film produc | er was joking, for she | |
| | A. didn't know who the man was | B. never wanted to become | an actress |
| | C. couldn't believe what the man sa | d D. had no interest in art | |
| 8. | The phrase "once in a blue moon" is | n the last sentence means | _• |
| | A. immediately B. unexpectedly | C. slowly D. ra | ırely |
| | | Passage Three | |
| | | | |

Started in 1636, Harvard University is the oldest of all the many colleges and universities in the United States. Yale, Princeton, Columbia and Dartmouth were opened soon after Harvard. They were all started before the American Revolution made the thirteen colonies into states.

In the early years, these schools were much alike. Only young men went to college. All the students studied the same subjects, and everyone learned Latin, Greek and Hebrew. Little was known about science then, and one kind of school could teach everything that was known about the world. When the students graduated, most of them become ministers or teachers.

In 1782, Harvard started a medical school for young men who wanted to become doctors. Later lawyers could receive their training in Harvard's law school. In 1825, Harvard began teaching modern languages, such as French and German. Soon it began teaching American history.

As knowledge increased, Harvard and other colleges began to teach many new subjects. Students were allowed to choose the subjects that interested them.

Special colleges for women were started. New state universities began to teach such subjects as farming, engineering and business. Today, there are many different kinds of colleges and universities. Most of them are divided into smaller schools that deal with special fields of learning.

There is so much to learn that one kind of school cannot offer it all.

| 9. | On the whole the passage is about | <u>_</u> . |
|-----|---|---|
| | A. how colleges have changed | B. how to start a university |
| | C. the American Revolution | D. the world-famous colleges in America |
| 10. | As knowledge increased, colleges began | to teach |
| | A. everything that was known | B. many new subjects |
| | C. Latin, Greek and Hebrew | D. French and German |
| 11. | Which statement does the passage lead ye | ou to believe? |
| | A. Every student studied Latin, Greek a | nd Hebrew. |
| | B. The early schools are still much alike | • |
| | C. There is more to learn today than in 1 | 636. |

D. They began teaching foreign languages in 1825. 12. Implied but not stated: A. Universities have changed over the years B. Today all students study to become teachers or ministers C. All colleges and universities are the same D. They were much alike in the early years Section B Sentence Understanding and Matching **Directions**: Match the Chinese sentences in the left column with the English in the right column and mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet. Part 1 13. 如果你希望成功, 当以恒心为良友、以经 A. Life is a journey, not the destination, but the scenery 验为参谋、以谨慎为兄弟、以希望为哨兵。 along the way and the mood at the view. 14. 要得到真正的快乐, 我们只需拥有三样 B. One needs three things to be truly happy living in the 东西: 有想做的事, 有值得爱的人, 有 world: something to do, someone to love, something to 美丽的梦。 hope for. 15. 人生就是一场旅行,不在乎目的地,在乎 C. You may bring up the matter at the meeting for considera-的应该是沿途的风景以及看风景的心情。 tion this afternoon. D. If you wish to succeed, you should use persistence as 16. 今天下午你可以把这件事在会议上提出 your good friend, experience as your reference, prudence 来考虑。 as your brother and hope as your sentry. Part 2 17. 广告最早起源于久远的希腊, 小商贩的 A. Until you make peace with who you are, you'll never be 当街叫卖——为了酬金而对大家大喊着 content with what you have. 关于一个公司产品的信息。 18. 接受过去和现在的模样, 才会有能量去 B. Accept what was and what is, and you'll have more 追寻自己的未来。 positive energy to pursue what will be.

19. 渐渐的, 黑暗的寂寞进驻了我的心, 吞

20. 除非你能和真实的自己和平相处,否则

你永远不会对已拥有的东西感到满足。

噬着我内心的快乐。

C. Advertising can be found as far back as the public criers

D. Slowly, a dark void found its way into my heart and

about a company's products to one and all.

began to eat my happiness.

of ancient Greece-who, for a fee, shouted out messages

Test 7

Reading Comprehension (1.5 points each, 30 points)

Section A

Directions: In this part there are three passages followed by questions, each with four suggested answers marked A, B, C and D. Choose the one that you think is the best answer. Mark your answer on the **Answer Sheet.**

Passage One

The outside world begins creeping into the school when the children reach the age of 13 and older, the age when they begin to make subject choices and when, according to a careers officer, they know if they're a scientific lot or more inclined to the arts. The difficult part is bringing the outside world to life with all its opportunities and realities. Schools are handicapped because they are staffed by people who only know about schools. Careers services are heavily influenced by what is readily available in the area, which may be sausage-making (香肠制造) in Wiltshire of shipbuilding in Clydeside. Somewhere out in the world there are snail (蜗牛) geneticists (遗传学家) and landscape gardeners and girls who polish Elizabeth Taylor's diamonds, but the careers officer knows little of them. What he knows about is engineering and hairdressing and opportunities in the Army. It is not surprising that this constant friction (冲突) between grand aspirations (志向) and uninspired (无限想象力的) reality produces cynicism (玩世不恭,愤世嫉俗) in both parties.

Wherever they work, sixteen and seventeen-year-olds can find themselves used as cheap labor, picking things up off floors, fetching and carrying. Some are paid a reasonable wage but it is quite possible to be paid only pocket-money. That's in the living-in jobs like hotel work. There is a small breakthrough of girls into traditionally male preserves like agriculture, but that may be because very few boys now would put up with the low wages. Most girls, despite women's liberation, head straight for hairdressing, nursing or office work and dream of being swept off their feet by the boss.

- 1. In what sense does the author say the outside world begins "a creeping into schools" when children first make subject choices?
 - A. Children begin to become interested in careers possibly open to them.
 - B. Children know what they are good at science or arts.
 - C. Children start to make constant contact with careers officers.
 - D. Children start to be concerned with what occupations they will be able to obtain.
- 2. According to the passage, the youth become cynical because .
 - A. they feel they are misled by careers officers
 - B. they can't accomplish in reality their strong desires to become scientists or to do something great

- C. what they learn at school is quite different from what they see in society
- D. they are treated unfairly in society
- 3. According to the author, some girls start to engage in agriculture _____
 - A. because they think they can do what boys can do
 - B. because they have no other alternatives
 - C. because there lie new career opportunities
 - D. because that's exactly what the Women's Liberation Movement advocates
- 4. A suitable title for the passage might be . .
 - A. The Gloomy Job Situation for the Youth
 - B. The Difficulties in Job Hunting for the Youth
 - C. The Disability of Careers Officers
 - D. The Friction Between Aspirations and Reality

Passage Two

The aim of the teacher is to get his pupils as quickly as possible over the period in which each printed symbol is looked at for its shape, and arrive at the stage when the pupil at words and phrases, for their meaning, almost without noticing the shapes of the separate (分离的, 隔离的) letters.

When a good reader is at work, he does not look at letters, nor even at words, one by one, however quickly; he takes in the meaning of two, three, or four words at a time, in a single moment. Watch carefully the eyes of a person who is reading, and it will be seen that they do not travel smoothly along the lines of print, but they move by jumps separated by very short stops. The eyes of a very good reader move quickly taking long jumps and making very short halts; the eyes of a poor reader move more slowly, taking only short jumps and stopping longer at each halt. Sometimes, when he meets a difficulty, he even goes backwards to see again what has already been looked at once.

The teacher's task is therefore clear: it is to train his pupils to take in several words at a glance (one "eye-jump") and to remove the necessity for going backwards to read something a second time.

This shows at once that letter-by-letter, or syllable-by-syllable (音节) or word-by-word reading, with the finger pointing to the word, carefully fixing each one in turn, is wrong. It is wrong because such a method ties the pupil's eyes down to a very short jump, and the aim is to train for the long jump. Moreover, a very short jump is too short to provide any meaning or sense; and it will be found that having struggled with three or four words separately, the pupil has to look at them again, all together and in one group, in order to get the meaning of the whole phrase.

- 5. Which of the following is closest in meaning to the first paragraph?
 - A. Pupils should be trained to reach quickly the stage of reading without having to concentrate on the separate symbols.
 - B. Pupils should look at each printed symbol for its meaning as well as for its shape.

- C. Teachers should help their pupils avoid looking at the shape of the printed symbols.
- D. Teachers should tell their pupils the different stages of their study.
- 6. According to the passage, which of the following is FALSE?
 - A. The eyes of a good reader make short halts and long jumps.
 - B. The eyes of a bad reader take in the meaning of one word at a time.
 - C. The eyes of a bad reader take only short jumps.
 - D. The eyes of a good reader move steadily.
- 7. One may have to read something a second time if
 - A. there is enough time

- B. one reads too fast
- C. the passage is very long
- D. one reads word by word
- 8. The main idea of the last paragraph is that
 - A. word-by-word reading is highly inefficient
 - B. the pupil's eyes should focus on groups of syllables instead of single syllables
 - C. pupils have to move their eyes back and forth when reading
 - D. finger-pointing in reading helps the pupil concentrate on meaning

Passage Three

Large companies need a way to reach the saving of the public at large. The same problem, on a smaller scale, faces practically every company trying to develop new products and create new jobs. There can be little prospect of raising the sort of sums needed from friends and people we know, and while banks may agree to provide short-term finance, they are generally unwilling to provide money on a permanent (永久的) basis for long-term projects. So companies turn to the public, inviting people to lend them money, or take a share in the business in exchange for a share in future profits. This they do by issuing stocks and shares in the business through The Stock Exchange. By doing so they can put into circulation the saving of individuals and institutions, both at home and overseas.

When the saver needs his money back, he does not have to go to the company with whom he originally placed it. Instead, he sells his shares through a stockbroker to some other saver who is seeking to invest his money.

Many of the services needed both by industry and by each of us are provided by the government or by local authorities. Without hospitals, roads, electricity, telephones, railways, this country could not function. All these require continuous spending on new equipment and new development if they are to serve us properly, requiring more money than is raised through taxes alone. The government, local authorities, and nationalized industries therefore frequently need to borrow money to finance major capital spending, and they, too, come to The Stock Exchange.

There is hardly a man or woman in this country whose job or whose standard of living does not depend oil the ability of his or her employers to raise money to finance new development. In one way or another, this new money must come from the savings of the country. The Stock Exchange

| exis | ts to provide a channel through which these savings can reach those who need finance. |
|------|--|
| 9. | The money which enables these companies to go ahead with their projects is |
| | A. repaid to its original owners as soon as possible |
| | B. raised by the selling of shares in the companies |
| | C. exchanged for part ownership in The Stock Exchange |
| | D. invested in different companies on The Stock Exchange |
| 10. | When the savers want their money back, they |
| | A. ask another company to obtain their money for them |
| | B. look for other people to borrow money from |
| | C. put their shares in the company back on the market |
| | D. transfer their money to more successful company |
| 11. | All the essential services on which we depend are |
| | A. run by the government or our local authorities |
| | B. in constant need of financial support |
| | C. financed wholly by rates and taxes |
| | D. unable to provide for the needs of the population |
| 12. | The Stock Exchange makes it possible for the government, local authorities and nationalized |
| | industries |
| | A. to borrow as much money as they wish |
| | B. to make certain that everybody saves money |
| | C. to raise money to finance new developments |
| | D. to make certain everybody lends money to them |
| | Section B Sentence Understanding and Matching |
| Dir | ections: Match the Chinese sentences in the left column with the English in the right column and |
| mai | k the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet. |
| | D |
| | Part 1 |
| | |

| 13. 因为我们的产品在国内声誉颇佳, 所以 产品需求量逐年增加。 | A. We are sure this just due to careless in quality control, and that you'll send another shipment of boluses promptly to replace this faulty one. |
|--|--|
| 14. 对于特别大的订单,我们会考虑给予更 多的优惠。 | B. We're looking for an appropriate partner to be our overseas agent. |
| 15. 我们相信这只是你们质量监控上的疏忽 造成的,你们会及时发来一批新货以替 换这批有问题的产品。 | C. As our products have a good reputation both at home and aboard, the demand is increasing year by year. |
| 16. 我们正在寻找一位合格的合作伙伴作为我们的海外代理商。 | D. If an order is exceptionally large, we are prepared to increase the discount. |

Part 2

A. Some people think wealth is more important; some people 17. 他们的生活包含很多如何产生伟大思想 think success is more important; others believe that love 并付诸实践的秘密。 is the most important thing. 18. 我父亲对回到那种忙忙碌碌的生活不怎 B. Your gender, your ethnic background, your social class, 么感兴趣, 但我向他保证, 这次绝对会 your social style, all of this will affect your body 有所不同。 language. 19. 有些人认为财富更重要;有些人认为成 C. Their life contains a lot of secrets about how to produce 功更重要;另一些人则认为爱是最重 great ideas and put them into practice. 要的。 20. 你的性别, 你的种族背景, 你所属的社 D. My father was not very interested in going back to that 会阶层, 你的交际风格, 这一切都会影 busy life, but I assured him it would be different this 响你的肢体语言。 time.

Test 8

Reading Comprehension (1.5 points each, 30 points)

Section A

 \bigcirc

Directions: In this part there are three passages followed by questions, each with four suggested answers marked A, B, C and D. Choose the one that you think is the best answer. Mark your answer on the **Answer Sheet.**

Passage One

Reading is thought to be a kind of conversation between the reader and the text. The reader puts questions, as they were, to the text and get answers. In the light of these he puts further questions, and so on.

For most of the time this "conversation" goes on below the level of consciousness. At times, however, we become aware of it. This is usually when we are running into difficulties, when mismatch is occurring between expectations and meaning. When successful matching is being experienced, our questioning of the text continues at the unconscious level.

Different people converse with the text differently. Some stay very close to the words on the page; others take off imaginatively from words, interpreting, criticizing, analyzing and examining. The former represents a kind of comprehension that is written in the text, while the latter represents higher levels of comprehension. The balance between these is important, especially for advanced readers.

There is another conversation that from our point of view is important, and that has not to do with what is read but with how it is read. We call this a "process" conversation as opposed to a

"content", conversation. It is concerned not with meaning but with the strategies we employ in reading. If we are skilled readers, our ability to hold a content conversation with a text is usually pretty well developed. Not so our ability to hold a process conversation. It is just this kind of conversation that is of importance when we are seeking to develop our reading to meet the new demands being placed upon us by studying at a higher level.

- 1. Reading as a kind of conversation between the reader and the text becomes conscious only when
 - A. the reader's expectations agree with what is said in the text
 - B. the reader asks questions and gets answers
 - C. the reader has trouble understanding what the author says
 - D. successful matching is occurring
- 2. At a lower level of comprehension, readers tend to . .
 - A. read a text slowly

- B. read without thinking hard
- C. interpret a text in their own way
- D. concentrate on the meaning of words only
- 3. A "process" conversation has to do with _____.
 - A. the development of our ability to check the details
 - B. determining the main idea of a text
 - C. what reading material is read
 - D. the application of reading strategies
- 4. From the passage we know .
 - A. it's important for readers to have conscious and unconscious levels of comprehension
 - B. readers should take a critical attitude towards the author's ideas
 - C. readers should learn to use different approaches in reading different texts
 - D. readers should pay more attention to the content of a text

Passage Two

Honeybees cannot live alone. Their body structure and instincts equip them for life in a colony of community, where they have a complex social organization and the various duties are divided among the individuals according to physical fitness and age. An individual worker bee cannot reproduce itself. While it may continue to live if forcibly isolated from its mates, it fails to care for itself adequately, and soon dies. Most insects have the ability to hibernate in winter, but the honeybee seems to have lost this. Since at low temperatures the bee will die, it must have the ability to make its own environment, so far as temperature is concerned. This makes a colony necessary to the bees in winter, so that they may collectively warm each other. Efficiency if not necessity, demands that the work of the colony be divided, and such a division of labor tends to enhance the reed to maintain the colony. The physical structure of the honeybee is further suited for the defense of the entire colony rather than for its own defense. The bee's barbed sting is used only once and is made more effective by the fact that it is left behind in the victim. With the loss

of the sting, however, the bee dies. This kind of defensive weapon is not of service to the individual, but to the community.

- 5. It can be inferred from the passage that at one time bees had the ability to
 - A. increase their activity in lower temperatures
 - B. leave cold climates during winter
 - C. remain inactive through periods of cold weather
 - D. construct insulated hives
- 6. According to the passage, bees differ from most other communities of insects in their need
 - A. reproduce in large numbers
- B. control the temperature where they live
- C. divide the work of their colonies
- D. have a complex defense system
- 7. According to the passage, the honeybee's sting is particularly effective because it
 - A. has many potential uses
- B. can kill several victims at once
- C. is located in the rear of the bee's body D. remains with the bee's victim
- 8. Which of the following is the most appropriate title for the passage?
 - A. The Communal Life of Bees.
- B. The Structure of the Bee.
- C. The Organization of Insect Colonies.
- D. The Life of the Social Insects.

Passage Three

Bacteria (细菌) are extremely small living things. While we measure our own sizes in inches or centimeters, bacterial size is measured in micron. One micron is a thousandth of a millimeter; a pinhead is about a millimeter across, Rod-shaped bacteria are usually from two to four microns long, while rounded ones are generally one micron across. Thus, if you magnified a rounded bacterium a thousand times, it would be just the size of a pinhead, while a grown-up human enlarged by the same amount would be over a mile tall.

Even with an ordinary microscope (显微镜), you must look closely to see bacteria. Using a magnification of 100 times, one can hardly find bacteria. Nor can one make out anything of their structure (结构), of course. Only by using special colors, can one see that some bacteria have wavy-looking "hairs" called flagella. Others have only one flagellum. The flagella move round a central point, pushing the bacteria through the water. Many bacteria lack flagella and cannot move about by their own power, while others can move along over surface by some little-understood "machinery".

From the bacterial point of view, the world is a very different place from what it is to humans. To a bacterium, water is as thick as molasses (糖浆) is to us. Bacteria are so small that they are affected by the movements of the chemical molecules (分子) around them. Bacteria under microscopes, even those with no flagella, often jump up and down in the water. This is because they knock with the water molecules and are pushed this way and that.

- 9. Which of the following is TRUE according to the passage?
 - A. Rod-shaped bacteria are generally larger than rounded ones.
 - B. If we enlarged a rod-shaped bacterium a thousand times, it would still be smaller than a pinhead.
 - C. If one used a microscope with a magnification of 100 times, he can see the structure of a bacterium clearly.
 - D. Water molecules move so quickly that a bacterium cannot move in the water.
- 10. According to the passage, one who examines bacteria with an ordinary microscope, using a magnification of 100 times will see _____.
 - A. stains

B. tiny rods

C. wavy-looking hairs

- D. detailed structures
- 11. The environment around bacteria is always changing because _____
 - A. molecules around bacteria move very fast
 - B. the water is as thick as molasses
 - C. there is a large number of molecules around bacteria
 - D. new bacteria always replace the old ones
- 12. The author compares water to molasses in order to show _____.
 - A. how difficult it is for bacteria to move through the water
 - B. how different the bacterial world is from the human world
 - C. how the water molecules work
 - D. what different bacteria one liquid contains from another

Section B Sentence Understanding and Matching

Directions: Match the Chinese sentences in the left column with the English in the right column and mark the corresponding letter on the **Answer Sheet**.

Part 1

- 13. 近来,最先在发达国家,然后在其他国家,人们的健康状况取得了长足进步, 这主要归功于早期儿童传染性疾病死亡 人数的下降。
- A. Voice teachers and many other professionals believe that some Americans are biased against people who speak with an accent.
- 14. 任何组织和个人不得以任何方式强迫选举人选举或不选举某个人。
- B. Recently, in the developed world, and then in other countries, people's health has come a long way, thanks largely to the decline in the number of early childhood infectious diseases.
- 15. 语音教师和许多其他专业人士认为,一 些美国人对说话带有口音的人带有偏见。
- C. No organization or individual shall in any way compel voters to elect or not to elect any candidate.
- 16. 不管你意识到没有,反正你总是用美元 来衡量某些开支项目的价值。
- D. Whether or not you're conscious of it, you're constantly valuing items in dollars.

Part 2

17. 此行的目的是为了参加六个月的语言课 A. If you want to reach New York in time for the meeting. 程并探望住在纽约的叔叔一家。 you have no alternative but to go by air. B. I will be graduating from Beijing University this year. My 18. 我今年将于北大毕业,大学期间所学的 studies have included courses in Computer Control and 课程包括计算机控制与管理。 Management. 19. 如果你想按时到纽约参加会议,除了坐 C. We mainly service for our company employees; publishing 飞机去别无选择。 day is no 15th every month. D. The purpose of my tour to America is to take up a 20. 本报的主要对象为我公司员工;出版日 language training course and visit my uncle's family who 期为每个月的15日。 live in New York.

Test 9

Reading Comprehension (1.5 points each, 30 points)

Section A

Directions: In this part there are three passages followed by questions, each with four suggested answers marked A, B, C and D. Choose the one that you think is the best answer. Mark your answer on the **Answer Sheet.**

Passage One

Trees should only be pruned (修剪) when there is a good and clear reason for doing so and, the number of such reasons is small. Pruning involves the cutting away of overgrown and unwanted branches, and the inexperienced gardener can be encouraged by the thought that more damage results from doing it unnecessarily than from leaving the tree to grow in its own way.

First, pruning may be done to make sure that trees have desired shape or size. The object may be to get a tree of the right height, and at the same time to help the growth of small side branches, which will thicken its appearance or give it a special shape. Secondly, pruning may be done to make the tree healthier. You may cut out diseased or dead wood, or branches that are rubbing against each other and thus cause wounds. The health of a tree may be encouraged by removing branches that are blocking up the center and so preventing the free movement of air.

One result of pruning is that an open wound is left on the tree and this provides an easy entry for disease, but it is a wound that will heal. Often there is a race between the healing and the disease as to whether the tree will live or die, so that there is a period when the tree is at risk. It should be the aim of every gardener to reduce that risk of death as far as possible. It is important to make the area, which has been pruned, smooth and clean, for healing will be slowed down by

roughness. You should allow the cut surface to dry for a few hours and then paint it with one of the materials available from garden shops produced especially for this purpose. Pruning is usually done in winter, for then you can see the shape of the tree clearly without interference (妨碍) from the leaves and also it is very unlikely that the cuts you make will bleed. If this does happen, it is, of course, impossible to paint them properly.

| 1. | Pruning is sometimes done to | |
|----|---|---|
| | A. allow the tree to grow in its own way | B. get rid of small branches |
| | C. improve the shape of the tree | D. let the tree grow taller |
| 2. | Trees will become unhealthy when | |
| | A. too many branches grow in the middle | B. branches in the middle are cut away |
| | C. small side branches become thick | D. overgrown branches are removed |
| 3. | A special substance is painted on the cut s | urface of the tree |
| | A. to prevent the bleeding of the liquid | B. to prevent disease from entering the wound |
| | C. to help the wound dry quickly | D. to remedy the roughness of the wound |
| 4. | A good gardener prunes a tree | |
| | A. at intervals throughout the year | B. regularly every winter |
| | C. only when necessary | D. once every year |
| | Pass | sage Two |

A number of recent studies suggest that children are experiencing a high degree of anxiety over the prospect of nuclear war.

I am sure there are children who are deeply concerned, even terrified, by the perceived (感觉) threat of nuclear destruction, but I wonder whether this is not caused in part by the way they are exposed to this subject. If we are going to do research, I think some of it should extend to the emotional health of parents who bring their children up with these fears. Some of the most ardent disarmament proponents seem to be sorely lacking in common sense when it comes to childrearing: The young ages of some of these frightened children indicate that they are receiving their nuclear-war information directly from their parents long before they are able to read books, magazines or newspapers on the subject, or even before they would voluntarily choose to view televised reports and programs on the subject.

No one can be comfortable expecting the prospect of nuclear war. It is a global problem that does exist, must be acknowledged and should be addressed by individuals and their governments. But life cannot stop in the meantime; children must have their childhood if they are to grow into emotionally healthy adults. Can they really do so if they are preoccupied (占据某人的思想) with death; if in response to concerns thrust upon them by their misguided parents, they place the fear of nuclear war before every other concern in their lives?

- 5. Why does the author say that some of the most ardent disarmament proponents seem to be lacking in common sense when it comes to child-rearing?
 - A. Because it is harmful to the emotional growth of the young children to tell them so many terrifying scenes.
 - B. Because they probably have no children of their own.
 - C. Because they are not aware that their efforts will prove useless.
 - D. Because they often differ in opinions as to how they should raise their children.
- 6. Which of the following is the source from which pre-school children learn about nuclear war?
 - A. Newspapers and magazines.

B. Books.

C. TV reports and programs.

- D. Their parents.
- 7. The author implies that so much exposure to the threat of nuclear war will cause the children .
 - A. to be mentally unhealthy

B. to commit suicide during their childhood

C. to distrust their parents

- D. to fear everything
- 8. The best title of the passage would be
 - A. Save Our Children in a Proper Way

B. Is Nuclear War So Terrible?

C. Why Terrify Our Children?

D. The Prospect of Nuclear War

Passage Three

Nonverbal (非语言的) communication has to do with gestures, movements and closeness of two people when they are talking. The scientists say that those gestures, movements and soon have meaning which words do not carry.

For example, the body distance between two speakers can be important. North Americans often complain that South Americans are unfriendly because they tend to stand close to the North American when speaking, while the South American often considers the North American to be "cold" or "distant" because he keeps a greater distance between himself and the person he is speaking to. The "eye contact" provides another example of what we are calling nonverbal communication. Scientists have observed that there is more eye contact between people who like each other than there is between people who don't like each other. The length of time that the person whom you are speaking to looks at your eyes indicates the amount of interest he has in the things you are talking about.

On the other hand, too long a gaze can make people uncomfortable. The eyes apparently play a great part in nonverbal communication. Genuine warmth or interest, shyness or confidence can often be seen in the eyes. We do not always consider a smile to be a sign of friendliness. Someone who is always smiling, and with little apparent reasons, often makes us uneasy.

9. According to the passage, nonverbal communication _____.

A. is a method often used by people who cannot speak B. can tell something that words cannot C. can be used to talk with people who cannot hear D. is less used than words 10. The South American A. tends to keep a distance between himself and the person he is speaking to B. usually stands close to the person he is talking to C. is often unfriendly when speaking D. is often cold and distant when speaking 11. Which of the following is NOT true? A. Less eye contact suggests distance in relation. B. The longer one looks at you, the more interest he has in you. C. There is more eye contact between people who like each other. D. Shorter eye contact shows more interest in what one is talking about. 12. Constant smiling without apparent reasons A. is a sign of one's friendliness C. makes people feel happy B. is a sign of one's unfriendliness D. makes people feel uncomfortable Section B Sentence Understanding and Matching **Directions**: Match the Chinese sentences in the left column with the English in the right column and mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet. Part 1 13. 外宾们站着不动有一分多钟之久, 张口 A. No matter how small or shabby the house is, the British 凝视着这个世界奇迹——长城。 always regard their home as a small corner of the world. 14. 不管房子多小或多么寒酸, 英国人总是 B. All indications are that European leaders are unwilling 把他们的家看成是这个世界上属于自己 even to acknowledge the nature of that threat, let alone

的一个小角落。

效措施加以应对。

世界上的身份。

15. 种种迹象表明, 欧洲领导人甚至不愿承

16. 有人说你和孩子的关系越密切, 她就越

认这种威胁的严重性, 更不用说采取有

需要摆脱这种关系,以确立自己在这个

D. For more than one minute our foreign guests remained standing still gaping at this wonder of the world—The Great Wall.

C. Some people say that the closer you are to your child, the

more she needs to get out of this relationship to establish

deal with it effectively.

her identity in the world.



| 17. 家人和朋友们络绎不绝地进进出出,表 达他们的慰问。 | A. Family and friends streamed in and out to offer their sympathy. |
|---|---|
| 18. 当我准点到达我的停车位的时候,正好 听到他说话中同时提到了毒品和苹果汁。 | B. I want to take this opportunity to lay out what we are doing, and how we intend to resolve these outstanding issues. |
| 19. 我想利用这个机会说明我们正在做哪些事情,我们打算用什么方式解决这些有待处理的问题。 | C. I arrived in my parking deck just in time to hear him mention poison and apple juice in the same sentence. |
| 20. 为实现这种目标, 你应甘愿付出一切代价并经受生活中的所有磨难。 | D. In order to achieve this goal, you should be willing to pay all the costs and experience all the hardships in life. |

Test 10

Reading Comprehension (1.5 points each, 30 points)

Section A

Directions: In this part there are three passages followed by questions, each with four suggested answers marked A, B, C and D. Choose the one that you think is the best answer. Mark your answer on the **Answer Sheet.**

Passage One

If the Europeans thought a drought—a long period of dry weather—was something that happened only in Africa, they know better now. After four years of below-normal rainfall (in some cases only 10 percent of the annual average), vast areas of France, Spain, Portugal, Belgium, Britain and Ireland are dry and barren (贫瘠). Water is so low in the canals of northern France that waterway traffic is forbidden except on weekends. Oyster (牡蛎) grows in Brittany report a 30 percent drop in production because of the loss of fresh water in local rivers necessary for oyster breeding. In southeastern England, the rolling green hills of Kent have turned so brown that officials have been weighing plans to pipe in water from Wales. In Portugal, farmers in the southern Alentejo region have held prayer meeting for rain—so far, in vain.

Governments in drought-spread countries are taking severe measures. Authorities in hard-hit areas of France have banned washing cars and watering lawns. In Britain, water will soon be metered, like gas and electricity. "The English have always taken water for granted," says Graham Warren, a spokesman of Britain's National Rivers Authority. "Now they're putting a price on it." Even a sudden end to the drought would not end the misery in some areas. It will take several years of unusually heavy winter rain, the experts say, just to bring existing water reserves up to their normal levels.

- 1. What does the author mean by saying "they know better now"?
 - A. They know more about the causes of the drought.
 - B. They have a better understanding of the drought in Africa.
 - C. They have realized that the drought in Europe is the most serious one.
 - D. They have realized that droughts hit not only Africa but also Europe.
- 2. The British government intends to
 - A. forbid the car-washing service
- B. increase the price of the water used
- C. end the misery caused by the drought D. charge fees for the use of the water
- 3. Which of the following statements is TRUE according to the passage?
 - A. Germany is the only country free from the drought.
 - B. Water reserves are at their lowest level in years due to drought.
 - C. The drought is more serious in Britain than in France.
 - D. Europe will not have heavy rain until several years later.
- 4. Which of the following is the most appropriate title for the passage?
 - A. Europe in Misery.

- B. Drought Attacks Europe.
- C. Be Economical with Water.
- D. Europe, a Would-be Africa.

Passage Two

Today, cigarette smoking is a common habit. About forty-three percent of the adult men and thirty-one percent of the adult women in the United States smoke cigarettes regularly. It is encouraging to see that millions of people have given up smoking.

It is a fact that men as a group smoke more than women. Among both men and women the age group with the highest proportion of smokers is 24 to 44.

Income, education, and occupation all play a part in determining a person's smoking habit. City people smoke more than people living on farms. Well-educated men with high incomes are less likely to smoke cigarettes than men with fewer years of schooling and lower incomes. On the other hand, if a well-educated man with a higher income smoked at all, he is likely to smoke more packs of cigarettes per day.

The situation is somewhat different for women. There are slightly more smokers among women with higher family income and higher education than among the lower income and lower educational groups. These more highly-educated women tend to smoke more heavily.

Among teenagers the picture is similar. There are fewer teenaged smokers from upper income, well-educated families, and fewer from families living in farm areas. Children are most likely to start smoking if one or both of their parents smoke.

- 5. What factors determine a person's smoking habit?
 - A. Age, income and education.
- B. Age, sex and income.
- C. Occupation, income and sex.
- D. Occupation, income and education.

- 6. Which of the following is TRUE according to the passage?
 - A. City people are less likely to smoke.
 - B. People in rural areas are more likely to smoke.
 - C. Men with higher income tend to smoke.
 - D. Well-educated men with high incomes are generally less likely to smoke.
- 7. What is the smoking situation for women?
 - A. The situation is quite the same for women as for men.
 - B. Better-educated women are likely to smoke heavily.
 - C. There are more women smokers with low incomes.
 - D. Women with higher incomes and higher education do not tend to smoke.
- 8. What can we say about teenaged smokers?
 - A. The picture about the teenaged smokers is similar to that of women smokers.
 - B. The situation among teenagers is quite the same with men.
 - C. High school students are more likely to smoke than college students.
 - D. Farmers' children tend to smoke more.

Passage Three

During a state of deep relaxation, several physiological changes take place in the body: the body's oxygen consumption is reduced; the heart beat decreases; muscle tension and sweating ease, and there is decreased sympathetic nervous system (交感神经系统) activity. This restful state not only allows the body to repair and restore itself, but it has a calming effect on the consciousness.

How to achieve this state of relaxation, however, is a matter of opinion, and in some medical circles, a matter of controversy. A recent report by Dr. David Holmes of the University of Kansas in the journal *American Psychologist* said that simply sitting in an armchair has just as many beneficial characteristics for the body as meditation (冥想) does. Researchers of other relaxation techniques disagree. These experts believe that more structured techniques, such as meditation, lead to a condition of deep relaxation.

The debate goes on, but one thing appears to be clear: the relaxation response can be reached by a number of methods, and the methods themselves are not as important as getting there. One day, one method may work best; on another day, an alternative method may be more appropriate. Once you are aware of all the methods, you can find the one that works best on you.

Some of the relaxation techniques are meditation, auto analysis (自我心理分析) and progressive muscle relaxation response. More than just sitting quietly in a chair, they have the added benefit of structure and discipline, and for these reasons appear to be more effective for most individuals.

| 9. | The passage | indicates | that a | a state | of deep | relaxation | is not | only | good | for | one's | $\operatorname{body},$ | but | also |
|----|---------------|-----------|--------|---------|---------|------------|--------|------|-----------------------|-----|-------|------------------------|-----|------|
| | beneficial to | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

| | A. heart beat | B. consciousness | |
|------------|--|--|----------------------------|
| (| C. muscle tension | D. sympathetic nervous system | |
| 10. | People seem to agree that | | |
| | A. sitting in an armchair benefits a p | | |
| | B. what people are struggling for is a | a state of deep relaxation | |
| | C. to achieve a state of deep relaxati | ion is possible through various means | |
| | | on techniques are more beneficial for a person | |
| 11. | | getting there" most probably means | |
| | A. arriving at one's destination | B. getting what one wants most | |
| | C. reaching a state of deep relaxation | | |
| 12. | As far as relaxation is concerned, the | | |
| | A. aims are more important than mea | | |
| | B. means are more important than ai | | |
| | C. some relaxation techniques are be | | |
| | D. more and more people are interes | sted in relaxation techniques | |
| | Section B Sentence | ce Understanding and Matching | |
| Dir | ections: Match the Chinese sentences in | n the left column with the English in the right column ar | nd |
| mar | k the corresponding letter on the Answ | ver Sheet. | |
| (b) | Part 1 | | |
| 13. | 这些公司代表了美国精神的精髓—— | | _ |
| | 那就是希望,在这个国家里的任何一 | A. Their life contains a lot of secrets about how to produce | |
| | 个人, 只要你有好的想法, 你有决心 | | e |
| | the label of the body | great ideas and put them into practice. | ee |
| | 坚持到底, 你就能成功。 | great ideas and put them into practice. | :е — |
| 14. | 然而站在人类的立场上,我们一直都 | B. With this approach, grouping on an attribute is no | |
| | 然而站在人类的立场上,我们一直都 面对着这些不如意的情况。 | | |
| | 然而站在人类的立场上,我们一直都面对着这些不如意的情况。 使用这种方法时,就不可能对属性进 | B. With this approach, grouping on an attribute is no possible.C. But for us, from a human standpoint, we face these | ot |
| | 然而站在人类的立场上,我们一直都 面对着这些不如意的情况。 | B. With this approach, grouping on an attribute is no possible. | ot |
| 15. | 然而站在人类的立场上,我们一直都面对着这些不如意的情况。 使用这种方法时,就不可能对属性进 | B. With this approach, grouping on an attribute is no possible.C. But for us, from a human standpoint, we face these shattered dreams all the time.D. These companies represent the essence of the American | ot se |
| 15. | 然而站在人类的立场上,我们一直都面对着这些不如意的情况。 使用这种方法时,就不可能对属性进行分组。 | B. With this approach, grouping on an attribute is no possible. C. But for us, from a human standpoint, we face these shattered dreams all the time. D. These companies represent the essence of the American spirit—the promise that anyone can succeed in this country in | ot se in |
| 15. | 然而站在人类的立场上,我们一直都面对着这些不如意的情况。 使用这种方法时,就不可能对属性进行分组。 他们的生活包含很多如何产生伟大思 | B. With this approach, grouping on an attribute is no possible.C. But for us, from a human standpoint, we face these shattered dreams all the time.D. These companies represent the essence of the American | ot se in |
| 15. | 然而站在人类的立场上,我们一直都面对着这些不如意的情况。 使用这种方法时,就不可能对属性进行分组。 他们的生活包含很多如何产生伟大思 | B. With this approach, grouping on an attribute is no possible. C. But for us, from a human standpoint, we face these shattered dreams all the time. D. These companies represent the essence of the American spirit—the promise that anyone can succeed in this country in | ot se in |
| 15. | 然而站在人类的立场上,我们一直都面对着这些不如意的情况。 使用这种方法时,就不可能对属性进行分组。 他们的生活包含很多如何产生伟大思想并付诸实践的秘密。 | B. With this approach, grouping on an attribute is no possible. C. But for us, from a human standpoint, we face these shattered dreams all the time. D. These companies represent the essence of the American spirit—the promise that anyone can succeed in this country in | ot se in if |
| 15. | 然而站在人类的立场上,我们一直都面对着这些不如意的情况。 使用这种方法时,就不可能对属性进行分组。 他们的生活包含很多如何产生伟大思想并付诸实践的秘密。 | B. With this approach, grouping on an attribute is no possible. C. But for us, from a human standpoint, we face these shattered dreams all the time. D. These companies represent the essence of the American spirit—the promise that anyone can succeed in this country if you have a good idea and the determination to see it through | ot se in if n. |



| 19. | 奇怪的是, | 在中学里没有表现出一点 |
|-----|-------|-------------|
| | 音乐天赋的 | 学生现在已经成为一个伟 |
| | 大的小提琴 | 家。 |

C. Governments make laws and the police enforce them.

20. 有什么办法可以把过去的传统和未来 的创新结合在一起的呢?

D. But why not combine traditions of the past with the innovations of the future?

● T Keys

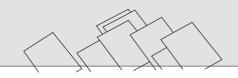
| Test 1 | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------|------|---------|
| Section A: 1—4 B C D C | 5 — 8 ABBA | 9—12 | АВВС |
| Section B: 13—16 B D A C | 17—20 CADB | | |
| Test 2 | | | |
| Section A: 1—4 CACB | 5—8 DBAD | 9—12 | ВВВА |
| Section B: 13—16 D C B A | 17—20 BADC | | |
| Test 3 | | | |
| Section A: 1—4 DACA | 5—8 B C B A | 9—12 | C D D B |
| Section B: 13—16 B C A D | 17—20 BADC | | |
| Test 4 | | | |
| Section A: 1—4 CABA | 5—8 B C C C | 9—12 | B A D B |
| Section B: 13 —16 B D A C | 17—20 C D B A | | |
| Test 5 | | | |
| Section A: 1—4 DCDB | 5—8 ВССС | 9—12 | BBAD |
| Section B: 13—16 C A B D | 17—20 DBCA | | |
| Test 6 | | | |
| Section A: 1—4 CDBB | 5—8 ABCD | 9—12 | A B C A |
| Section B: 13—16 DBAC | 17—20 CBDA | | |
| Test 7 | | | |
| Section A: 1—4 ABDB | 5—8 A D D A | 9—12 | ВСВС |
| Section B: 13—16 C D A B | 17—20 C D A B | | |
| Test 8 | | | |
| Section A: 1—4 CDDC | 5—8 C C D A | 9—12 | A B A A |
| Section B: 13—16 B C A D | 17—20 DBAC | | |
| Test 9 | | | |
| Section A: 1—4 CABC | 5—8 A D A C | 9—12 | BBDD |
| Section B: 13—16 D A B C | 17—20 A C B D | | |
| Test 10 | | | |
| Section A: 1—4 DDBB | 5—8 D D B B | 9—12 | BCDA |
| Section B: 13—16 D C B A | 17—20 B C A D | | |

第四部分

翻译知识及练习

第一章

英汉翻译概述



英汉翻译的性质决定了考生的翻译能力必须是建立在一定的英语语法、词法基本知识、对翻译有一定认知以及较强的汉语表达能力之上。该题型一方面测试考生对英语材料的确切理解能力,另一方面又考查考生的汉语表达能力。也就是说,考生既要掌握英语的基本语法和词汇,具有一定的语言运用能力,又要对翻译的相关知识和技能有一定的认识。从体裁上看,选材多来自议论文、说明文或信函,内容多涉及人文科学、科普、社会生活等方面一般性和常识性的题材。从句子结构上看,考题应以从长句和短语嵌套的复合句为主。

专升本英汉翻译要求考生的译文应该尽可能忠实于原文的思想、内容、语言风格,并通顺易懂,符合汉语规范,通常情况下,英汉翻译的评分根据翻译的定性和定量标准采用句段整体给分,漏译、错译、句构错误等酌情扣分;扣分分值一般应该限制在相应的分数段。

常采用的评分标准:

- 1. 译文标准, 句子连贯, 得满分。
- 2. 译文虽然与答案不完全相符, 但能够正确表达原意, 不扣分。
- 3. 译文不准确,内容不连贯,出现一个严重错误,酌情扣分。
- 4. 出现关键内容漏译,每一处扣1分;出现关键词汇漏译,每两个扣1分,扣完为止。
 - 5. 内容完全错译不给分。

如: Farmers in Holland // have been encouraged to adopt // "green" farming techniques // that were thought to benefit plant and bird life.

该句可分为四部分、每一部分0.5分、共2分、其中

第一部分的可接受的译法有,荷兰的农民或者荷兰的农场主们:

第二部分的可接受的译法有:被鼓励采用或者受政府鼓励采用:

第三部分可接受的译法有:"绿色"耕种技术,"绿色"农业技术,"绿色"种植技术或者环保耕种技术;

第四部分可接受的译法有:(被认为)有益于植物和鸟类(的),给植物和鸟的生活带来好处(的)。

该句话的参考译文为:

- 1. 荷兰的农民被鼓励采用那些被认为对植物和鸟类有利的"绿色"耕种技术。
- 2. 荷兰开始鼓励农民采用"绿色"耕种技术,该技术有益于植物和鸟类的生活。

第一节

英汉翻译的基本程序和方法

一、英汉翻译的基本程序

英汉翻译的基本程序主要包括以下四个步骤:

- 1. 通读并透彻理解全文,吃透原文。翻译之前仔细研读原文,解决好"翻译什么"的问题。考生不妨多读几遍,边读边琢磨,理解原文所述事物本身的含义及与之相关的外延联想,如原文语句的中心意思是什么,有没有褒义、贬义或寓意,对其中修饰语的把握等。
 - 2. 组织语言。考生要根据上下文选择适当的词汇和表达手段。
- 3. 表达。考生要注意从内容到语言两方面来考虑译文,尤其要注意不能扭曲原意, 不能错译或漏译。
- 4. 审校。这是必不可少的环节。应将译文与原文对照进行,看看译文是否忠实于原文,是否通顺易懂,是否符合汉语规范。

二、英汉翻译的基本方法

1. 直译与意译

直译指基本保留原句子结构, 照字面意思翻译; 意译是在不损害原文内容和精神的前提下, 为了表达的需要, 对原文做相应的调整。当然, 一句话并不限于一种译法, 要根据具体需要而定。一般来说, 如果直译能达意就用直译, 如果直译效果不好, 就应该考虑意译。只要译文内容忠实, 意思明白就行了。

例: Good marriages don't just happen. They take a lot of love and a lot of work.

直译:好的婚姻不会仅仅发生——它们需要大量的爱,大量的工作。

意译:幸福的婚姻不是凭空发生的——它需要你为它付出大量的爱,做大量的工作。 或:幸福的婚姻不是从天上掉下来的——你必须为它付出大量的爱,做大量的工作。

2. 顺译法 (又名句型对应法)

顾名思义,顺译法就是按原文句子结构的排列顺序进行翻译,这种译法适合于原文叙述层次与汉语相近的长复句翻译,如只含名词性从句的复合句、在前的状语从句、从句在后的长复合句等等。如:

例: As an obedient son, I had to accept my parents' decision that I was to be a doctor, though the prospect didn't interest me at all. 作为一个孝顺的儿子, 我只能接受父母的决定,去当大夫,虽然我对这样的前途毫无兴趣。

3. 倒译法

倒译法,就是颠倒原文句子结构的排列顺序来进行翻译。

例 1: The moon is completely empty of water because the gravity on the moon is much less than on the earth.

因为月球的引力比地球的引力小得多、所以月球上根本没有水。

例2: The football students can be removed from the university if they fail to pass their examinations. 作为足球运动员的学生如果考试不及格会被开除。

4. 分译法

分译法,又称拆译法,也是一种基本的句法变通手段。从分译成分的结构而言,分译 大致可以分为单词的分译、短语的分译和从句的分译三种。

单词的分译即拆词,将难译的词从句中主干拆离出来,另做处理,这种方法常常引起句式上的调整,英译汉中要拆译的词常常是形容词或副词。如:

例1: He unnecessarily spent a lot of time introducing his book, which the students are familiar with. 他花了很长时间介绍这本书,其实没必要,因为学生们对这书已经很熟悉了。

短语的分译即将英语的某个短语单独拿出来译成一个独立成分、从句或并列句。如:

- **例2:** We tried in vain to persuade him to give up his wrong belief. 我们尽力劝说他放弃错误的信念,但没有成功。
- **例3:** The professor entered the laboratory followed by his graduate students. 教授走进实验室、后面跟着他的研究生。

从句的分译则是根据译文需要打散句子,重新组织。英语的长句主要有主从复合句构成.结构严谨,只要明确其主从关系,就能正确分译。如:

例4: He told me such experience as I had never heard of before. 他给我讲述了他的经历,那些经历我以前从未听说过。

5. 合译法

顾名思义,合译就是将原文的两个或者几个分开叙述的意思或层次合并重组,如将两个分句合译为一个简单句,或两个简单句合译成一个复合句等,使全句的结构更加紧凑,语气更加通顺。

- 例 1: People will be alert and receptive if they are faced with information that gets them to think about things they are interested in.
 - 人们遇到激发起思考兴趣的内容时, 往往会头脑敏锐而且愿意接受。
- **例 2:** We look forward to the day when the scientists can discover more secrets of the universe. 我们期待有一天科学家能揭开更多的宇宙奥秘。

第二节

英汉翻译基础知识与技能

一、翻译的标准

关于翻译的标准,清代翻译家严复提出:优秀的译文应该做到"信"、"达"、"雅",即忠实于原文,笔译流畅,文字典雅。后来钱钟书先生提出了翻译的"化境"之说,就是原文的思想、情感、风格、神韵都原原本本地化到了译文的境界里。对于一般翻译者来说可以用"忠实与通顺"这一翻译基本标准,即正确地理解和表达原文的思想,译文文字流畅、地道。

英译汉要做到"忠实",即在理解英文原文意思后,用汉语将同样的意思表达出来。 "通顺"指的是语言。英汉翻译中虽然不强调语言文字的优美,但是语言必须符合汉语的 习惯,符合汉语的语法规律和逻辑。如果译文真正做到既忠实于原文又通顺,也就可以认 为基本达到要求。

二、英汉差异比较

1. 思维模式上的差异

思维模式是受文化、传统、地域等很多因素影响的。英汉两种语言在思维模式上有很多不同,试比较: skin-deep 肤浅; wet paint 油漆未干; 10 percent off/discount 九折; self-taught 自学等。

由此可见,在某些思维内容的表现形式上,汉英两种语言有截然不同的视角倾向。英语常用"浓缩型"思维方式,喜欢将众多信息靠各种手段凝聚于一个单位思考,使英语的句子信息量较高,汉语则采用"展开型"思维方式,句子显得较松散。如:

This is an age of "knowledge and distributed intelligence", in which knowledge is available to anyone, located anywhere, at any time.

这是一个"知识和分布智能"的时代,在这个时代里,人人均可获得知识,知识无处不在,无时不在。

2. 语法、结构等表达模式上的差异

汉语动词本身没有变化,而英语动词自身有着复杂的变化。英语有众多形式变化可表示各种语法关系,16 种时态变化以及各类连接词语和从句使句子结构复杂纵横交错。一个句子往往以一个主、谓、宾结构作为核心框架,向外延伸扩展,附上各种次要结构。而汉语无形态变化,只有靠语序和虚词对称,构成了一种线性横向排列式结构,逐步展开叙述。基于这些差异,英译汉时常常需要进行结构的调整和变通。

三、英汉翻译中的择词问题

翻译时不能望文生义或断章取义,因为我们发现,英汉词汇在表达意义的范围、搭配关系、词义色彩、使用习惯等方面有许多"不对等"的地方。换句话说,英汉两种语言间不存在严格意义上的意义对应关系。如英文单词 open,其基本词义为"开着的",在英文里又有不同的搭配:

an open window 开着的窗户 open eyes 睁开的眼睛 open fields 空旷的田野 an open market 露天市场 an open car 敞篷车 an open letter 公开信 an open mind 豁达的心胸

an open competition 公开赛
an open secret 公开的秘密
an open manner 直率的态度
an open question 尚未解决的问题
an open port 对外贸易港
be open with each other 彼此坦诚相见
be open to an attack 易受到攻击

因此,翻译时必须根据搭配关系、句子成分之间的关系、语言习惯等因素来确定词义。

有时要改变其中一个词义与另一个相搭配,或尝试加词,改变词组的顺序,甚至改变整个句子的结构等方法,以求通顺。

翻译的过程就是语言转换的过程,要充分、贴切地表达词语的含义,必须考虑以下 几点:

1. 准确辨析词义, 联系上下文, 弄清一个词在文中的实际含义。

You should take a long-view look at your problems. 你应该从长远观点来看待自己的问题。 Have a look at this book. 读读这本书。

You look very fetching in that hat with the purple dress.

你戴上那顶帽子配上这紫色的衣服显得非常动人。

The building looks west. 大楼朝西。

A serious look passed over his face. 他脸上显出一副严肃的神色。

Good looks are not as important as kindness. 好的容貌没有好的心肠重要。

此外,词汇按照感情色彩可分为褒义、贬义和中性。词汇感情色彩的翻译要严格按照 原文的精神来进行,也就是说,褒义词必须翻译成褒义词,中性词也应该翻译成中性词, 而贬义词就要翻译成贬义词。如:funny 一词就有褒义、中性和贬义的词义:

褒义: a funny story 滑稽的故事 a funny writer 风趣的作家 He is being funny. 他在逗乐。

中性: There is something funny about the matter. 事情有些蹊跷。

a funny black hat 一顶古怪的黑帽子

贬义: You'll be sorry if you try anything funny in class. 你要是在课堂上耍什么鬼花样的话,你肯定会后悔的。 Don't get funny with your boss!别对老板放肆 (无礼)! She is a bit funny sometimes. 她有时有点疯疯癫癫的。

2. 灵活变通,易词而译。

当原文在译入语中找不到合适的对应表达手段时,不要被原文的文字字面意思所束缚,而要考虑适当的变通,如具体与笼统的互换,形象与抽象的互换,肯定与否定的互换,英语的一般用语与汉语成语的互换等等。要顺应汉语的表达习惯。

The whole project was completed in a quarter of a year. 整个工程在三个月内就完成了。 Her brother is thirty years old now. 他弟弟今年已到了而立之年。

Chances are that you have used encyclopedias, probably many times.

你可能用过百科全书,或许用过多次。

All sales are final. 商品售出、概不退换。

第三节

英汉翻译中的常用技巧

一、词类转换

由于英汉两种语言在语法和表达习惯上的差异,在描述同一事物时,两种语言会使用不同的词性。因此在翻译过程中,就需要注意变换原文的词性,以便有效传达原文的准确信息。

1. 英语名词 →汉语动词

英语中具有动作意义或动词转化过来的名词,汉译时往往转化为动词。

The arrival of the train was delayed. 那列火车晚点到达。

His arrival at this conclusion was the result of much thought.

他得出这一结论是深思熟虑的结果。

The disappearance of a schoolgirl was very worrying among the teachers.

一位女孩失踪了, 教师们非常担忧。

2. 英语动词 →汉语名词

有些动词在汉语里虽有相对应的动词词义,但在某些特定的语言场合下不能使用该动词词义,或由于需要选择另一种更好的译文,因而将其转换为汉语的名词。

CNN reported events as they happened. CNN 对事件做了现场报告。

Judgment should be based on facts, not on hearsay.

判断应该以事实为依据,而不应该依靠道听途说。

3. 英语名词→汉语形容词

英语原文中有形容词加后缀构成的名词,翻译时可转换为汉语的形容词。

The advantage of the machine consists in its reliability and lightness.

这种机器的优点在于它可靠而且轻便。

Scientists are no strangers to politics. 科学家对政治并不陌生。

4. 英语形容词→汉语名词

一些英语形容词如果译为汉语的形容词,译文会显得生硬,或者不符合习惯说法,而转移为名词会使译文通顺些。

His behaviors make us suspicious. 他的行为使我们起了疑心。

5. 英语介词→汉语动词

He came to my home for help. 他来到我家、请求帮助。

At noon, she came home for lunch. 中午, 她回家吃饭

His life was a struggle, first against poverty and later against disease.

他的一生是一场战斗, 早年是同贫困做斗争, 而后是同疾病做斗争。

6. 英语副词 →汉语名词

It was officially announced that Paris is invited to the meeting.

官方宣布、巴黎应邀出席会议。

二、词语增减

1. 增词

增词法是根据汉语的习惯,在中文译文中适当添加英语中所没有的词语,以便满足汉语语法修辞的需要,或更明确地表达原文的含义。增词法主要是添加原文中虽无形式却意在其中的成分。

After the football match, he has got an important meeting.

看完足球赛后,他有一场重要的会议要去参加。

There will be a skill shortage in many countries in the next century.

在下个世纪,很多国家将出现技术匮乏的现象。

Last year they were responsible for 33 killings and many other crimes.

在过去的一年里, 他们就是33起凶杀案以及许多其他犯罪案件的罪魁祸首。

2. 减词

在不影响原意的情况下,省略无关紧要的词语,可以避免译文拖泥带水,语句可以更加精炼,而且不损害原意。

It is better to do well than to say well. 说得好不如做得好。

If you make a promise, you should keep it. 做了承诺就要履行。

三、语序调整

语序的调整就是根据两种语言的不同词序特点对句子成分进行调整安排。两种语言在时间、地点逻辑等表述顺序上常常存在一些差异。英译汉时,为了合乎汉语语法和汉语语言习惯,需要改变语序,例如英语许多后置的定语、状语和修饰语在翻译中的位置变化是翻译中最常见也是最基本的现象。

the picture on the left 左图

back and forth 前后

a small town in China 中国的一个小镇

1. 定语位置的调整

英语定语就其位置来说,可以分为前置定语和后置定语,而汉语定语一般放在名词之前,放在名词之后的极少。

Advertising can be a service to the customer. 广告可以是向用户提供的一种服务。

Don't put off until tomorrow what can be done today. 今日能做的事不要拖到明天。

2. 状语顺序的调整

在汉语里状语多数放在所说明或修饰的词的前面,但英语状语有的放在句子最后,有的放在句中,翻译时要考虑汉语表述的习惯,进行语序调整。

He will never pass the examination unless he studies hard.

除非努力学习、否则的话他永远不能考及格。

He will be barred from playing for half a year because of bad behavior.

他由于行为不端将被停赛半年。

Many types of animals have now vanished from the earth. 许多动物在地球上灭绝了。

3. 同位语、插入语成分语序的转换

插入语和同位语一般是对一个事物或一句话做一些附加的解释,由于英语中插入语和同位语位置十分灵活,翻译成汉语时,有时要做相应的调整,以合乎汉语的表达习惯。

There will be, we hope, a good beginning. 我们希望有个良好的开端。

There are, to be exact, only two choices. 准确地说,只有两种选择。

4. 评论和表态中语序的调整

英语的语序和汉语不同,英语先评论或先表态,再说有关情况,而汉语则相反,翻译时要按照汉语习惯重新组织和排列句子的语序。

There is growing concern over/about the negative effect of Internet on young people.

人们对网络给青少年造成的负面影响越来越关心。

Food is essential to life. 食物是维持生命不可或缺的。

5. it 结构的语序调整

在英语里,主语可以后置,前面用形式主语 it 代替;在汉语里,主语要放在谓语的前面,不能用代词代替。在翻译"It+系动词+实际主语"的结构时,主语应尽可能提前,而且应该明确具体:将做真正主语的不定式(短语)等连同后面的从句提前翻译在主语位置上。

It has long been proved that the creative power of the people knows no limits.

人民的创造力是无穷的、这一点早已得到证实。

四、语态转换

1. 英文注重逻辑性、客观性,被动语态使用频繁;而汉语则倾向于语句明快,自然有力,所以以主动语态较为多见。

He has appeared on most of the world's great concert stages. His recordings have been heard by millions of people.

译文1:他在世界上大多数著名的音乐会舞台上演奏过。他的唱片被千千万万人听过。

译文1: 他在世界上大多数著名的音乐会舞台上演奏过。有千千万万人听过他的唱片。 很显然,译文2更符合汉语的表达习惯。

2. 当然,汉语中并非完全不使用被动语态;有时,英语中的主动语态还应译为被动语态。

These young seedlings will require looking after carefully.

这些幼苗将需要被小心地照顾。

3. 如果英文原文中有 by 引导的成分,将之译为汉语中的主语。

In 1860, a better plan was put forward by an Englishman, William Low.

1860年, 一名叫威廉・娄的英国人提出了一个更好的计划。

4. 英文中的被动语态还可以译成汉语中的"由、受、遭到、靠、让、要、得到、可以、加以、是……的"等结构。

Many more temporary workers can be released quickly if times turn bad.

一旦经济恶化, 更多的临时工就会立即被/遭到解聘。

All these problems will have been solved by the next year.

到明年, 所有的问题都将得到解决。

If the stability can be maintained, one of the worst features of the cycle will have been removed. 如果这种稳定状态得以保持下去的话, 商业周期最坏的一个特征就将被消除。

5. 英文中的被动语态还可以翻译成汉语中的无主句,或者译成泛泛的主语。

You are required to return all the books you borrowed from the library by the end of this month. 要求大家在月底前把从图书馆借的书全部归还。

The interests of developing countries should be considered.

应该考虑到发展中国家的利益。

It is surveyed that among 500 top managers 93.75% regard smooth human relation as the key to success in their career.

根据对500 位企业高级管理人员进行的调查,93.75%的人认为人际关系顺畅是他们事业成功的关键。

第四节

长句、难句的翻译

英译汉中的句子有长有短,各有特色。短句子主要考查特殊词、特殊表达方法和句型;而长句子则考查考生分析长句的能力。英文中的长句子通常是一个主句上可以附带数个从句,遇到这样的长句时,考生要能够抓住句子主干,各个击破(复合句),可以从以下几点入手:

1. 先找出长句子中有几个谓语,几个连词(when, and, but, or, etc.) 和关联词(which, that, what, etc.)。如果不是并列谓语,就可再根据谓语形式找出其相应的主语,从而将长句划分为几个简单句。

When a body which has a certain temperature becomes hotter we say that heat has been added to it.

该例句有四个谓语: has, becomes, say, has; 四个主语: a body, which, we, heat 共四个简单句。

该句的译文是: 当具有某一温度的物体变得更热时, 我们说有热量加到该物体上了。

2. 注意成分的省略。英语(尤其是科技英语)中经常使用省略句,在理解上造成许多不便。因此,在阅读文章或翻译时,如果发现句子残缺不全,就应该注意观察是否有省略成分。判断时,首先要看句中有无 and, or, but, when, while, than, if, as, as if, until, unless, once, although, though, no matter how, whether 等连接词,因为这些连接词是判断有无省略成分的标志和依据。如:

There are three things we have to know about every force in order to be able to understand the effect it produces.

该句中有三个谓语和三个主语,但没有连接词和关联词,意味着有省略成分。经分析,we 和 it 前都省略了做宾语的关联词 which 或 that,分别说明前面的 things 和 effect。

该句的译文是: 为了了解每个力所产生的效果, 我们必须知道力的三要素。

3. 注意成分的割裂。

On the other hand, as we know, a good understanding has been obtained of wood and coal which consist of chiefly carbon, hydrogen and oxygen.

在该句中 "as" 做关联词, 引导非限制性定语从句; "understanding" 和其定语 "of wood and coal"被 has been obtained 隔开。

该句的译文是:一方面,就我们所知,对于木头和煤已经了解得很清楚了,它们主要 是由碳、氢和氧构成的。

此外,在分析句子结构时,弄清割裂成分,省略成分,词的搭配等问题之后,还要搞清各简单句的意思,并把各句联系起来,确定其间的意义关系,然后结合上下文译成汉语。

各种从句的翻译:

一、主语从旬

1. 以 what, whatever, whoever 等代词引导的主语从句翻译时一般可按原文顺序翻译。 What he told me was only half-truth. 他告诉我的只是些半真半假的东西而已。

Whatever he saw and heard on his trip gave him a very deep impression.

他此行所见所闻都给他留下了深刻的印象。

2. 以 it 做形式主语所引出的真正主语从句,翻译时视情况可以提前也可不提前。真正的主语从句提前译。为了强调起见, it 一般可以译出来,如果不需要强调, it 也可以不译出来。

It doesn't make much difference whether he attends the meeting or not.

他参不参加会议没有多大关系。

It seemed inconceivable that the pilot could have survived the crash.

驾驶员在飞机坠毁之后竟然还能活着, 这看来是不可想象的。

3. 真正的主语从句不提前, it 一般不译出来。

It is strange that she should have failed to see her own shortcomings. 真奇怪,她竟然没看出自己的缺点。

二、定语从旬

定语从句主要涉及限制性定语从句的译法和非限制性定语从句的译法。

1. 限制性定语从句

限制性定语从句对所修饰的先行词起限制作用,与先行词关系密切,不用逗号隔开,翻译这类句子时往往可以用:

1.1 前置法

把英语限制性定语从句译成带"的"的定语词组,放在被修饰词之前,从而将合成句译成汉语单句。

Anyone who has not attended a large college football game has missed one of the most colorful

aspects of American college life.

任何一个没有参加过学校橄榄球比赛的人、都会错过美国大学生活中最为精彩的一面。

The person who smokes one or two packs of cigarettes a day loses on average six to eight percent of his blood's oxygen-carrying capacity.

一天吸一包或两包香烟的人平均要丧失百分之六到八的血液携氧能力。

The people who worked for him lived in mortal fear of him.

在他手底下工作的人对他怕得要死。

1.2 后置法

上述译成前置定语的方法大都是用于限制性定语从句,但一般用于翻译比较简单的英语定语从句;如果从句结构复杂,译成汉语前置定语显得太长而不符合汉语表达习惯时,往往可以译成后置的并列分句。可以分为两种情况:

① 译成并列分句, 重复英语先行词。

They are striving for the ideal which is close to the heart of every Chinese and for which, in the past, many Chinese have laid down their lives.

他们正在为实现一个理想而努力,这个理想是每个中国人所珍爱的,在过去,许多中国人曾为了这个理想牺牲了自己的生命。

② 译成并列分句,省略英语先行词。

He managed to raise a crop of 200 miracle tomatoes that weighed up two pounds each. 他居然种出了 200 个奇迹般的西红柿,每个重达两磅。

1.3 融合法

融合法是指把原句中的主语和定语从句融合在一起译成一个独立的句子的一种翻译方法。由于限制性定语从句关系紧密,所以融合法比较适用于翻译限制性定语从句。英语中的 There be...结构汉译时往往就是这样处理的。如:

There were men in that crowd who had stood there every day for a month.

在那群人中,有些人每天都站在那里,站了一个月了。

There is a man downstairs who wants to see you. 楼下有人找你。

此外,还有些带定语从句的英语复合句,译成汉语时可将英语主句压缩成汉语词组做主语,而把定语从句译成谓语,融合成一个句子。

"We are a nation that must beg to stay alive," said a foreign economist.

一位外国经济学家说道,"我们这个国家不讨饭就活不下去。"

2. 非限制性定语从句

英语非限制性定语从句对先行词不起作用,只对它加以描写、叙述或解释。翻译这类 从句时可以运用以下几种方法:

2.1 前置法

一些较短而具有描写性的英语非限制性定语从句,也可以译成带"的"前置定语,放

在被修饰词前面。如:

He likes his sister, who was warm and pleasant, but he did not like his brother, who was aloof and arrogant. 他喜欢热情欢快的妹妹, 但不喜欢冷漠高傲的弟弟。

2.2 后置法

译成并列分句。有三种情况:

① 在译文中把原文从句后置, 重复英语关系词所代表的含义。

I told the story to John, who told it to his brother.

我把这件事告诉了约翰,约翰又告诉了他的弟弟。

Conditions in the two places differ greatly, which is known to all.

两地情形不大相同,这一点人所共知。

② 在译文中从句后置,省略英语关系词所代表的含义。

After dinner, the four key negotiators resumed their talks, which continued well into the night. 饭后,四位主要谈判人继续会谈,一直谈到深夜。

③ 在译文中从句前置,重复英语关系词所代表的含义。

The man had suddenly awakened to the fact that there were beauty and significance in these trifles, (flowers) which they had so long trodden carelessly were beneath their feet.

这些花以前一直被这些人漫不经心地踩在脚下,现在他们突然意识到这些小玩意儿的美丽和意义了。

2.3 译成独立句

He had talked to Vice-President Nixon, who assured him that everything that could be done would be done.

他和副总统尼克松谈过话。副总统向他保证、凡是能够做到的都将竭尽全力去做。

The international community faces another, even more urgent challenge at the beginning of the new millennium: the reduction of poverty in the world's poorest countries, where 1.3 billion people live on less than \$1 a day.

国际社会在新千年开始所面临的另一个甚至是更紧迫的挑战就是:在世界最贫穷的国家减少贫困人口,在这些国家里,有13亿人生活在每天不足一美元的生活标准之下。

三、表语从旬

英语表语从句一般可按原文顺序翻译。

What he emphasized over and over again was that, no matter how difficult it might be, they should never retreat even for an inch.

他所再三强调的是、不管多么困难、他们决不后退半步。

His view of the press was that the reporters were either for him or against him. 他对新闻界的看法是记者们不是支持他,就是反对他。

四、同位语从旬

同位语从句用来对名词(或代词)作进一步的解释。同位语可以是单词、短语或从句。

1. 同位语从句汉译时不提前。

He expressed the hope that he would come over to visit China again. 他表示希望再到中国来访问。

2. 同位语从句提前。

But I knew I couldn't trust him. There was always the possibility that he was a political swindler. 但我知道不能轻信他。他是政治骗子这种可能性总是存在的。

3. 增加"即"(或"以为")或用冒号、破折号分开。

But considered realistically, we had to face the fact that our prospects were less than good. 但是现实地考虑一下,我们不得不正视这样的事实:我们的前景并不妙。

- 4. 说明身份、称号的英语同位语往往放在专有名词后面,汉译时一般放在前面。 They silently surrounded Tom, a young soldier, in order to take him prisoner. 他们悄悄地包围了一个年轻战士汤姆,企图俘虏他。
- 5. 限制性同位语以及形容词、数词等做进一步解释说明的同位语在英语中往往放在本位语后面,汉译时一般不用改变位置。

That theory was advanced by the famous Chinese geologist Li Siguang. 那条理论是中国著名地质学家李四光提出来的。

原文中有些同位语,汉译时往往需要作适当扩充或加破折号、冒号等。

Instead of the actual April date, they said it had occurred on May 1,1965, the fifth anniversary of my flight. 他们报道的日期不是实际上四月份的某日, 而是 1965 年 5 月 1 日——我飞行5 周年纪念日。

五、宾语从旬

1. 用 that, what, how 等引导的宾语从句翻译时,一般不需要改变它在原句中的顺序。 I told him that because of the last condition, I'd have to turn it down.

我告诉他, 由于最后一个条件的缘故, 我只得谢绝。

有时可以加"说"字,再译原文宾语从句的内容。如:

He would remind people again that it was decided not only by himself but by lots of others.

他再三提醒大家说、决定这件事的不只是他一个人、还有其他许多人。

2. it 做形式宾语的句子,翻译时 that 引导的宾语从句一般可按原文顺序; it 不译。 I made it clear to them that they must hand in their papers before 10 o'clock in the morning. 我向他们讲清楚了,他们必须在上午十点前交卷。

但是有时在译文中也可将 that 引导的宾语从句提前。如:

I regard it as an honor that I am chosen to attend the meeting.

我被选参加会议,感到光荣。

六、状语从旬

英语状语从句包括表时间、原因、条件、让步、目的等各种从句。

1. 表时间的状语从句

1.1 译成相应的表示时间的状语

While she spoke, the tears were running down. 她说话时, 眼泪直流。

Please turn off the light when you leave the room. 离开屋子时请关上电灯。

1.2 译成"刚(一)……就……"的句式

Hardly had we arrived when it began to rain. 我们一到就下雨了。

He had scarcely handed me the letter when he asked me to read it.

他把信一交给我就叫我念给他听。

1.3 译成并列的分句

He shouted as he ran. 他一边跑一边喊。

I was about to speak, when Mr. Smith cut in. 我正想讲话, 史密斯先生就插嘴了。

2. 表示原因的状语从句

2.1 译成表"因"的分句

Because we are both prepared to proceed on the basis of equality and mutual respect, we meet at a moment when we can make peaceful cooperation a reality.

由于我们双方都准备在平等、互相尊重的基础上行事,我们在这个时刻会晤就能使和平合作成为现实。

2.2 译成因果偏正复句中的主句

Because he was convinced of the accuracy of this fact, he stuck to his opinion. 他对这件事确信无疑、因此坚持己见。

2.3 译成不用关联词而有因果关系内涵的并列分句

He was not only surprised but, to start with, extremely suspicious, as he had every reason to be. 他不但惊讶而且一开始就十分怀疑,他有这样的感觉是完全有理由的。

3. 表示条件的状语从句

3.1 译成表"条件"的分句

It was better in case they were captured. 要是把他们捉到了,那就更好了。

Once the men had been accepted by the Comet organization, they were brought to Brussels. 他们一旦被彗星组织收下了,就被带到布鲁塞尔去了。

"只要""要是""如果""一旦"等等都是汉语表示"条件"的常用关联词,在语气上,"只要""只有"最强,"如果"最弱,"如果"也用来表示假设。英语中表示"条件"的从句前置后置比较灵活,汉语中表示"条件"的分句一般前置。

3.2 译成表示"假设"的分句

If one of them collapsed, as they often did, the guide used to carry him over the mountains. 如果其中一个人垮了,这种事时常在他们中间发生,向导就要背着他过山。

"如果""要是""假设"等都是汉语中用来表示"假设"的常用关联词。汉语中表示"假设"的分句一般前置,但作为补充说明情况的分句则往往后置。

3.3 译成补充说明情况的分句

You can drive tonight if you are ready. 你今晚就可以出车,如果你愿意的话。

You will have some money by then, that is, if you last the week out.

到那时你该有点钱了,也就是说,如果你能渡过这星期的话。

4. 表示让步的状语从句

4.1 译成表示"让步"的分句

Although he seems hearty and outgoing in public, Mr. Cooks is a withdrawn, introverted man. 虽然库克斯先生在公共场合是热情而开朗的,但他却是一个孤僻的、性格内向的人。

I still think that you made a mistake while I admit what you say.

就算你说得对, 我仍认为你做错了。

"虽然""尽管""即使""就算"等等是汉语中表示"让步"的常用关联词。汉语中表示"让步"的分句一般前置(但现在也逐渐出现后置现象)、英语中则比较灵活。

4.2 译成表"无条件"的条件分句

汉语里有一种复合句,前一分句排除某一方面的一切条件,后一分句说出在任何条件下都会产生同样的结果,也就是说结果的产生没有什么条件限制。这样的复合句里的前一分句,称之为"无条件"的条件分句。通常以"不论""不管""无论""随"等作为关联词。

No matter what misfortune befell him, he always squared his shoulders and said: "Never mind, I'll work harder."

不管他遭遇什么不幸的事儿,他总是把胸一挺,说:"没关系,我再加把劲儿。"

Plugged into the intercommunication system, the man can now communicate with the rest of the crew no matter what noise is going on about him.

不管周围是多么喧闹、插头一接上机内通话系统、他就能和其余的同事通话了。

5. 表示"目的"的状语从句

5.1 译成表示"目的"的前置分句

He pushed open the door gently and stole out of the room for fear that he should awake her. 为了不惊醒她,他轻轻地推开房门,悄悄地溜了出去。

We should start early so that we might get there before noon.

为了在中午以前赶到那里, 我们很早就动身了。

汉语里表"目的"的分句所常用的关联词有"为了""省(免)得""以便""生怕"等等。"为了"往往用于前置分句,"省(免)得""以免""以便""生怕"等一般用于前置分句。

5.2 译成表示"目的"的后置分句

The murder ran away as fast as he could, so that he might not be caught red-handed. 凶手飞奔着跑掉了,以免被人当场抓住。

Tom groaned aloud, "You came from Kansas City in two weeks so that I could give you a job?" 汤姆唉声叹气地说道:"你从堪萨斯城走了两个星期到这里,就是要我给你找个工作吗?"

第二章

汉译英专项练习



一、练习题部分

- 1. 据估计这一工程项目已经花费了10万美元。
- 2. 在当前的金融形势下,美元贬值是不可避免的。
- 3. 我们不得不将约会时间从上午8点推迟到10点。
- 4. 生态网络是为从事环境保护的组织和个人设计的。
- 5. 从智力方面看, 计算机似乎应该排在植物和大多数动物之上。
- 6. 我们永远不能脱离群众。
- 7. 他通过了大学英语四级考试,不是由于他运气好,而是由于他努力学习。
- 8. 他的老板对他施加压力,要他不惜一切代价提高产量。
- 9. 统计数据研究早就表明, 不吸烟的人比烟民长寿。
- 10. 保护环境不受污染是人类的责任。
- 11. 人们常说中国的自然资源丰富。
- 12. 不容否认,中国的经济正在迅速发展。
- 13. 进入大学后, 我们必须使自己尽快适应大学里的环境。
- 14. 如果有足够的人力和资源, 我们的目标一定能实现。
- 15. 论实际用途,没有哪个计算机网络能比得上国际互联网。
- 16. 因为我们的产品在国内外声誉颇佳, 所以产品需求量逐年增加。
- 17. 他赞成采取严格的措施来控制污染。
- 18. 我刚从大学毕业、正在找一份有兴趣的、报酬较高的工作。
- 19. 本书是为了帮助学习者用英语准确书写正规业务信函而设计。
- 20. 建议你限制食物中的脂肪含量。
- 21. 尽管中国在过去的 10 年取得了伟大的成就, 但还有很多问题等待解决。
- 22. 就你的知识和经验而言, 你很适合做这个工作。
- 23. 你可以借这本书,条件是不要把它借给别人。
- 24. 我认为本计划的长远利益能够大大改变地球上每个人的生活状况。
- 25. 让我们为远道而来的客人干杯。
- 26. 我代表本公司请您参加今晚七点的晚宴,希望您能光临。

- 27. 如果您能让我参观故宫, 我将不胜感激。
- 28. 本文阐述了英国西南部从国有化时期到目前为止的分配制度的演变。
- 29. 这次实验的结果是发现了一种治疗癌症的新方法。
- 30. 我们强调国际贸易不应该是单方面的。
- 31. 本公司专门从事纺织品进出口业务。
- 32. 我们正在寻找一位合适的合作伙伴作为我们的海外代理商。
- 33. 面对罪犯, 他表现出很大的勇气。
- 34. 一个人读的书越多,知识就越多。
- 35. 我希望您能接受我们的邀请,并盼望在上海和您见面。
- 36. 对于这个问题他们似乎已取得了一致意见。
- 37. 吸烟对人体健康非常有害,每年吸烟致死的人数是车祸致死人数的7倍。
- 38. 她除了聪明之外,还很勤奋。
- 39. 作者根据自己对大自然的观察进行了详尽的描述。
- 40. 昨天晚上他马上就睡着了, 他一定是非常疲劳。
- 41. 由于我还在熟悉这项工作,所以我有很多东西要请教我的老板。
- 42. 是我们的所为和所不为决定着我们的未来。
- 43. 众所周知,钻石是最坚硬的物质。
- 44. 请把你要的东西清理出来并把其余的全扔掉。
- 45. 这本书的价钱要比预计的稍高一些。
- 46. 这些图案十分受青年人欢迎。
- 47. 他不写了, 因为他的笔没有墨水了。
- 48. 有经验的人能立即辨别出哪个是真的。
- 49. 按传统,中国青年在长大成家之前一直与父母同住。
- 50. 所有老师都很关心我学习方面的进步。
- 51. 这个组分成了两部分, 因为太大了。
- 52. 他们计划扩展他们在这个领域的研究。
- 53. 卫星不仅能传送电视广播, 而且能够传送电话。
- 54. 从理论上讲,每个人都可以接受教育。
- 55. 你应该按医生的指导去服用这种药。
- 56. 计算机系统可以同时传送声音和图像。
- 57. 是现代技术使我们走向成功。
- 58. 如果形势变坏,可能出现严重问题。
- 59. 汽车是由许多不同的零件构成的。
- 60. 那个逃跑的囚犯仍然逍遥法外。
- 61. 这个病人应该与其他病人隔离开。

- 62. 成功属于那些努力工作的人。
- 63. 相互理解对于友谊是至关重要的。
- 64. 世界上没有完全相同的两片树叶。
- 65. 我说他们是朋友,并不是指他们什么都分享。
- 66. 到了那个国家后,他发现几乎没有什么场合可以说汉语。
- 67. 我还没来得及拦住他, 他就向大家宣布了这个消息。
- 68. 中美已经建立了外交关系。
- 69. 好的建议、谁来提都无关紧要。
- 70. 他只有全神贯注地工作,才能忘记苦恼。
- 71. 许多商店开展"买一赠一"活动。
- 72. 他不来信,我也不会给他写信。
- 73. 尽管有一些困难, 我们还是充满信心地继续进行试验。
- 74. 我们已起草了会议日程, 想听听您的意见。
- 75. 有些人认为男孩考试成绩总是比女孩好,然而,事实并非如此。

二、答案部分

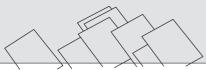
- 1. It is estimated that the project has cost \$100,000.
- 2. Given the present financial situation, it is inevitable that the US. dollar will be devalued.
- 3. We have to postpone our appointment from 8 am to 10 am.
- 4. Eco Net was designed for organizations and individuals working on environmental preservation.
- It seems that, viewed in terms of intellect, the computer should be set well above plants and most animals.
- 6. We should never isolate ourselves from the masses.
- 7. He has passed the national CET-4 not because he has a good luck but because he has been working hard.
- 8. His boss exerted pressure on him and asked him to increase the output at all costs.
- 9. Statistical studies have long shown that people who don't smoke live longer than people who do.
- 10. It is up to man to preserve the environment from being polluted.
- 11. It is often said that China is rich in natural resources.
- 12. There is no denying that China's economy is rapidly developing.
- 13. After entering college, we must adapt ourselves to the new environment as soon as possible.
- 14. Given enough manpower and financial support, our goal can certainly be attained.
- 15. No computer network is comparable to Internet for practical applications.
- 16. As our products have a good reputation both at home and abroad, their demand is increasing year by year.

- 17. He agrees to take strict measures to control pollution.
- 18. I've just graduated from college, and I'm looking for an interesting and well-paid job.
- 19. This book is designed to help the learners write formal business letters in English with accuracy.
- 20. It is recommended that the amount of fat in your food be limited.
- 21. Despite the great achievement made by China over the past decade, many problems remain to be solved.
- 22. As far as your knowledge and experience are concerned, you are very suitable for the job.
- 23. You can borrow the book on condition that you don't lend it to others.
- 24. I think the long-range benefits of the program can drastically change the living conditions for everyone on earth.
- 25. Let's drink a toast for our guests coming from afar.
- 26. On behalf of my company I'd like to invite you to the dinner party to be held at seven.
- 27. I'd appreciate it if you could arrange a visit to the Forbidden City for me.
- 28. This paper covers the development of the distribution system in the southwest of English from nationalization up to the present time.
- 29. This experiment resulted in the discovery of a new cure for cancer.
- 30. We insist that international trade should not be a one-way street.
- 31. This corporation is specialized in handling the import and export business of textiles.
- 32. We're looking for an appropriate partner to be our overseas agent.
- 33. Facing the criminal, he behaved with great courage.
- 34. The more books one reads, the more knowledgeable he becomes.
- 35. I hope you could accept our invitation, and I look forward to meeting you in Shanghai.
- 36. They seemed to have reached an agreement on this issue.
- 37. Smoking is so harmful to personal health that it kills seven times as many people each year as automobile accidents.
- 38. Besides being intelligent, she is also diligent.
- 39. The author gave a detailed description based on his personal observation of nature.
- 40. He fell asleep immediately last night; he must have been very tired.
- 41. As I was getting familiar with this job, I had much to ask my boss for advice.
- 42. It is what we do and what we do not do that determines our future.
- 43. It is well-known that diamond is the hardest substance.
- 44. Please sort out what you want and throw the rest.
- 45. The price of the book is somewhat higher than expected.
- 46. These designs are very popular with young people.
- 47. He stopped writing because his pen had run out of ink.

- 48. Experienced people can tell which one is real immediately.
- 49. Traditionally, Chinese young people live with their parents until they grow up and marry.
- 50. All teachers care for my progress in my study.
- 51. This group was spilt into two because it was too large.
- 52. They plan to extend their research in this field.
- 53. Satellites are capable of transmitting not only television broadcasts, but also telephone calls.
- 54. In theory, everyone has access to education.
- 55. You should follow the doctor's instruction on how to take the medicine.
- 56. The computer system is able to transmit sounds as well as pictures.
- 57. It is the modern technology that leads us to success.
- 58. If the situation goes worse, a serious problem may come up.
- 59. A car is made up of many different parts.
- 60. The escaped prisoner is still at large.
- 61. This patient should be isolated from other patients.
- 62. Success belongs to those who apply themselves to work.
- 63. Mutual understanding is of importance to friendship.
- 64. There are no two leaves which are the same in the world.
- 65. When I say they are friends, I don't mean they share everything.
- 66. When he arrived at that country, he found that there is little occasion to speak Chinese.
- 67. Before I could stop him, he shouted the news to everyone.
- 68. Diplomatic relation has been established between China and the United States.
- 69. If the suggestion is advisable, it doesn't matter who gives it.
- 70. Only by focusing on work could he forget his troubles.
- 71. Many departments provide service of "Buy One, Get One Free".
- 72. I won't write to him unless he writes first.
- 73. In spite of some difficulties, we still carry on our experiment with confidence.
- 74. We've drawn up an agenda for the meeting and we'd like to have your comments on it.
- 75. Some people think that boys' performance on test is always better than girls'. That is not necessarily the case, however.

第三章

英译汉专项练习



一、练习题部分

- 1. Many of them have already turned to medicines to fight against sleeplessness and fear about the future, two of the signs of long-term stress and depression.
- 2. If doctors refused prescriptions more often and discouraged patients with minor illnesses from visiting the doctors, the country would have more money to spend on improving leisure facilities and adult education.
- Recent survey showed that in the last five years the percentage of wives aged 25 to 29 who did not want children had almost doubled.
- 4. There are men who complain about being caught in a traffic jam for hours on their way home to their five kids but can't make the association between the children and the traffic jam.
- 5. We are keeping your letter on file and will write you later about how we could arrange to handle this business on a credit basis that would be satisfactory to all concerned.
- 6. The second reason cars are popular is the fact that the United States never really developed an efficient and inexpensive form of public transportation.
- 7. A car gives them the freedom to schedule their own time. And this is the freedom that Americans want most to have.
- 8. He had to guit the position and went into exile, having been deprived of his power.
- 9. Order is order, we cannot complain, we cannot bargain, we cannot question and we cannot suggest changes.
- 10. I'll be very pleased to hear from you at an early date and possibly, to save time, with all particulars, which will all have my immediate attention.
- 11. So sure of this were the owners that they provided lifeboats for only 950 of its 2, 200 passengers.
- 12. Panic increased the number of casualties as people jumped into the water or fought to be among the few to board the lifeboats.
- 13. It used to be that all of America's money was backed by gold, and that individuals could turn in their paper money for gold, if they wished.

- 14. Instead, it is bought and sold in a market, much like stocks, with the price changing according to politics and the economy.
- 15. When we made this inquiry to them, they admitted that they were very busy these days and some of the goods were delivered late.
- 16. The power of words, then, lies in their associations—the things they bring up before our minds.
- 17. He can convey his meaning in words which sing like music, which by their position and association can move men to tears.
- 18. The market may seem to be something abstract. But for each person of business who is making and selling something, it's very real.
- 19. It's telling you that you are using energies and resources in doing something the market doesn't want you to do.
- 20. You will be pleased to note that we are importers of bed-sheets and other textile products, and we have engaged in this particular line of business for more than twenty years.
- 21. They have designed a collection system which uses not only body heat, but the heat given off by such objects as light bulbs and refrigerators as well.
- 22. It is tempting to conclude that the hottest prospect for the Johnstown campus would be a hard-working overweight male genius.
- 23. But it is a most important factor in rocket operation and must overcome if we are to get anywhere in space or off the ground at all.
- 24. That does not mean the rocket is falling down towards the earth but that it is travelling freely in space without the aid of power, like a bicycle coasting downhill.
- 25. We are sending you under separate cover by airmail a copy of the latest catalog.
- 26. Also in Britain today it is easier for young people to commit crimes because they have more freedom to go where they like and more money to do what they like.
- 27. It is a fact that all the time children are exposed to films and reports about crime and violence.
- 28. We look forward to/are looking forward to the day when the scientists can discover more secrets of the universe.
- 29. One cannot derive all possible enjoyment from music unless he participates, so to speak, in its performance.
- 30. We must point out to you that this delay is very seriously inconveniencing us, and we ask you to give us the reason for the delay in our order.
- 31. Thus, if we want to learn to communicate well in a foreign language, we must understand the culture that gives that language meaning.
- 32. The ability and willingness to change lenses when we look at a different culture is both the

- cure and the prevention for such cultural blindness.
- 33. The scientists, however, goes one step further: he must be sure that he has a reasonable answer to his question and that his answer can be confirmed by other persons.
- 34. What works under one set of conditions at one time must work under the same conditions at other times.
- 35. Readers should understand, however, that the purpose of the book is to teach language, not to teach engineering.
- 36. They are trying to solve problems of living in space, even though they don't yet know what all of the problems will be.
- 37. For example, you would have to have a huge supply of food with you because you can't go to the supermarket when you're halfway to another planet.
- 38. Women's liberation, no doubt, has something to do with this new situation; difficult economic times have also led to the increase in female's taking part in the labor force.
- 39. The fact that more women are working has something to do with male-female relationship.
- 40. We are glad to inform you the goods were sent by train on 19th November, and I think you'll get them very soon.
- 41. It may be said that we think with our muscles in somewhat the same way that we listen to music with our bodies.
- 42. Few people can listen to music that is more or less familiar without moving their body or, more specifically, some part of their body.
- 43. Life really should be one long journey of joy for children born with a world of wealth at their feet.
- 44. Today's wealthy parents perhaps realize their riches can be more of a heavy load than happiness to their children.
- 45. However, since an argument over this small matter is potentially detrimental to our mutual business, we have decided to accept your claim out of good faith.
- 46. In some ways the employment interview is like a persuasive speech because the applicant (interviewee) seeks to persuade the employer (interviewer) to employ him or her.
- 47. Students who miss classes unnecessarily are hurting more than themselves. They are undermining what colleges and universities are all about.
- 48. But what accounts for frequent cutting where the teacher tries to make the material interesting, knows the students by names, and approaches them with respect and help?
- 49. A green revolution has been taking place in the countryside, but so quietly has it been carried out, and with so little fuss, that many people are unaware of what has been achieved.
- 50. Country parks come somewhat between the two, with the accent on leisure rather than

conservation.

- 51. Thus, marriage remains by far the preferred way of life for the vast majority of people in our society.
- 52. These are enormous changes from the traditional nuclear family. But even so, even in the midst of all this, there remains one constant: most Americans spend most of their adult lives married.
- 53. In popular usage it is defined as the distribution and sale of goods, the word "distribution" being understood in a broader sense than the technical economic one.
- 54. Nevertheless, we would prefer handling lower quality goods if we could get a lower price. Our customers do not demand the standard of quality that you put into your equipment.
- 55. In checking our books, we find that you have purchased from us twice as much the first three months of this year as you did in the first three months of last year.
- 56. In the international market, goods on sale come from different countries and suppliers are always facing keen competition. Under such circumstances, they will try everything possible to familiarize themselves with the market conditions.
- 57. The Chinese Export Commodities Fairs and some other fairs of similar nature as well as visits of foreign businessmen provide us with such opportunities.
- 58. Unfortunately, statistics show that it really can happen to you and, if you live in a large city, you run twice the risk of being a victim.
- 59. It quite simply indicates to unwelcome visitors that yours is one house they will not break into easily, so they carry on to an unprotected house where their job is made a lot of easy.
- 60. Could you please supply us with the specifications, price, delivery and other relevant information so that we could further evaluate this product?
- 61. Even the busiest executives always take extra time to be polite and offer refreshments (茶点).
- 62. There is vagueness in doing business in the Middle East which will puzzle a newcomer.
- 63. Sometimes achievers may lose their jobs, get rejected, watch their companies fail or see their ideals flounder.
- 64. What truly sets them apart is their willingness to keep putting one step in front of the other—no matter how rough the terrain.
- 65. Complaining is usually most effective when it is done politely but firmly, and especially when the consumer can demonstrate what is wrong with the item in question.
- 66. British families generally buy a newspaper every morning and frequently take two or three on Sundays, but the vast circulation figures obtained are not only due to the Englishman's thirst for news.

- 67. A newspaper can sometimes persuade the council to take action to provide better shopping facilities, improve transport in the area and preserve local monuments and places of interest.
- 68. It is natural that a tree would grow best in a climate with plenty of sunlight and rainfall.
- 69. To find out the weather of ten years ago, count the rings of a tree trunk from the outside to the inside.
- 70. Tender Forms will be available up to 4:00 pm on February 15, * * year.
- 71. Tests with artificial stars have proved that certain night-flying birds are able to follow the stars in their long-distance flights.
- 72. When the stars are hidden by clouds, they seemingly find their way by such landmarks as mountain ranges, coast lines, and river courses.
- 73. Other researches show that men are more likely to tell more serious lies, such as making a promise which they have no intention of fulfilling.
- 74. Research has also been done to the way people's behavior changes in a number of small, apparently unimportant ways when they lie.
- 75. We are now of the opinion that, given the right sales network, your products are highly marketable in China.

二、答案部分

- 1. 他们中的许多人已经开始用药物来对抗失眠,而且对未来充满担忧,这是长期压力过大、情绪低落造成的两种典型症状。
- 2. 医生们如果能更多地拒绝开处方,并劝那些病情轻微的人少去就医,国家就会有更多的钱来改善娱乐设施,提高成人教育。
- 3. 最近一项研究表明,年龄介于25岁至29岁之间的已婚妇女,不想要孩子的人几乎翻了一番。
- 4. 有些人牢骚满腹,说自己急着回家照看5个孩子却赶上交通堵塞,耽搁好几个小时,然 而从没考虑交通堵塞和孩子增多有一定联系。
- 5. 我方已将贵方来函存档,关于我方将如何以信贷方式经营此项业务,以期令各方满意, 我们将随后发函告之。
- 6. 美国从来就没有发展过什么高效廉价的公共交通服务,这成了汽车普及的第二个原因。
- 7. 汽车能让他们自由安排时间,这正是美国人最渴求的自由。
- 8. 他被剥夺了权力, 只好离职, 流落他乡。
- 9. 命令就是命令,我们不能抱怨,不能讨价还价,不能质疑,不能建议修改。
- 10. 希望能尽快收到贵方来函,另外,为了节约时间,请在信函上附上具体细节,以便我们能尽快做出安排。
- 11. 船主们对此更是深信不疑,因此,他们准备的救生艇只能容纳 2 200 个乘客中的

950人。

- 12. 恐慌增加了伤亡人数,人们纷纷跳入水中,或是争着登上救生艇。
- 13. 原先的情形是,美国的货币全部以黄金为后盾,个人只要愿意都可以把纸币兑换成黄金。
- 14. 恰恰相反, 黄金现在像股票一样在市场中买卖, 其价格随政治经济情况而变。
- 15. 我方已就此事向他们询问, 他们承认是由于他们近来业务繁忙, 把有些货物耽搁了。
- 16. 词语的力量在于其关联意义,也就是说,语言能让相关事物在我们的大脑中浮现出来。
- 17. 他用音乐一样动听的词语传情达意,这些词语以其排列方式和相关联想,有时能让人 潸然泪下。
- 18. 市场似乎只是一个抽象概念,但对于生产和销售商品的任何个人或企业来说,它都是实实在在的。
- 19. 它在告诉你其实你正耗费精力和资源生产市场上不需要的东西。
- 20. 我方是床上用品和其他纺织品进口商,从事该行业已有二十年的历史,相信贵方获悉这一情况,会满意的。
- 21. 他们设计了一种热量收集装置,不仅能收集人体散发的热量,还能收集其他物体如灯泡、冰箱等散发的热量。
- 22. (我们) 很容易得出这样的结论, 在约翰顿校园里最有前途的人可能是个刻苦工作、体重超标的男生。
- 23. 然而它是影响火箭发射的重要因素,要进入太空或离开地面必须克服它的影响。
- 24. 这并不是说火箭回落向地球,而是说火箭无须动力就可以在太空自由飞行,就像自行车顺着山坡向下滑行一样。
- 25. 另函随后寄出我方最新货物目录。
- 26. 还有,英国现在的年轻人有更多的自由去他们想去的地方,有更多的钱买他们想买的东西,因此也就更容易犯罪了。
- 27. 孩子们整天接触有关犯罪和暴力的影片和报道,这是事实。
- 28. 我们期待有一天科学家能解开更多的宇宙奥秘。
- 29. 可以说, 人们只有参与到音乐演出中, 才可能享受到音乐带来的乐趣。
- 30. 必须指出本次延误给我方造成了极大不便,请贵方说明我方订货延误的原因。
- 31. 所以如果我们想学会用一门外语进行很好地交流,我们必须了解赋予语言意义的文化。
- 32. 要完全改变或预防文化上的盲目性,我们在看待一种异域文化时就要能够并且乐意抛 开我们的偏见。
- 33. 然而,科学家可要技高一筹,他要保证他给出的问题答案不仅合理,而且经得起其他人验证。

- 34. 在一定时间一定条件下成立的事实,在其他时间只要条件相同也应成立。
- 35. 但是读者应当明白,该书讲的是语言知识而非工科知识。
- 36. 他们正在试图解决太空生活中将会遇到的问题,虽然他们现在还不完全清楚到底会遇到什么问题。
- 37. 比如, 你可能要带大量的食物, 因为在去另一个星球的途中不可能去超市购买食物。
- 38. 毫无疑问,这种新形势和妇女解放有关,同时经济上的困难也使越来越多的女性加入到劳动大军中。
- 39. 越来越多的女性成为工作族,这与男女间的关系有关。
- 40. 很高兴告之贵方货物已于11月19日用火车运出、相信不久即可到达。
- 41. 可以说我们用肌肉思考,在一定程度上,正如我们用整个身体来倾听音乐一样。
- 42. 没有几个人在听自己或多或少熟悉的音乐时不晃动身体的,或者更确切地说,晃动身体的某个部分。
- 43. 对于一出生便拥有大笔财富的孩子们来说,生活的确应该是充满无限欢乐的。
- 44. 或许今天富裕的父母们意识到他们的财富对孩子而言,与其说是一种幸福还不如说是一种负担。
- 45. 然而,为这点小事争论不休对我们共同的事业是有潜在危害的,所以,为表诚意,我 们决定接受贵方的索赔。
- 46. 从某种意义上来说求职面试像一场说服演讲, 因为求职者竭力劝说雇主雇用自己。
- 47. 那些无故缺课的学生不仅伤害了自己,而且也破坏了学校的教学。
- 48. 但是在老师尽力使教学内容生动有趣、熟知每一个学生的名字、尊重并帮助他们的同时,用什么来解释缺课现象呢?
- 49. 一场绿色革命已经在乡村地区进行,它悄无声息,不事张扬,以至于很多人不知道它 所取得的成就。
- 50. 乡村公园节于两者之间,它强调的是休闲而不是对环境的保护功能。
- 51. 因此,婚姻至今仍是我们社会中大多数人更喜欢的生活方式。
- 52. 这些是传统的核心家庭发生的巨大变化。但即使如此,这其中仍有一个不变的东西: 即大多数美国人的大部分成人生活是在婚姻中度过的。
- 53. 在通常的用法中,它被定义为货物的流通和销售,"流通"一词比在经济学术语中语义更为广泛。
- 54. 然而,如果我们能够得到较低的报价,则宁可经营质量较低一点的商品。因为我们的 顾客不要求你们符合对设备所规定的那种质量标准。
- 55. 经核查我们的账目,我们发现你们今年前三个月在我处所购买的货物是去年同期的两倍。
- 56. 在国际市场上,销售的商品来自不同的国家,供应商们总是面临激烈的竞争。在这种环境下,他们要尽一切可能熟悉市场情况。

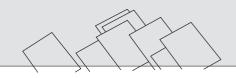
- 57. 中国出口商品交易会及其他类似交易会,还有外商的来访都为我们提供了这样的机会。
- 58. 不幸的是,统计数据表明这种事情确实会发生在你身上,如果你生活在大城市,那么你受害的概率就会翻一番。
- 59. 显然,对于不受欢迎的来访者来说,这就表明,你的房子是不会轻易被他们闯入的,于是他们继续到别处没有防范的房子去,在那儿他们盗窃起来容易得多。
- **60**. 贵方能否提供此产品的规格、价格、交付及其他相关资料以便我们能进一步评价此产品?
- 61. 即使是最繁忙的企业主管也总是会抽出点额外时间为客人提供茶点以示礼貌。
- 62. 在中东, 做生意时遇到的含糊不清的情况会令初来乍到的人感到困惑不已。
- 63. 有时候,取得辉煌成就的人会失去工作,遭到拒绝,看到自己的公司倒闭或是理想破灭。
- 64. 不论前进的道路多么艰难,他们都会有坚强的意志,脚踏实地,一步一步地前进。这正是他们的与众不同之处。
- 65. 投诉时注意礼节但又态度坚决,特别是能够指出所购买商品的缺陷,这样的投诉通常 是最有效的。
- 66. 通常,英国的家庭每天早上会买一份报纸,而周日常常买两三份。然而英国报纸如此巨大的发行量并不仅仅是由于人们渴望了解新闻消息。
- 67. 有时,报纸可以力劝议会在提供更好的购物设施、改善交通以及保护当地的碑林和名胜等方面采取行动。
- 68. 阳光充足、雨水充沛的气候会使树木枝繁叶茂,这是很自然的。
- 69. 要想知道 10 年前的天气情况,那就从外到内数一数树桩的年轮。
- 70. 递交标书的截止日期是**年2月15日下午4时。
- 71. 人工模拟星星的测试已经证明,某些夜间飞行的鸟儿长途迁徙中能够利用星星辨别方向。
- 72. 星星被云遮住后,它们好像能够利用山脊、海岸和河流等地面标志找到飞行的方向。
- 73. 另外一些研究表明, 男性更容易撒下较大的谎, 如许下自己根本无意兑现的诺言。
- 74. 对于人们撒谎时行为举止方面细微且明显无关紧要的变化也进行了研究。
- 75. 我们认为: 如果有合适的销售网络, 你们的产品完全可以在中国市场上销售。

第五部分

写作知识及练习

第一章

写作概述



英文写作是专升本英语考试的最后一项,要求考生在 30 分钟内写出一篇大约 120 词的短文,分值为 15 分。写作部分主要考查学生对英语的实际应用能力,要求考生能够根据题目要求及提示,使用正确、规范的英文书面语表达自己的意思。

写作题目的形式包括应用文写作和常见文体写作两大类,文体写作包括记叙文、说明 文和议论文;应用文写作包括一般信函、简历、通知、请柬、便条、求职信、申请信等。 在实际考试中,文体写作多以标题作文或情景作文的形式出现,应用文写作以信函写作 为主。

作文采用总体评分(Global Marking)法,即阅卷人员根据总体印象给出奖励分,而非按照语言点的错误数目扣分。对作文优劣的评判来自内容和语言两个方面,作文是否切题,思想表达是否充分,语言运用是否得体,文体格式是否正确都会决定写作的最终成绩。此外,在实际阅卷过程中,卷面的整体安排、整洁与否也会对写作成绩造成一定影响。

评分标准:

14~12分: 切题。表达思想清楚,连贯性好。基本上无语言错误,仅有个别小错。字数不足应酌情扣分。

- 11~9分: 切题。表达思想清楚,文字连贯,但有少量语言错误。
- 8~6分:基本切题。有些地方表达思想不够清楚,文字勉强连贯;语言错误相当多, 其中有一些是严重错误。
 - 5~3分:基本切题。表达思想不清楚,连贯性差。有较多的严重语言错误。
 - 2分:条理不清,思路紊乱,语言支离破碎或部分句子均有错误,且多数为严重错误。 因此,考生在处理写作部分时要做到:

1. 审题:根据文章大意判断作文题型。

常见题型:现象解释型;对比选择型;问题解决型;问题解决型;观点论证型;应用文。

2. 方法:三段式。

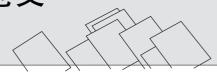
由于作文的评分采用 Global Marking 的方式,因此文章的条理性、结构的完整性、论证的逻辑性及内容的针对性对于一篇文章得分的高低至关重要。为体现文章的条理性、完成性、逻辑性的有效方法通常采用三段式:引言段、正文和结尾段。

三段式作文的结构安排:

| ————————————————————————————————————— | 第一段 | 第二段 | 第三段 |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|----------------|
| 应用文 | 描述事实 | 阐述原因 | 表明观点或提出建议 |
| 现象解释型 | 描述现象 | 说明现象产生的原因 | 表明个人态度或阐述个人做法 |
| 问题解决型 | 提出问题 | 分析问题,给出解决方案 | 表明个人态度或阐述个人做法 |
| 对比选择型 | 表明一方或双方 由的观点及理由 | 表明另一方的观点及理由,指 出双方观点不足之处及理由 | 表明个人态度或阐述个人做法 |
| 观点论证型 | 提出论点 | 例证论点 | 得出结论或表明个人看法或做法 |

第二章

应用文写作及范文



一、写作中常见的应用文:

信函(感谢信、道歉信、推荐信、投诉信、求职信、慰问信、介绍信及祝贺信等)、通知、广告、海报、个人简历、申请表、名片、贺卡、电话留言及便条等。

- 1. 信函是所有的普通书信,格式包括:时间(右上角,常按"月-日,年")、称呼(顶格左上角)、正文(起行空2~3个字母)、落款(右下角)、署名(在落款行下)。要注意格式准确,按照试题要求写而且书写要工整,署名别署本人姓名。正文部分切忌透露任何让人一看便知考生真实情况的信息。此外,正文一定要体现出内容的主体部分,突出其中的重点词或短语。
- 2. 通知是一种以布告的形式把事情通知有关人员。试题中的场景一般设置在学校,因此通知传达的对象往往是学生、教师等。另一种是以书信形式把事情传达给有关人员,写法与普通书信基本相同。通知由标题、正文、落款(或时间)三部分组成。标题写在正文上方正中部位,常以 NOTICE 作标题。落款即发出通知的单位和时间,写在正文右下角。书写正文应注意几点:内容简洁清楚;多采用被动语态,人称用第三人称;正文开头常以"ATTENTION"字样或以"Attention, please"开头。
- 3. 广告在市场经济中起着越来越重要的作用。它既是企业开拓市场的一项重要策略,也是人们日常生活的一个丰富内容。广告的种类很多,其分类方式也不同。广告的文字部分一般由5部分内容组成:(1)标题、(2)正文、(3)口号、(4)附文、(5)插图。广告的语言要求明快、简练、富有节奏感。
- 4. 海报是向大众告知某一事情的简短文字,通常刊登在报刊上或张贴在公共场所。海报一般涉及"主办单位、活动形式与内容、议程安排、时间和地点及参加方式"等内容。
- 5. 个人简历:通常按年月顺序书写,时间从现在向过去推移。要求简明扼要,其语言特点是省略句子的第一人称主语,用动词、动名词等并列形式来代替完整的句子。简历一般包括以下几部分:信头(Resume)、工作经历、学历、其他情况、个人情况、证明人。
- 6. 申请表也是申请信的一种形式,只是以固定的格式出现,要求考生直接将有关本人的信息填入表格中即可。
- 7. 名片通常用于社交场合,用来向他人介绍自己的姓名和身份。名片上通常印有姓名、工作单位、职务、职称、电话、地址、传真及电子邮件等个人信息。

- 8. 贺卡也是明信片的一种,种类有生日卡、圣诞卡、新年卡、结婚卡等。由于这些贺卡上均印有贺词,寄卡人只需署名即可。装贺卡的信封可封也可不封。
- 9. 电话留言及便条是一种简单的书信形式,它内容简要,文字紧凑,称呼格式化。便条多数为本人留言,或托人转交,很少用信封。常用的有请假条和留言两种,一般包括:便条日期、称呼、正文、署名四部分。

二、书信的常用格式:

(一) 称呼:

- 1. 写给机构: Dear Sir or Madam,
- 2. 写给个人: Dear Mr. Wang / Dear Bob / Dear Editors,

(二) 正文

第一段:两句左右。

第一句: 自我介绍(私人书信除外)

1. 工作人员:

I am a staff member from your company /corporation.

I am a staff member from Motorola (China) Electronics Ltd.

2. 学生:

I am a freshman/sophomore/junior/senior/undergraduate/graduate from the Department of Chinese Language and Literature of Beijing University.

第二句:写作目的:信的中心思想

I am writing the letter for purpose of resigning from my current post/position.

I am writing to inform you that I wish to request if you could help me find a potential beneficiary of Project Hope.

第二段:三句左右,叙事/观点。

第一句: 主题句,

第二句:分论点一.

第三句:分论点二。

第三段:两句左右。

第一句:表示感谢(私人建议信除外):

- 1. My appreciation to you for your generous help is beyond words.
- 2. Words fail me when I wish to express my sincere gratitude to you.
- 3. I take this opportunity to show my heartfelt appreciation for the kind assistance you render me.

第二句:期待回信:

1. I am looking forward to hearing from you soon.

- 2. I look forward to a favorable reply at your earliest convenience.
- 3. Your prompt attention to my inquiry would be highly appreciated.

(三) 落款:

- 1. 结尾客套: Yours sincerely / Yours truly,
- 2. 签名: Li Ming

三、常见体裁

(一) 求职信

写作"三步走": ① 自我介绍, ② 说明求职目的, 展示个人能力、经历及求职动机希望面试机会, ③ 表示感谢。

开头常见句式:

- 1. I am applying for the position of secretary advertised in ... 我想申请……招聘广告中的秘书一职。
- 2. I am writing in response to your advertisement in... of April 6. 我看到了 4 月 6 日贵公司……上的招聘广告,于是写信申请。
- 3. The requirement outlined in your ad in, for a general manage assistant appear to mesh almost exactly with my own. 我本人的条件与你们刊登在……上的招聘广告中所要求的总经理助理的条件完全吻合。
- 4. I think I am the right person for the job you advertised. 相信我是你们招聘职位的最佳人选。
- 5. The key strengths that I possess for success in this position include... 我能胜任此职位的能力是……

结尾开头常见句式:

- 1. I am writing this letter to recommend myself as a qualified candidate for the job of... 我认为我是……工作的合格人选,所以我写信自荐。
- 2. Should you grant me a personal interview, I would be most grateful. 如果能给我面试的机会,我将不胜感激。
- 3. Thanks for considering my application and I am looking forward to your reply. 谢谢您考虑我的申请,期待您的回信。
- 4. I have enclosed my resume. 附上简历。
- 5. I can be reached by telephone... 可以通过……电话联系到我。

Sample (1)

按照求职信的格式和要求,以李平的名义给松下公司电子部写一封 100~120 词的求

职信。内容包括如下:

- 1. 在8月6日的《北京晚报》上看到了贵公司电子部招聘业务员的广告。
- 2. 随信附上一份简历及导师的推荐信。
- 3. 我曾经在电子部工作过, 所以我熟悉各种电器。
- 4. 在假期,我曾经在多家商店做过业务员。

Words for reference: 电子部 Electronic Device Section 推荐信 reference

▶ 参考范文

Dear Sirs,

Having seen your advertisement in *Beijing Evening News* of August 6th for a salesman in the Electronic Device Department of your company, I'm very interested in the job and I feel I'm qualified to meet the requirements. Therefore, I'm enclosing a resume together with a reference from my supervisor.

As you can see, I once worked in the Electronic Department. So I am familiar with different kinds of electronic devices. I have worked more than once as a salesman in some stores during my previous vacations. Besides, I'm very patient and friendly in nature. I'm confident that I shall be suitable for the kind of work.

If you need any further information, I shall be very pleased to supply it. (I'll be very grateful if you can grant me with an interview.)

Looking forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours faithfully, Li Ping

Sample (2)

假如你是李平,九江学院商学院的大三学生,在当地一份报纸上看到一则招聘暑期兼职的工作。对此,你很有兴趣。按下列提纲写一篇求职信,要求120词左右。

- 1. 渴求工作的愿望;
- 2. 技能和经历:
- 3. 联系方式。

● 参考范文

Dear Sir/Madam, May 1, 2018

I am writing you to show my keen interest in the part-time job during summer vacation in your shop which you recently advertised in the local newspaper. I strongly believe I meet the qualification listed in your advertisement.

I was born in June, 1985 and am going to graduate from School of Business in Jiujiang University in June, 2017 with satisfactory results in all the courses. I have been doing part-time

jobs in several companies before, so I have gained much experience. Furthermore, I'm industrious, friendly and have a great sense of responsibility. I believe I am qualified for the post.

Enclosed you'll find a copy of my resume. I'm available for an interview anytime at your convenience. Or, if you are too busy these days, you can contact me at 13601869708 for further information.

Thank you for your time and consideration. I am looking forward to hearing from you.

Truly yours,

Li Ping

(二)申请信

开头常用句式:

- Your advertisement made me unable to wait to write this application for the post because I
 think I have the qualifications you are seeking.
 - 你的广告使我迫不及待写这篇申请、因为我认为我具备你所要求的资格。
- 2. I am writing to apply for the advertised post of...我写这封信是想申请……
- 3. I would like to apply for admission to your college. 我想申请进入贵校就读。
- 4. I would like to further my studies in ... Department of your honored university. 我想在贵校的……系继续学习。
- 5. I would like to apply for the scholarship that your department offers to students from other countries. 我想申请贵系向留学生提供的奖学金。

结尾常用句式:

- 1. Looking forward to your favorable reply. 期待您的回复。
- 2. I hope you will kindly send me an application form. 我希望您能寄给我一份申请表。
- 3. Thank you for considering my application and I am looking forward to hearing from you. 谢谢您考虑我的申请,我期待着您的回复。
- 4. I greatly appreciate any of your favorable consideration of my application. 我非常感谢您对我的申请给予考虑。
- 5. I would be grateful if you can grant me an early reply about the result of my application. 如果贵公司能对我的申请结果给予初步答复,我将不胜感激。

Sample (1)

假设你是高鹏,是英语系的一名新生,请你就申请助学贷款一事给学校有关部门写封申请信(A Letter of Application for a School Loan)。申请信的内容须包括以下几点:

- 1. 提出申请;
- 2. 申请的理由;
- 3. 恳请批准。

● 参考范文

To whom it may concern,

I am writing to you to apply for a school loan. As a freshman from the English Department, I have much financial difficulty in continuing my study.

There are five members in my family. My father is the only breadwinner of the whole family while my mother was laid off two years ago. My grandmother has been suffering a chronic illness for more than five years. My younger brother is now studying in a high middle school. I took part-time jobs during the summer vacation, but what I have earned is far from enough for me to pay the required tuition fees. In order to continue my study, I have to apply for a school loan.

If my request is granted, I will make good use of the money and put my heart into study. I will definitely pay back the loan according to requirements. I hope that you will consider my application.

Looking forward to your reply.

Yours sincerely,

Gao Peng



假设你是周凯,是物理系的一名新生,请你就申请贷款一事给学校有关部门写封申请信, 内容包括:

- 1. 提出申请;
- 2. 申请理由;
- 3. 恳请批准。

▶ 参考范文

Dear Sir,

I am writing to apply for a scholarship in your university in order that I could pursue my graduate study for the Master's Degree (硕士学位) in your university. Here is my personal information for you.

I was born in 1988 in Shanghai. I was admitted to the Physics Department in 2008 and will graduate this June. During my four academic years, besides my major, I also take such selective courses as chemistry, computer and mathematics. I have made straight A grades on all required subjects. Moreover, I have passed CET-6 and kept on learning English all these years. So I don't think I will have many problems in language during my study in your country.

If my application could be taken into favorable consideration, I would be most grateful. And

I am looking forward to your early reply.

Enclosed are my score reports (成绩单) on all subjects and two recommendations (推荐信).

Sincerely yours,

Zhou Kai

(三) 投诉信

开头常用句式:

- 1. I am writing to complain about/that...我写信是为了投诉……
- 2. I am writing to express my concern/dissatisfaction/disappointment about... 我写这封信是为了表达我对……的关心/不满/失望。
- 3. I am writing to inform you that I am dissatisfied with your... 我写信是为了告诉你,我对你的……表示不满。
- 4. I am most reluctant to complain, but... 我最不愿意抱怨, 但是……

结尾常用句式:

- 1. I trust you will take my complaints seriously and... 我相信你会认真对待我的投诉……
- 2. I will appreciate it very much if you could... 如果你能·······我将非常感谢。
- 3. I would be perfectly satisfied if you can kindly... 如果您能……我将非常满意。
- 4. I would like to have this matter settled by the end of ... 我希望这件事能在…… (时间) 妥善解决。
- 5. I would be grateful / appreciate it if you could ... 如果你能……我将不胜感激。

Sample (1)

王红女士给某商店经理写信投诉该店的营业员服务态度差。昨天她赶上一场大雨,正 巧路过此店,便进店来到卖戒指的柜台,要求看一枚戒指,但营业员 (1号)服务态度不 好,拒绝接待。

时间: 20 * * 年 3 月 1 日

● 参考范文

Dear Mr. Manager,

I'm writing to complain about the poor service in your store. Yesterday I was caught in a

heavy shower and then entered your shop. When I found a gold ring which I liked, I asked a lady assistant (No. 1) to show me the ring but she refused to serve me. Evidently she thought I was not the one who could afford it, for I was not very-dressed.

I choose to complain to you because I'm sure you will be able to make her understand how to serve as a shop assistant.

Sample (2)

李平给某超市经理写信投诉该超市的某一员工工作态度差。上周,她在该超市购买了一个台灯,回家两天后发现台灯坏了。她回到超市进行退换,却被该员工拒绝。

▶ 参考范文

Dear Sir,

I am writing to draw your attention to the most undesirable attitude and manner of a particular member of your staff. A week ago, I bought a desk lamp in the electric appliances department of your supermarket last week, but when I went back home, it simply stopped working after two days. So I went back to the center of refund and exchange yesterday afternoon.

When I told what had happened to the young lady in charge, and asked for refund or exchange, she was so rude that that she interrupted me continually. Later she even said it was my fault and refused to listen to me any longer.

I strongly suggest that that lady should be instructed on the proper manner towards customers. I hope you can attach importance to this matter, and help settle it as soon as possible.

Yours sincerely,

Li Ping

(四)致歉信

开头常用句式:

- 1. I am writing this letter to express my regret...我写这封信是为了表达我对……的遗憾。
- 2. I am writing to apologize for ...我写信是为……道歉。
- 3. I would like to give you my apology for...我想因为……向你道歉。
- 4. I am very sorry to say that ...我很抱歉地说……
- 5. Please accept my sincere apology for...请接受我真诚的道歉。

结尾常用句式:

- 1. Once again, I am sorry for any inconvenience caused. 再一次, 我为给您带来的不便表示歉意。
- 2. Please allow me to say sorry again. 请允许我再次表示歉意。
- 3. Hope you can accept my apologies and understand my situation. 希望你能接受我的道歉并理解我的处境。

- 4. I sincerely hope that you will be able to think in my position and accept my apologies. 我真诚地希望您能够考虑我的立场并接受我的道歉。
- 5. I am sorry that I can't... and trust that you will be able to understand. 很抱歉,我不能……相信你能理解。

Sample (1)

Directions: You are invited to a dinner at a friend's house, but you are not able to attend because of the preparation for a coming examination. Write a letter to your friends to express your apology, explain your reason, and suggest a meeting at another tune.

Do not sign your own name at the end of the letter. Use "Li Ming" instead.

Do not write the address.

○ 参考范文

Dear Anne,

Thank you for your invitation to dinner at your home tomorrow evening. Unfortunately, it is much to my regret that I cannot join you and your family, because I will be fully occupied then for an important exam coming the day after tomorrow. I feel terribly sorry for missing the chance of such a happy get-together, and I hope that all of you enjoy a good tune. Is it possible for you and me to have a private meeting afterward? If so, please don't hesitate to drop me a line about your preferable date. I do long for a pleasant chat with you.

Please allow me to say sorry again.

Yours sincerely, Li Ming

Sample (2)

Directions: Write a reply letter to the customer who complained about the poor service in your store. Express your apology and explain the reason.

▶ 参考范文

Dear Mrs. Robinson,

Thank you for your letter of June 17th, complaining about the conduct of our employees.

We have investigated the matter already and the person concerned (有关人士) will be severely punished. Please accept our sincere apologies for this unhappy experience.

Thank you also for bringing this matter to our attention. We place great importance on conduct of our employees and your complaint will give us the opportunity to remedy any problem that may exist. We assure (句……保证) you that such a matter will never happen again. You

will be sure to find the level of our service will be greatly improved in the days to come.

Yours sincerely, Mike Collins

(五)感谢信

开头常用句式:

- 1. I am writing to extend my sincere gratitude for ... 我写这封信是为了表达我对……的真挚感谢。
- 2. I am writing to express my thanks / appreciation for ... 我写这封信是为了表达我对……的谢意。
- 3. I would like to convey in this letter my heartfelt thanks to you for... 在这封信中, 我要为……向您表示衷心的感谢。
- 4. I feel deeply indebted to you and I really don't know how to thank you enough for your help. 我对你深表感激,我真的不知道该如何感谢你的帮助。

结尾常用句式:

- 1. Please accept my thanks. 请接受我的谢意。
- 2. I must thank you again for your generous help. 我必须再次感谢你的慷慨相助。
- 3. I am most grateful for your selfless donation. 我非常感谢您无私的捐助。
- 4. My true gratitude is beyond my words. 我的感激之情难以言表。
- 5. I feel most obliged to thank you once more. 我再次感谢你。

Sample (1)

你(Li Yuan)得到一位外国朋友(Mr. John)的帮助,在英语学习上取得很大进步,并在英语竞赛中取得第一名的好成绩。写一封信表示感谢。内容包括:

- 1. 表示感谢;
- 2. 说明感谢原因;
- 3. 问候对方。

● 参考范文

Dear Mr. John.

I am writing to show my thanks to you. You tutored me in my spoken English before you went to Beijing. With your help I made such rapid progress that I won the first place in the Spoken English Competition of the city. My achievement is owed to your help. Thank you very much.

How are things going with you in Beijing? I have heard that you and your wife will pay a visit to my school when you are back. I am very glad at the news. In that case we can see each other again. I am looking forward to your coming.

I am sending you a telescope as a small gift. I hope you will like it.

All the best!

Yours, Li Yuan

Sample (2)

你(Zhang Ying)得到梁教授的帮助,成功考入悉尼大学化学系。写一封信表示感谢。内容包括:

- 1. 表示感谢;
- 2. 说明原因:
- 3. 问候对方。

▶ 参考范文

Dear Professor Liang,

I am writing to you to extend my gratitude to you because with your help I am now a student of Chemistry Department of Sydney University.

Last July, when I applied to become a graduate student of Sydney University, you really gave me a lot of valuable help. You not only wrote a recommendation for me to Professor Wells who works in the Sydney University but also gave me careful and patient instruction on how to fill the application forms and write the application letters.

It is your unreserved help that enables me to obtain this splendid opportunity of further education. For the following two years I will study hard to reciprocate your sincere help and expectations with excellent grades.

Yours truly, Zhang Ying

(六)邀请信

开头常用句式:

- 1. I am writing to invite you to...我写信是想邀请你……
- 2. I would like to see your presence at... 我希望看到你在……现场
- 3. I think it would be a good idea if you could participate in... 我想如果你能参加·····的话,那是个好主意。
- 4. I wonder if you could come...我想知道你是否能来……

结尾常用句式:

- My family and I would feel honored if you could come. 如果你能来,我和我的家人会感到很荣幸。
- 2. We would be looking forward to your participation in the party. 我们期待着你来参加晚会。
- 3. Would you please drop me a line to let me know if you can come?

你能给我写信告诉我你是否能来吗?

4. I really hope you can make it. 我真的希望你能来。

Sample (1)

你(Li Yuan)的班级即将组织一次郊游(picnic),请你给你的外籍教师(Steve)写封信,内容包括:

- 1. 邀请他参加此项活动:
- 2. 介绍活动的具体安排及内容 (如:时间、地点等);
- 3. 告知需要做的准备(如:着装、自备午餐等);
- 4. 希望他参加并尽快给予答复。

▶ 参考范文

Dear Ms. Steve,

I'm Li Yuan, Monitor of Class One, Grade Three. Our class will go for an outing to Jingyuetan National Forest Park next Tuesday. I'm writing to invite you to join us. We'll meet at the gate of our school at 8:00 am to take a bus. After we reach the park, we are going to climb the mountain, go hiking and have a picnic in the forest. Also, we will take boats to enjoy its natural scenery. We will be back at school at about 5:00 pm. I am sure that it will be a very wonderful trip and we all hope that you will accept our invitation.

Looking forward to your reply.

Yours truly, Li Yuan

Sample (2)

你(Wang Lin)的班级将进行毕业典礼,请给Gordon教授写封信,内容包括:

- 1. 邀请他参加你们的毕业典礼;
- 2. 典礼的时间、地点:
- 3. 告知需要做的准备:
- 4. 表示欢迎。

▶ 参考范文

Dear Professor Gordon,

On behalf of the organization committee of the graduation ceremony and all the graduates of this year, I have the honor to invite you to (attend) our graduation ceremony on Thursday, June 15th at 2:00 pm in the hall of our university.

You are sincerely invited to attend the ceremony as our honored guest and we would like you to

make a five-minute speech to give our students encouragement and suggestions for their future work.

We look forward to a reply at your earliest convenience and we would be particularly honored by your distinguished presence at the ceremony.

> Yours respectfully, Wang Lin

Chairman of Organization Committee of the Graduation Ceremony

(七)建议信

开头常用句式:

- 1. I am writing in reply to...我写信是为了答复……
- 2. I would like to suggest that...我想建议……
- 3. I am writing with my suggestion/proposal about... 我写信是关于……的建议/建议。
- 4. I am writing to express my views concerning...我写信是为了表达我对……的看法。

结尾常用句式:

- 1. I hope you will find these suggestions/recommendations. 我希望你能找到这些建议。
- 2. I would be ready to discuss this matter to further details. 我愿意就此问题进一步讨论。



John 向你(Li Ming)询问他是学习历史还是计算机科学,请你给出合理的建议。

▶ 参考范文

Dear John.

You asked for advice concerning whether you should study history or computer science at university. I will try making some suggestions.

University is preparation for your career. You should consider studying a subject which will best equip you to earn a living. Computer science offers more job opportunities than history. We are now in a high-tech age. For the foreseeable future, it would be necessary for everyone to be equipped with computer skills merely to earn a living.

Of course, you don't have to devote all your time at university to studying computers and nothing else. I would recommend that you continue reading of history in your spare time. That way, you will find that your leisure hours are enriched while you prepare yourself for a worthwhile career in computer science.

Whatever you decide to do, good luck with your studies!

Yours sincerely,

Li Ming

(八) 祝贺信

常用句式:

- 1. Heartfelt congratulations on... 真心祝贺……
- 2. Congratulations, all of us feel proud of your remarkable achievements! 祝贺你,我们都为你所取得的巨大成就感到骄傲。
- 3. I am so happy to hear that...听到……我真的非常高兴。
- 4. I write to congratulate you upon...我写信来祝贺你……
- 5. I wish you still further success! 预祝你取得更大的成功!
- 6. Please accept our sincerest congratulations and very best wishes for all the good future. 谨向你表示由衷的祝贺和美好的祝福。
- 7. Congratulations to you on being awarded the prize / getting the scholarship. 祝贺你荣获此奖项/获得奖学金。
- 8. May lasting happiness and joy be yours/with you forever. 愿幸福和欢乐永远伴随你!

Sample (1)

请以 Li Ming 的名义向 White 先生写一封祝贺信。祝贺他从斯坦福大学毕业,并进入微软公司工作。

▶ 参考范文

Dear Mr. White,

I am much delighted to hear that you have just graduated from Stanford University with honors and entered the Microsoft Corporation. This is a special moment for you and all the friends and relatives, and I want to share the happiness just the same. After years of hard and creative work and study, you will always be proud of those academic years.

I believe your graduation will be a new beginning, a chance for you to embrace a new and broader future. Knowledge and skills acquired in college will not only help you understand what's happening around you, but also help you make right decisions.

I wish you good luck in the pursuit of a brilliant career.

Sincerely yours,

Li Ming

Sample (2)

假如你是 Li Ping, 你的好友 Helen 的生日马上到了,请写封信祝贺她生日快乐。

▶ 参考范文

Dear Helen,

I remember all the time that your birthday is around the corner (is approaching). I am sure all the friends and relatives are planning a grand birthday party and happy surprises for you. May I join them in wishing you a happy birthday?

How I wish I could stretch out my hand to shake with you, but you are so far away on the other side of the globe. Do you know how much I cherish our friendship during the past ten years, and how much I anticipate maintaining it for the years to come?

I write this letter to send my heartiest congratulations. I am sure that your birthday party will be a great success and I wish you many happy returns.

Sincerely yours,

Li Ping

(九)慰问信

常用句式:

- 1. We are looking forward to / hoping and praying for your speedy and full recovery. 我们希望/祈祷你能很快地完全康复。
- 2. Your many friends are hoping for your quick return to health / early recovery /rapid recovery. 你的诸位好友真心希望你早日康复。
- 3. We are very sorry to learn of.... /that...我们非常遗憾地得知......
- 4. I just heard that you were sick last week. 我刚刚得知上个星期你生病了。
- 5. I was deeply concerned when I learned that...当我听说……我非常担心。
- 6. I wish you a complete speedy recovery. 我希望你能很快康复。
- 7. Please extend our deep sympathy to your family. 请向你的家人转达我们最深切的同情。
- 8. I just wanted to let you know how concerned we are. 我只想让你知道我们是多么担忧。
- 9. If there is anything I can do to help you, please let me know. 如果需要我的帮助,请告知。

Sample (1)

假如你是 Wang Liping, 你的好友 Jason 昨天因车祸受伤。请写一封信, 对他表示慰问。

● 参考范文

Dear Jason,

The news of your accident just reached me this morning. I'm greatly shocked to learn that you were knocked down by a car yesterday.

The good news about it is that your mother told me that you are progressing nicely. I hope that you are doing well after the operation, and that you'll be out of the hospital in about a week.

If there is anything I can do to help you, please don't hesitate to let me know.

Good wishes for your rapid recovery!

Yours sincerely,
Wang Liping

Sample (2)

你是 Li Ming, 你的同学 Jack 因流感住院。请写一封信,对他表示慰问。

▶ 参考范文

Dear Jack,

I am shocked to hear that you have a severe influenza and now are in hospital. I get this news from your mother and I know you must be absent for half a month from the classes. Do be careful while you are ill.

Don't worry about your lesson and I am willing to help you learn it when you return. We are best friends so I will never allow you to fall behind. You can watch television or listen to radio programs to help pass the time. I do hope that I can see you soon and bring you some funny cartoons.

If there is anything you need me to do, just let me know. We all miss you and shall be happy when you are back.

Yours truly, Li Ming

(十)通知

通知一般至少包含以下几部分内容:时间、地点、活动和其他细节。 常用结构:

1. 时间的表示方法 (钟点/星期/年/月/日)

There will be a talk on the education of high school in America from 2:00 pm to 4:30 pm on February 27th in Room 105.

The students' Union has decided to organize a music festival on Friday, March 6.

2. 地点的表示方法

in Room 8, in the meeting room, in the stadium, in the teachers' office, in the lab, at the Friendship Theater, at the school gate, on the farm, on the second floor.

常用句式:

- 1. There will be a lecture on American Culture... 将会有一场关于美国文化的讲座
- 2. The Students' Union has decided to hold a meeting. Those who are interested in it, please ... 学生会决定召开一次会议。那些对它感兴趣的人、请……
- 3. All the students are expected to attend it. 所有的学生都要参加。
- 4. Make sure that you .../ Be sure to...确保你……/一定要……
- 5. Please remember to.../ Don't forget to...请记住……/不要忘记……
- 6. Please attend it on time. 请准时参加。



英语演讲比赛

为丰富课外活动,提高学生英语口语能力,学生会定于下周六下午举办全校演讲比 赛。凡愿参加者可在下周三以前向本班班长报名。有3名外教应邀担任裁判。前10名将 获得奖品,以资鼓励。欢迎光临,为参赛者加油助威。

> 校学生会 6月4日

参考范文

English-speaking Contest

In order to carry out after-class activities and improve the students' ability to speak English, an English-speaking contest will be held on Saturday afternoon next week under the auspices of the Students' Union. Those who are willing to take part in the contest may sign up with the monitor before Wednesday next week. Three foreign teachers have been invited to work as judges. The first ten winners will be given awards as an encouragement. All are welcome to be present at the contest to cheer the contestants.

(十一)广告 Sample

本翻译服务中心有一批有经验的专业翻译人员组成,聘请数名国内知名的专家教授为

顾问,以确保提供高质量的服务。

本中心提供下列服务项目:各种语言的技术与非技术类文献资料翻译和出版,印刷及广告业务。

主要服务特色:质量优等、校对准确、交稿及时、严格保密、价格合理。

● 参考范文

Translation Service Center

A working team of well-experienced and professional translation together with a unique advisory board formed by noted professors and experts ensures the super quality of our service.

We provide the following services:

- 1. Multilingual translation of technical and non-technical literature;
- 2. Publishing, printing and advertising.

Chief Characteristics: 1. Super quality

- 2. Accurate proofreading
- 3. Prompt delivery
- 4. Strict confidentiality
- 5. Reasonable price

第三章

常见文体写作及范文

一、现象解释型写作模板

现象解释型模板一

| Topic sentence | 信息提示 |
|---|--|
| 1 has become a common part of people's life. | 1. 空格内用概括性的词语填写最近出现的总体 |
| 2. And has always aroused the greatest concern. | 现象。 |
| 3. What impresses us most is | 2. 空格内填写题目要去讨论的具体现象。 |
| 4. The reasons are varied. | 3. 现象的具体表现。 |
| | 4. 过渡句,填现象或现象带来的后果,为下文分 |
| | 析其产生的原因做铺垫。 |
| 5. Among the various reasons, plays an important role. | 5. 原因之一。 6. 具体说明原因一。 |
| 6. That is to say, | 7. 原因二。 |
| 7. What is more, | 7. |
| 8. For example, | 0. T 1100 71/2/ = 0 |
| 9. When talking about, 10. On the one hand, 11. On the other hand, 12. In brief, | 9. 空格一填写作者要讨论的现象,空格二填写作者的看法。 10. 支持看法的理由一或说明看法的第一个方面。 11. 理由二或第二个方面。 12. 总结。 |
| 现象解释型模板二 | |
| We have witnessed According to, And Many reasons contribute to | 空格内填写最近出现的总体现象。 空格一根据题目填空,空格二内填写现象的具体表现一。 现象的具体表现二。 过渡句,填现象或现象带来的后果,为下文分析其产生的原因做铺垫。 |
| To begin with, Moreover, | 5. 原因一。 |
| 7. In addition, | 7. 原因三。 |
| 8. As a result, | 8. 原因导致的结果。 |

(续)

| 9. As to me, 10. First of all, 11. Besides, 12. To conclude, | 9. 空格内填写作者对现象的看法。10. 支持看法的理由一。11. 理由二。12. 总结。 |
|---|---|
| 现象解释型模板三 | |
| 1 has been brought into focus. 2. Nowadays, 3. In addition, 4. Many reasons contribute to | 空格内填最近出现的总体现象。 空格内填现象的具体表现一。 现象的具体表现二。 过渡句过渡到分析原因。 |
| Generally speaking, First of all, Moreover, Therefore, | 5. 承上启下开始列举原因。6. 原因一。7. 原因二。8. 对原因一二进行总结。 |
| 9. As far as I am concerned, 10. As we known, 11. Furthermore, 12. In a word, | 9. 空格内写对现象的看法。10. 支持看法的理由一。11. 理由二。12. 总结。 |

Sample (1)

Directions: This part is to test your ability to do writing. You are required to write a composition on the topic Turn off Your Mobile Phone. You should write no less than 120 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

- 1. 手机的使用越来越普遍,给人们的生活带来了极大便利;
- 2. 但是,有些时候手机也带来了一些问题;
- 3. 因此, 在某些场合下, 我们要关掉手机。

● 思路点拨

本题属于现象解释型作文。

根据所给提纲,本文应包含以下内容:描述近年来手机的使用越来越普遍的现象;说明人们使用手机时带来的很多问题;建议在某些场合关掉手机。

▶ 参考范文

Turn off Your Mobile Phone

Nowadays, the mobile phone which is widely used everywhere brings us a lot of convenience.

Thanks to it, we can contact others or be contacted at any time of the day and in almost any place.

But have you noticed sometimes that the mobile phone also brings embarrassment to us? It's not uncommon for us to see someone pressing the mobile phone to his ear and shouting loudly in public. Most people have had such an experience that the mobile phone rings continuously on a formal occasion.

Therefore, if you are one of them, please turn off your cell phone in public, especially on a quiet and serious occasion. It's a respect for both others and yourself.

Sample (2)

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic Body-building. You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

- 1. 近年来越来越多的人开始参加各种健身俱乐部或健身中心;
- 2. 人们健身的目的有哪些:
- 3. 你对此的看法。

▶ 思路点拨

本题属于现象解释型作文。

根据所给提纲,本文应包含以下内容:描述近年来人们热衷于参加健身俱乐部或健身中心的现象;说明人们健身的主要目的;谈谈"我"对健身的看法。

▶ 参考范文

Body-building

In recent years, more and more people spare no pains to join in the body-building group. People begin to take part in various fitness clubs or fitness centers in their spare time. This shows body-building has become an indispensable part of many people's life.

Why are so many people keen on body-building? Firstly, keeping healthy is one of their main purposes. In modern society, many people stay for most of the day before the desk without doing any exercises, which definitely harms their health. Body-building caters to the need of these people who come to realize the potential danger of their working pattern. Secondly, body-building is beneficial for people to keep their body shape. Many setting-up exercises like aerobics are very helpful in cutting up weight. Besides, body-building is a good way by which people can release pressure.

As far as I am concerned, the popularity of body-building will be a long-time trend. It shows people begin to pay more and more attention to life quality. As a fashionable, healthy lifestyle,

body-building will attract more and more people.

二、问题解决型作文模板

模板一

| With the development/improvement of | 空格一处铺垫,空格二处填写某一问题。 关注解决现象引出的问题很必要。 解决问题很必要的理由一。 解决问题很必要的理由二。 |
|--|---|
| Therefore, how to is worth paying attention. Firstly Secondly For example, Thirdly, In other words, | 5. 承上启下,填要解决的问题。 6. 解决办法一。 7. 解决办法二。 8. 举例说明解决办法二。 9. 解决办法三。 10. 阐明解决办法三。 |
| 11. In fact, ways to are countless.12. It's time that | 11. 指出解决问题的办法多种多样。 12. 强调解决问题时不可待。 |
| 模板 | i= |
| 1. There has been a discussion recently about 2. It is obvious that 3. Additionally, 4. So it is high time, 5. First of all, 6. The reason is 7. Secondly 8. That is to say, 9. Thirdly, 10. In fact, more than three ways can be adopted, 11. As for me, 12. All in all, | 1. 提出现存的问题。 2. 解决问题很必要的理由一。 3. 解决问题很必要的理由二。 4. 承上启下,说明解决问题的必要性。 5. 解决办法一。 6. 解决办法一的理由。 7. 解决办法二。 8. 阐明解决办法二。 9. 解决办法三。 10. 指出解决问题的办法多种多样。 11. 小结解决问题的根本途径。 12. 总结全文。 |
| 模板三 | |
| It is certain that For one reason, For another, However, some still puzzle on how to | 提出问题及解决的必要性。 解决问题很必要的理由一。 解决问题很必要的理由二。 转折到如何解决问题。 |

| Here come some suggestions. To begin with, Secondly For instance, Thirdly, | 5. 承上指出解决问题的方法很多。6. 解决办法一。7. 解决办法二。8. 阐明解决办法二。9. 解决办法三。 |
|--|---|
| 10. That is because 11. The solution varies according to different situations. 12. Therefore, | 10. 理由。 11. 解决问题的办法随具体情况不同而改变。 12. 总结全文,要灵活地依据具体情况处理问题。 |

Sample (1)

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic How to Make the Best Use of College Life. You should write at least 120 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

- 1. 有的大学生在入学后寻找各种途径去赚钱;
- 2. 有的大学生为应付各种考试, 经常参加各种辅导班:
- 3. 你打算如何有效地利用你的大学时光。

▶ 思路点拨

本题属于问题解决型作文。

根据所给提纲,本文应包含以下内容:提出"如何有效利用大学时光"这一问题;阐述大学生主要将时间花在哪些方面和他们的主要考虑;谈谈"我"打算如何利用我的大学时光和"我"这样做的主要理由。

▶ 参考范文

How to Make the Best Use of College Life

It is beyond doubt that we enjoy more free time in college than in middle school. But as to how to make use of our spare time, different students hold sharply different views.

In order to earn money, a good number of undergraduates are busy doing part-time jobs. In this way, they can relieve their families' financial burden to some extent. Besides, they can achieve more independence through their work. Others are confronted by countless exams and they often attend guidance lectures in the hope of improving their performance in these tests. They believe that a record of good exam results will be useful when they look for jobs in the future.

As far as I am concerned, I will live my college life in a different way. On the one hand, as a student, I will give priority to the development of my knowledge and skills, so I am determined



to spend most of my spare time studying hard. On the other hand, I think it is necessary for me to join one or more of the student associations. These associations can provide chances to improve my communicating skills and make my life colorful. In conclusion, I do believe that my college life will turn out to be colorful as well as fruitful.

Sample (2)

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic Young People Should Have Combatant Spirit. You should write at least 150 words and base your composition on the outline given below:

- 1. 现在很多年轻人缺乏拼搏精神;
- 2. 导致这一问题的原因是什么;
- 3. 大学生应该培养拼搏精神。

▶ 思路点拨

本题属于问题解决型作文。

根据所给提纲,本文应包含以下内容:描述年轻人缺乏拼搏精神的现状;分析导致这一问题的原因;说明大学生应该如何加强拼搏精神。

▶ 参考范文

Young People Should Have Combatant Spirit

Nowadays, quite a few people believe that combatant spirit is essential for one's success in today's competitive world. However, some young people today think nothing of this spirit which, in their opinion, is only needed in revolutionary age. Even worse, when facing the difficulties, they will choose to yield or cower without making any efforts.

There are many factors resulting in young people's lack of combatant spirit. Among these, comfortable living environment plays a vital role. Today's parents provide nearly everything to the children, which results in the children's lack of motivation for striving on their own. What's more, the present education system does not pay much attention to help the young people build up the combatant spirit.

Considering the importance of combatant spirit, I think it is high time to take effective measures to strengthen young people's combatant spirit. Above all, parents shouldn't spoil their children and should ask their children to strive for what they intend to obtain. Moreover, schools should build a better environment for students to develop their struggle and aggressive spirit. Besides, young people themselves should adjust their minds and follow the examples of those people in history or around us who achieve their success under the stimulation of combatant spirit. In a word, it is an urgent thing for today's young people to enhance combatant spirit.

三、对比选择型作文模板

模板一

| Different people have different views on Some people prefer, Others tend to, As to me, I agree with /to | 1. 开门见山直入主题,表明对某事人们的不同看法。 2. 表明一部分人的看法。 3. 另一部分的看法。 4. 作者的看法。 |
|--|---|
| 5. Of course, 6. For example, 7. But, 8. The following reasons can account for my preference | 5. 承认自己不赞同的看法有一定的合理性。6. 举例说明支持第五句。7. 转折指出这种观点的不足。8. 过渡到下段,具体阐述自己所支持的观点的理由。 |
| 9. The main reason is 10. A good example to illustrate is 11. Fur another, 12. From the foregoing, | 9. 支持观点的理由一。 10. 举例说明理由一。 11. 理由二。 12. 总结全文,从长远看来。 |
| ·模板 | i= |
| 1. There is no complete agreement among people as to 2. Some people consider 3. However, others think 4. Some people may say 5. They hold this opinion because 6. However, others believe 7. They argue that 8. Personally, I am in favor of the 9. Firstly, 10. Secondly, 11. Most important of all 12. Taking above-mentioned factors into consideration, we/I may reasonably conclude that | 1. 开门见山直入主题,表明对某事人们的不同看法。 2. 表明一部分人的看法。 3. 另一部分人的看法。 4. 观点一的理由。 5. 深入阐述观点一的理由。 6. 观点二的理由。 7. 深入阐述观点二的理由。 8. 我的看法。 9. 个人看法依据一。 10. 个人看法依据二。 11. 个人看法依据三。 12. 总结全文。 |
| 1. When asked about, different people will | 1. 开门见山直入主题,表明对某事人们的不同 |
| offer different opinions. | 看法。 |
| Some people take it for granted that In their opinion. | 2. 提出观点一。 3. 观点一的理由一。 |
| 3. In their opinion,4. Besides, | 4. 观点一的理由二 |

(续)

| However, others hold They maintain And | 5. 提出观点二。6. 观点二的理由一。7. 观点二的理由二。 |
|--|---|
| 8. Weighing up these arguments, I am for | 8. 我的观点。 |
| 9. For one thing | 9. 个人观点理由一。 |
| 10. For another, | 10. 个人观点理由二。 |
| 11. For instance, | 11. 举例说明。 |
| 12. Therefore, as stated above | 12. 综上所述再次强调自己的观点。 |

Sample (1)

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic Online Romance. You should write at least 120 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

- 1. 随着互联网的普及, 出现了很多网络恋情;
- 2. 人们对此褒贬不一:
- 3. 你的看法。

▶ 思路点拨

本题属于对比选择型作文。

根据所给提纲,本文应包含以下内容:描述网络恋情的出现,引出人们对其的不同态度;对比阐述两种态度各自的理由;表明"我"更倾向于哪种态度并说明理由。

▶ 参考范文

Online Romance

With the widespread of the Internet, there have appeared many online romances. The lovers meet over the Internet, date on the net and finally fall in love with each other. People's opinions on it vary greatly.

Some people think online love is very romantic and exciting. It is an amazing thing that the Internet brings together two strange persons far away from each other. Moreover, they think that online romance, compared with realistic love, attaches more emphasis on the appeal to each other in spirit and involves less material conditions. However, many others think differently. In their eyes, the Internet is a virtual world, on which there impossibly exist real, enduring love since it is very difficult to tell the real from the fake by the Internet. Besides, they argue that pursuing online

romance is sometimes very dangerous because there are many cheaters on the net.

As far as I am concerned, it is an easy and fast way for people to meet new people by the Internet. However, people should have more protection and safety consciousness when making friends by the Internet. Don't give out rashly your personal information to strangers on the net. And keep it in your mind that you should have more realistic knowledge of each other before starting a romance.

Sample (2)

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic Work with a Person or Work with a Machine? You should write at least 150 words and base your composition on the outline given below:

- 1. 一些人喜欢和人打交道多的工作;
- 2. 然而也有一些人更愿意和机器打交道;
- 3. 你更喜欢哪种工作? 为什么?

● 思路点拨

根据所给提纲,本文应包含以下内容:指出人们对于工作的两种喜好:喜欢和人打交 道多的工作,喜欢和机器打交道多的工作;对比阐述两种工作各自的特点;表明"我"更喜欢哪种工作,并说明理由。

● 参考范文

Work with a Person or Work with a Machine?

When asked about work preference, different people will give different answers. Some people like working with people. However, others prefer jobs which mainly involve objects or machines.

Those people who have the first preference believe working with people usually makes one feel interesting and efficient. In addition, they maintain people can be inspired to bring forward new ideas by communicating or consulting with those around them. However, still others have different preferences. In their opinions, working with objects or machines can make one enjoy more peace and quiet. Besides, they argue, under such peaceful conditions, one can do more practical work, improve his skill and make technical renovations.

Weighing up these two kinds of work, I prefer working with people. For one thing, I like to cooperate with others and work in a team. For another, although there are competition and rivalry, we can learn something from other people. Considering these, I think, working with people is beneficial to our career development.

四、观点论证型作文模板

模板一

| 1. It is true that 2. However, 3. I think 4 can be listed as follow. | 提出普遍存在的观点。 谈不同的观点。 自己的观点,即文章的论点。 过渡句,转折到观点的论证,由题目选择具体的词。 |
|--|---|
| 5. First of all, 6. Secondly, 7. For example 8. Thirdly, 9. A case in point is | 6. 论证理由一。 7. 举例具体说明理由二。 8. 论证理由三。 9. 举例说明理由三。 |
| 10. It goes without saying that11. There is no doubt that12. In conclusion | 10. 提出执行该观点时应注意的事项。 11. 得出结论。 12. 总结全文。 |
| 模板二 | |
| 1天12 | \ — |
| 1. Some people believe that 2. The truth is deep and profound. 3. As we know, 4. In addition, | 1. 直接提出本文的观点。 2. 进一步强调观点的正确性。 3. 论证理由一。 4. 论证理由二。 |
| Some people believe that The truth is deep and profound. As we know, | 1. 直接提出本文的观点。 2. 进一步强调观点的正确性。 3. 论证理由一。 |

Sample (1)

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic Traveling by Train or by Plane. You should write at least 120 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

- 1. 我们出远门总要坐火车或飞机;
- 2. 坐火车和坐飞机各有什么利弊;
- 3. 你的结论如何。

▶ 思路点拨

本题属于观点论证型作文。

根据所给提纲,本文应包含以下内容:描述我们出门时的常用交通工具火车和飞机; 坐火车和坐飞机的利弊;说明如何合理选择交通工具。

● 参考范文

Traveling by Train or by Plane

When we go on a business trip, we will be faced with the choice of traveling by train or by plane. Before making the right choice, we had better make a close comparison and contrast of them.

First of all, a train will take us to our target railway station. Also, a plane will take us to the target airport. Second, in a train we can enjoy the beautiful scenery of the countryside. Likewise, in a plane we can command a good view of fields, buildings, mountains and even plains of clouds. Despite these similarities, they differ in the following aspects. First, a train ticker is cheap. Most of us can afford it. However, a plane ticket is about twice as expensive as a train ticket. Most of us grudge paying for it. Besides, it is safer to travel by train. If the train gets some trouble, we survive by jumping out of it. On the contrary, if we travel by plane, we have to ask God to bless us. However, it takes us longer time to travel by train than by plane.

Therefore, it depends on which transportation tool we should choose. If we just want to save money, we will travel by train. But if we want to save time, we will turn to the plane.

Sample (2)

Directions: This part is to test your ability to do writing. You are required to write a composition on the topic it pays to be honest. You should write no less than 120 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

- 1. 当前社会存在许多不诚实的现象:
- 2. 诚实利人利己, 做人应该诚实。

● 思路点拨

本题属于观点论证型作文。

根据所给提纲,本文应包含以下内容:概括现状——不诚实现象普遍存在及其原因; 举例说明诚实对个人、对国家、对社会都有害无利;表明自己的态度,重申诚实的重要性。

● 参考范文

It Pays to Be Honest

Nowadays there still exist many dishonesties, such as cheating, overcharging, fake commodities, etc., which ruin our moral life. It is true that being honest is not only beneficial to others but also to ourselves. No one can deny that honesty is a traditional virtue of Chinese people.

Therefore, we should value honesty highly.

Many remarkable reasons contribute to this argument. First of all, honesty can build up a more stable society. What's more, honesty can make our life easier and more harmonious. Besides, only honest people can be truly respected by others and can have more friends. All mentioned above tells us that being honest is of benefit to both state and the individual. Therefore, there is no denying that we should foster the spirit of honesty and let dishonesty have no place to stay in our society.

In a word, try to be honest for the sake of ourselves, our society, our country and even the whole world.

五、作文常用旬子

- 1. As society develops, people are attaching much importance to... 随着社会的发展, 人们开始关注……
- 2. Recently the phenomenon has aroused wide concern. Some people are in alarm that ... 最近,这种现象引起了人们的广泛关注,有人开始担心……
- 3. People from different backgrounds would put different interpretations on the same case. 不同行业的人对同一种问题的解释不尽相同。
- 4. The controversial issue is often brought into public focus. People from different backgrounds hold different attitudes towards the issue. 这种极具争议性的话题往往很受社会的关注。不同的人对此问题的看法也不尽相同。
- 5. To this issue different people come up with various attitudes. 对于这个问题,不同的人持不同的观点。
- 6. There is a good side and a bad side to everything. It goes without saying that... 万事万物都有其两面性,所以,毋庸置疑……
- 7. When it comes to ... most people believe that ... but other people regard ...as ... 提到……问题,很多人认为……, 不过, 一些人则认为……是……
- 8. Some people are of the opinion that ...有些人认为

- 9. Some people contend that ... has proved to bring many advantages (disadvantages). 有些人认为……有很多有利之处 (不利之处)。
- 10. Some people advocate that ...有些人坚持认为
- 11. They hold that ... 他们认为
- 12. People who advocate that ... have their sound reasons (grounds). 坚持认为……的人也有其说法(依据)。
- 13. Those who have already benefited from practicing it sing high praise of it. 那些从中受益的人对此大加褒奖。
- 14. According to my personality and fondness I would prefer ... rather than... 根据我的个性以及爱好, 我选择……而不会选择……
- 15. Personally I side with the latter (former) opinion... 就我个人而言, 我支持后者 (前者) ……
- 16. To my mind the advantages far overweigh the drawbacks (disadvantages/shortcomings). 我认为, 优点大于缺点。
- 17. For my part I stand on side of the latter opinion that... 就我而言、我较赞同后一种观点……
- 18. As far as I am concerned I am inclined to be on the side of the latter view. 在我看来, 我倾向于后一种观点。
- 19. If asked to make a decision I would prefer... 假如真的需要做出选择, 我宁愿……
- 20. Recently the issue of ... has been brought into public focus. 近来,的问题引起了社会的广泛关注。
- 21. Recently the issue of whether or not ... has been in the limelight and has aroused wide concern in the public.
 - 近来,是否……的问题已经非常明确而且引起了社会的广泛关注。
- 22. The issue whether it is good or not to ... has aroused a heated discussion all over the country.
 -的利与弊已在全国范围内引起热烈的讨论。
- 23. At present some people think ...while others claim ...Both sides have their merits. 目前,一些人认为……而另一些人则认为……。其实,两种观点都其可取之处。
- 24. People rarely reach an absolute consensus on such a controversial issue. 对于这种极具争议的话题,人们很难达成完全一致。

第四章

作文专项练习及范文



一、主题:低碳生活

- 1. 低碳生活受到人们的普遍欢迎。
- 2. 低碳生活方式非常有好处。
- 3. 我们应该如何去做。

▶ 参考范文

Low-carbon Lifestyle

Nowadays, there are a considerable number of individuals who prefer to lead a low-carbon lifestyle which finds expression in the fact that more and more commuters are using public transportation system in their daily life.

Low carbon lifestyle can endow us and our society with numerous benefits. Firstly, it goes beyond doubt that low carbon lifestyle contributes a lot to the environmental protection and it is a favorable way to slow down the rate of climate change of our earth, which also means a lot to our health. We are supposed to undertake the responsibility to lead a low-carbon lifestyle, which is of great significance. And there is a diversity of measures we can take so as to lead such an environmental-friendly life. For one thing, we are expected to minimize the use of private cars, which emit a large amount of greenhouse gases. For another, we are supposed to cultivate the public awareness of energy conservation for energy in the world today is decreasing rapidly. For instance, we can turn off electrical appliances if not necessary as well as using renewable materials. Furthermore, at our leisure, we can seek opportunities to plant more trees which can absorb carbon-dioxide.

In brief, low-carbon lifestyle is nothing but the best choice for us and only in this way can we form a harmonious relationship with the environment.

二、主题:农民工

- 1. 近年来越来越多的民工涌入大城市。
- 2. 产生这一社会现象的原因。



Why Are There So Many Rural Laborers in Big Cities?

For a number of years, there has been a steady rise in the number of rural laborers who flood into big cities. Many men work on construction sites, while many women work as dishwashers in restaurants or babysitters for city dwellers. Three reasons, in my mind, can account for this social phenomenon.

First and foremost, the limited land can no longer produce enough crops for an ever-increasing rural population. In the second place, there are far more opportunities in big cities—rural laborers dream of earning money through hard work. Last but by no means least, many of them want to live permanently in big cities, because they admire the way of living there, and wish their children to receive good education.

I firmly believe that if we try our best to create a healthy social atmosphere, rural laborers will make greater contribution to our nation.

三、主题: 哑巴英语

- 1. 中国有很多学生无法用英语进行交流,由此出现"哑巴英语"的现象。
- 2. 造成"哑巴英语"现象出现的原因。
- 3. 提供一些可行的解决方法。

▶ 参考范文

"Mute English" among Chinese Students

Nowadays, oral English is quite a serious problem among Chinese students. Most of the students have studied English for a long time, but they can't communicate well with other people in English. In addition, there are still many other students who can understand every word of an article, but fail to read them out fluently and correctly. Many reasons contribute to this problem. Among these reasons, examination-oriented education system plays a vital role. What's more, most of the students are too shy and nervous to speak in public.

I think it is high time that we paid more attention to this "Mute English". Above all, students should read after the tape recorder or MP3 to practice the pronunciation. Moreover, they should talk as much as possible with the foreigners and not be afraid of losing face. In addition, students should enrich vocabulary and pay attention to the differences between spoken language and written language. Only through these ways can Chinese students avoid "Mute English" and speak English fluently.

四、主题:校园意外

- 1. 近年来发生在校园的意外事件不断增加,校园安全问题备受关注。
- 2. 对此我们应该采取哪些措施。

▶ 参考范文

Campus Security

Security issue may sound clichéd, but when it comes to the campus security, we have to take it seriously. Nearly every day, there are reports to the security office on campus that valuable things are stolen away. A surrounding with stealing, mugging can't be worse for studying.

In such cases, what measures should be taken to improve the campus security? On the one hand, we students should strengthen our security awareness. Once we smell out something unusual, we should report it to the campus guard immediately. On the other hand, more equipment such as monitors should be installed on campus so as to detect crimes as soon as possible. Besides, a proper amount of security guards should be arranged to patrol the campus.

In my opinion, campus security will be improved as long as efforts are made on campus. Therefore colleges and universities should try their best to make everyone on campus safe and sound.

五、主题: 倡议书

在过去几年中,我们已经目睹了人类活动引起的各种灾害。作为一名大学生,请写一封倡议书,呼吁大家关注这些自然灾害并保护环境。

● 参考范文

A Letter of Appeal

June 13, 20 * *

Dear friends,

I am writing this letter to call on everyone to pay attention to the present disasters caused by human activities. As some of you may know, over the past years, floods, droughts, landslides, and dust storms have frequented our planet. Not long ago, tsunami swept the Southeast Asia, which caused enormous damage. All these have sounded an alarm to human beings. So it is high time that we joined efforts to save our planet. Above all, a task of top priority for us is to plant trees as many as possible, especially in the arid areas. At the same time, we should stop deforesting in large amount. And we can save our planet through many other ways, such as saving

water and using recycled paper. So don't hesitate to act out these measures. Even a small action is meaningful to our planet. Please join us in the action of protecting our planet. If you are willing to do something to save our planet, please start from the little thing right around you. Thank you!

Sincerely yours,

Li Ming

六、主题: 留学

- 1. 目前很多中国学生出国留学。
- 2. 出国留学的好处。
- 3. 我的看法。

▶ 参考范文

Studying Abroad

Nowadays, going abroad for studies is enjoying a striking popularity among adolescents. Importance should be attached to studying abroad.

There are a great many advantages of studying overseas. First and foremost, living and studying abroad offers students a different perspective of the world. On a university campus, international students are likely to encounter their counterparts from various countries and areas and are exposed to diverse ideas and values. What is more, overseas experience is the best opportunity for the real-life use of foreign languages. There is no better opportunity to improve second-language skills than living in the country in which it is spoken.

Generally speaking, it is my view that although going abroad is expensive and perhaps painful, the payoff is worthwhile. In the first place, in addition to knowledge, overseas students can gain precious experiences that those who stay at home will never have. Furthermore, overseas experience, frustrating and painful as it may be, is conducive to the growth of adolescents.

七、主题:电影和电视对公众的影响力

- 1. 电影或电视对人们行为的影响。
- 2. 给出理由或例证说明你的观点。

▶ 参考范文

The Influence of Television and Movies

There is no doubt that watching television and movies can influence the way that people behave. Moreover, it seems that people are spending more and more time watching some sort of visual entertainment, whether it is television, a video tape or a DVD. Therefore, the effects of visual media cannot be ignored.

One obvious effect of these media is that watching them induces people to buy certain products. Television advertising is widespread and, nowadays, even movie theaters permit advertisements. Another way TV and the movies affect people is that they give people either a broader view of the world or a distorted one, depending on what type of program they watch. Those who watch news and educational program can learn many new things while those who watch primarily entertainment shows may come to believe that most people in the world possess great wealth and good looks. It may make them become dissatisfied with their own lives. Finally, perhaps the most susceptible viewers are children, who may be unable to tell fact from fiction and may try to imitate acts that they see on TV or in the movies.

With the ever-increasing popularity of video entertainment, society must pay attention to these effects. Television and movies, while entertaining and informative, cannot take the place of real experience.

八、主题: 名牌大学降低标准

- 1. 近年来很多名牌大学都会降低标准招收名人学生,一些人强烈反对这样做。
- 2. 但也有少人认为这很正常。
- 3. 你对此的看法。

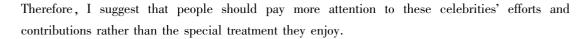
● 参考范文

Should Universities Lower Admission Requirements for Celebrities?

In recent years, many famous universities lower admission requirements for celebrities. More and more celebrities, especially sports stars, have been admitted to famous universities even without an entry examination. This phenomenon has become a subject of widespread controversy.

Some people object strongly that universities lower admission requirements for celebrities. They hold that this admission pattern will damage the basic fairness rule of education. In addition, they say that if a person who has not enough academic ability is admitted to the university, it would be an insult on college education. However, still other people think it acceptable. They say that these celebrities deserve this privilege because they have proved their abilities in their field. Besides, in their opinions, these celebrities to some extent set a good model for other young people.

Weighing these two arguments, I prefer the latter one. For one thing, these celebrities have sacrificed much learning time for their work, so they should be provided a better chance for learning. For another, if they accept advanced education, they could serve the society better.



九、主题:

假设你的同学因食用从某超市买回的食品而食物中毒,后经治疗康复。请给报社写一封信,描述他(们)的中毒与脱险经过,呼吁社会各界重视食品安全。

● 参考范文

A Letter to a Publishing House on Food Safety

June 15^{th} , 20 * *

Dear Sir or Madam,

Thank you for taking time to read this letter. As the problem of food safety has been becoming worse and worse nowadays, I am obliged to write to you. Several days ago, one of my classmates came back from supermarket with a large bag of food. Because of having found a new style of tinned fish in the food store, she was very glad. Several other roommates were invited to enjoy the "mouth watering chicken". Unfortunately, after finishing the food, all of my three friends had stomachaches and vomited, their faces having become paler and paler. Due to sensitivity to that kind of tinned food, I escaped that suffer. At that time, my mind went blank. I dialed the emergency number with my trembling hand, therefore they were quickly sent to hospital. The doctor said they were lucky to be out of danger because they did not eat too much of that rotten fish and were hospitalized on time. This is the matter that happened around me which made me realize the seriousness of the food safety problem. I sincerely hope that the whole society could attach much importance to this issue.

Thanks! Yours,
Julie

十、主题:信息安全

- 1. 信息安全问题日益重要。
- 2. 信息安全事故可能导致的危害。
- 3. 如何做到信息安全。

● 参考范文

Information Security

The human beings are stepping into the information society. The information industry develops very rapidly, so do the hackers, trick-playing teens, exploring children, fraudsters, and serious white-collar criminals. Thus, information security becomes an impending important issue.

In case of information breach, the victims—government department, an organization or an institution, or a company will inevitably suffer great or small loss. Government may be threatened with national security. Companies may lose opportunities to develop new projects. And the public's and users' confidence will be damaged.

Then how to deal with this issue? Technology is only a partial solution to information security. What's more important is that organizations and companies should promote the awareness on information security to its staff. However, since no system can ever be 100 percent secure, a prevention-only approach to information security management is not enough. Companies and organizations should adopt a dual approach to information security management by combing prevention and detection techniques.

十一、主题: 互联网

- 1. 互联网的优点。
- 2. 互联网的不足之处。
- 3. 你的观点。

● 参考范文

The Advantages and Disadvantages of Internet

The following aspects could best illustrate the advantages of Internet. Net surfers in different countries can share interesting knowledge and the latest information. Besides, Internet has provided a major opportunity to buy and sell merchandise. What is more, people may get medical help or even vote on Internet. Its advantages seem countless.

Behind all this glowing talk, however, are some problems. Internet makes people passive by stopping them making their own entertainment. So much so that when there is a breakdown or jam, people may find that World Wide Web turns into World Wide Wait. What is worse, some children have access to the scenes of violence and sex. Apart from these, it can be affected by viruses and hackers.

We should handle its problems; meanwhile we should exploit its potential as well. With proper management of Internet people ought to experience more fruits of the information revolution. All the wisdom of the ages, all the information that has enlightened mankind for centuries, should be available to us with the healthy development of Internet.

十二、主题: 兴趣与爱好

- 1. 爱好能丰富人们的闲暇时光,有助于人的身心健康。
- 2. 会花费甚至浪费大量的时间, 乃至金钱。
- 3. 你的看法。



On Hobbies

A hobby can be almost anything a person likes to do in his spare time. Hobbyists raise pets, build model ships, hunt animals, climb mountains, raise flowers, fish, ski, skate and swim. Hobbyists also paint pictures, attend concerts and plays, and perform on musical instruments. They collect everything from books to butterflies and from shells to stamps.

People take up hobbies because these activities offer enjoyment, friendship, knowledge and relaxation. Sometimes they even yield financial profit. Anyone, rich or poor, old or young, sick or well, can follow a satisfying hobby.

Hobbies can help a person's mental and physical health. Doctors have found that hobbies are valuable in helping patients recover from physical or mental illness. Hobbies give bedridden or wheel chair patients something to do, and provide interests that keep them from thinking about themselves. Many hospitals treat patients by having them take up interesting hobbies or pastimes. In early times, most people were too busy making a living to have many hobbies. But some persons who had leisure did enjoy hobbies. The ancient Egyptians played games with balls made of wood or pottery. People today have more time than ever before for hobbies. Machines have reduced the amount of time they must spend on their jobs. Those who have developed hobbies never need to worry about what to do with their newly-found leisure hours.

William Osier, a famous Canadian doctor, expressed the value of hobbies by saying, "No man is really happy or safe without a hobby."

十三、主题:城市寄生虫

- 1. 现在大城市里有很多"城市寄生虫", 他们以乞讨为生。
- 2. 这种现象带来的影响。
- 3. 如何解决这一问题。

● 参考范文

Parasites of Big Cities

Nowadays there are many beggars in big cities, who are called "parasites of big cities". Some are begging something to eat for survival, while most of them are professional beggars according to the survey. In addition to plain beggars in rags, there are many disabled beggars and begging families with the children as the leading character. Besides, in recent years, student beggars have appeared.

No doubt, these "parasites of big cities" have brought great bad effects. On the one hand, their asking a reward without labor is a burden on the society and influences the city image. On the other hand, many pretended beggars cheat people's sympathy by fake stories and experiences, which is very harmful to society.

Considering the bad effects of "parasites of big cities", it is high time for us to take effective measures to solve the problem. Firstly, the government should pay more attention to these beggars and resettle them in a reasonable way. Secondly, education and training should be given to these beggars to help them learn how to support themselves. Besides, people should be more cautious in providing helps to the beggars and leave no chance to those cheaters.

十四、主题:生活中的广告

- 1. 广告侵入了我们生活的方方面面, 手机、电视、报纸甚至邮箱都有广告。
- 2. 有些广告优雅地呈现在我们生活中,向我们提供新产品的信息。

● 参考范文

My Opinion on Advertisement

As is known to all, angels and evils are poles apart. But is there anything that combines the two perfectly?

With the growing influence of mass media, advertising invades every aspect of our lives. Whenever we turn on the TV, look through a newspaper, open the mailbox, or surf on the Internet, advertisements would immediately jump into our sight. As they make things so attractive, we often end up buying things that we do not really need. Advertising not only adds to the price of the goods, thus harming the consumer's interest, but also imposes a kind of materialistic value upon the audience.

But that is only part of the story advertisements are informative as well as persuasive. They provide us with up-to-date information about the latest products. Some advertisements are so elegantly presented that we are inspired or even moved. No matter it is an evil or an angel, advertisement has become an indispensable part of our modern life.

十五、主题: 保持健康

- 1. 健康的重要性。
- 2. 如何保持健康。

● 参考范文

Staying Healthy

There is no denying the importance of health. Without it, it is difficult to live a happy life no matter how much money or success one has. In order to maintain our good health and lead lives

that are as fulfilling as possible, it is important to take some steps.

The first step is to keep regular hours and stick to a healthy, balanced diet. This is the basis of good health. Our bodies need sufficient nutrition and rest in order to function well and resist illness. The second step is to get regular exercise. Moderate exercise, such as walking, can have great benefits for our health if done on a regular basis. Third, I suggest seeing a doctor for an annual checkup. A doctor can often diagnose problems before they become serious enough to be apparent to us. Last but not least, take time to relax and renew your spirits and mental energy every day. This is just as essential as physical exercise because mental state often has a profound influence on our physical health. As the saying goes, "A sound mind in a sound body."

There are many things that we can do to stay healthy. The important thing is to value our health and not neglect it. This means making healthy habits a part of our everyday life. If we simply develop a healthy way of living we are bound to live healthier, more satisfying lives.

十六、主题: 自信

- 1. 自信的重要性。
- 2. 缺乏自信的原因。
- 3. 我们该怎么做。

▶ 参考范文

The Importance of Confidence

It is widely recognized that confidence plays an important part in people's life and activities. For example, if you show enough confidence in a job interview, you are likely to do well and get the job applied for. Or, if you take an important examination with confidence, you will probably pass it and thus seize a good opportunity. When you play a role in a play, the confidence shown in your performance can help you get applause from the audience.

However, not everyone has enough confidence in himself. There are many reasons for lack of confidence, but in general, they come down to two major ones. First, some people tend to improperly belittle themselves. Without a correct estimate of themselves, they often hesitate to press forward in the face of difficulties. Second, some people overestimate difficulties. For them, difficulties are always like high mountains which they can never get over.

When faced with difficult problems or hard tasks, we should have faith in ourselves. The world is full of hardships, and we cannot change this reality. The only thing we can do is improve ourselves. It is possible to build up confidence in ourselves if we take the right attitude to our abilities. Always remember that confidence is the promise for overcoming many difficulties in the world.

十七、主题:保护环境

- 1. 环境保护依然存在的问题。
- 2. 我们该怎么做。

▶ 参考范文

Protection of Environment

There are still many problems of environmental protection in recent years. One of the most serious problems is the serious pollution of air, water and soil. The polluted air does great harm to people's health. The polluted water causes diseases and death. What is more, vegetation had been greatly reduced with the rapid growth of modern cities.

To protect the environment, governments of many countries have done a lot. Legislative (立 法的) steps have been introduced to control air pollution, to protect the forest and sea resources and to stop any environmental pollution. Therefore, governments are playing the most important role in the environmental protection today.

In my opinion, to protect environment, the government must take even more concrete measures. First, it should let people fully realize the importance of environmental protection through education. Second, much more efforts should be made to put the population planning policy into practice, because more people mean more pollution. Finally, those who destroy the environment intentionally should be severely punished. We should let them know that destroying environment means destroying mankind themselves.

十八、主题:教育

- 1. 教育,自我教育的重要性。
- 2. 为什么要进行自我教育。
- 3. 如何进行自我教育。

● 参考范文

About Self-education

Education plays a great role in our life. But, real education begins with self-education. That is to educate ourselves.

I have had such experience. When I finish reading a good book, which is informative and exciting, I am lost deep in thoughts and enlightened. Something or somebody ordinary in life, once written in books, after careful reading and thinking, will reveal truth and philosophy. When

I succeed or fad, get praised or criticized, happy or sad, I can find in books a good mirror to reflect and guide me.

I cannot but put myself upon thinking, "What was I? What will I be?" At this time, my mind is open and I am my sincere self. I am having a dialogue with myself, with my conscience. Without my knowing it, I am educating myself.

So you can see by self-education. I mean thinking and contradicting within the mind. In the process of thinking and contradicting I have recollections and appraisal of myself. Then I make decisions accordingly and keep myself in control of my thoughts and actions in the hope that I better myself in character, behavior, virtue and manner.

Self-education is an effective way to make one noble minded, more able and intelligent and to perfect oneself. If a man keeps receiving education and educating himself, he is sure to be one cut above others.

十九、主题

给校长的一封关于校园食堂服务的信。

- 1. 介绍自己,说明为什么写这封信。
- 2. 信中反映的问题。
- 3. 希望怎么解决问题。

● 参考范文

A Letter to the University President about the Canteen Service on Campus

January 12, 20 * *

Dear Mr. President,

My name is Li Ming. I am a sophomore of the law school. As the school year is drawing to a close, I venture to write a letter to you about the canteen service on campus which has given rise to much complaint among students.

The focus of the complaint is the poor quality of the food. The rice is just like bullets and the buns are like hand grenades. They are too hard for us to chew. And the vegetables are so overcooked as to lose their nutrients. The fish and meat are not given full measure. The only thing we are satisfied with is the free soup. However, the price of the food is surprisingly high. If we have 3 meals all in the canteen, at least twelve yuan is gone to keep our body and soul together. As a result, many of us go out to have meals.

Honestly speaking, the dining environment has been improved, with the wall painted and some Chinese calligraphy works posted up. But there are only two canteens on the campus. As the number of students is ever increasing, there is not enough space and seats to allow us to have our

meals there. The attitude of the service staff to the students is not hospitable at all.

All in all, there is still much room for improvement as far as the canteen service is concerned. I hope we will not suffer for another two years.

Best regards.

Sincerely Yours, Li Ming

二十、主题:考试

- 1. 关于考试的利弊。
- 2. 你的观点, 并说明理由。

▶ 参考范文

Examination

There are many arguments about the advantages and disadvantages of examination. Some people think examination is the only best way to test how examinees have mastered what they have studied and it is the only measurement for examiners to select which persons they need. While, on the other hand, some object that examination can't measure how the students have really studied. They say it can do nothing but burden the students.

As for me, I think for both examiners and examinees, the examination can show what and how much the examinees have mastered. The results of examinations are just like mirrors for both examiners and examinees.

Through examination the examinees can check their work and get aware of which aspects they have not done well, so that they'll make much improvement in their work. As far as examinees are concerned, they can not only know how they have studied but also find out what they still unknown or what they haven't mastered well. Thus, they will be inspired to greater efforts to improve their studying method so as to make greater progress. Of course too many examinations are burdens to both examiners and examinees.

In sum, the examination does more good than harm for both examiners and examinees. We must take a correct attitude towards examination. We should take full advantage of it and avoid its disadvantage.

二十一、谚语:有志者,事竟成

- 1. 用通俗的语言解释什么是"有志者,事竟成"。
- 2. 给出例证证明这句话的正确性。



Where There Is a Will, There Is a Way

No man can achieve success without strong will.

We hear some people have got fruitful results, but hardly realize that they had been making painstaking efforts before they achieve success. Just as we can't reach the terminal of the long distance run without trying hard and having the determination to win, we can't get to our destination without firm resolution and great willpower. Business success requires an unusual amount of energy and the courage to overcome difficulties. So it is important for us to have great resolution and to hold on to the end under any circumstances. Some people tend to be afraid of difficulties. When difficulties arose, they would complain that they were born not in the right place at the right time and claim the success factor is largely a matter of luck. Such people don't know the key factor of success—the will.

In short, the proverb "Where there is a will, there is a way" is true of us all. Let's make up our minds, stick to it and surely we'll succeed in our career.

二十二、主题:居住地的选择,城市还是乡下

- 1. 城市的特点。
- 2. 乡村的特点。
- 3. 我的观点。

● 参考范文

Where to Live — in the City or in the Country?

Some people enjoy the convenience of the city. First, there are many public places of entertainment, such as parks, cinemas, exhibitions, nightclubs and so on. And there are also quite a number of schools, universities and scientific research institutions that provide good education. Second, the public transportation facilities are very convenient. Taxicabs, buses, trolley buses, and subways can quickly take people any place in the city. And third, shops and department stores are well stocked with goods of all kinds, high in quality and low in price.

Some people like the rural scenery in the country. First, it is close to the outdoors, the air being fresh and pure. Second, it is free from the noise and air pollution and traffic jams of the city. Third, gardening and fishing here are pleasant pastimes.

But the city and country have their own disadvantages. For examples, the pollution and traffic jam have become more and more serious in the city, while in the country life is relatively

backward. Comparing this with that, I prefer to live in the city.

二十三、主题:教育资助

- 1. 上大学的费用 (tuition and fees) 可以通过多种途径解决。
- 2. 哪种途径适合我。(说明理由)

▶ 参考范文

How I Finance My College Education

Education is very important to one's career and future. Most of the young people in China hope to get higher education at college. However, the tuition for college education is quite high. It is really quite difficult for some students to afford the money. How can one get enough money to pay the tuition?

In fact, there are many ways to solve the problem. Firstly, one can get financial assistance from parents and relatives. This is the most common practice. Secondly, students can do some part-time jobs while studying. They can use the money they earned to pay their tuition. Except these two ways, one can get loan from the bank. This way has become more and more popular.

Among the three means mentioned above, I think the third kind is most suitable for me. As I am from countryside and my family is quite poor, my parents cannot afford so much money. Besides, I don't think the second way is quite good, because doing part-time jobs surely deprives some time from my study. Study is the most important task for me when I am at college. Therefore, the third way is the best one for me.

We are lucky because we have many ways available for us to pay tuition. I hope everyone can find a means which is best for him and pursue the study.

二十四、主题:课外培训班

- 1. 现在社会上有各种各样的培训班。
- 2. 有些人认为有必要参加课外培训班,有些人则认为没有必要。
- 3. 你的观点。

▶ 参考范文

Is it Necessary to Attend Training Classes?

All across the country a great diversity of custom-made classes are mushrooming, in which special training is provided concerning computer skills, arts, sports, and other extracurricular specialties like maths and writing. Among them language crash courses for various tests, such as

CET, BEC, TOFEL, IELTS, GRE and so forth, are especially noticeable for its wide range and high attendance rate.

Some consider it advisable to attend such classes while others believe it unnecessary. The former argues that it's far more effective to command these special skills with the help of an experienced trainer than to work at them on their own. They are convinced that these training classes can make up for what is not taught in school, hence, more competitive edge over their peers. The latter group of people, nonetheless, criticize it as a sheer waste of resources. They warn that the quality of most training courses is questionable, as they are marketed to get money out of our pocket rather than get knowledge into our head.

As far as I am concerned, a little bit of such special training does us no harm, but too much of it can only prove to be counter-productive. Anyhow, the deprived free time can be better invested in recreation at weekends, talking to an old friend, or simply enjoying a long-overdue vacation.

二十五、主题:大学生对名牌的追求

- 1. 现在很多大学生都追求穿名牌, 用名牌。
- 2. 你对这种现象的看法。

● 参考范文

University Students' Pursuit of Famous Brands

"What perfumes are you wearing?" "Aren't your shoes Nike's latest release?" "I like the Mickey bag you bought yesterday." "I hear the Jack & Jones store is on sale this week. Do you want to come along?" Don't feel surprised if you hear them coming out of the mouth of college students. It's quite common to hear and see college students swapping information about the brands they like and the products they use. In fact, discussions about brand names have become one of the college students' favorite pastimes. They learn about the latest fashion from each other, exchange tips about when and where to get the item, and buy it at their earliest convenience. "Keeping up with the Joneses" is their conviction — "If the Joneses have it, how could I have not?"

About this current mindset of the college students, many people may hasten to show their disapproval. They'll probably take it to be a reflection of the students' vanity and superficiality. And they may lecture them on the virtue of being thrifty.

However, I beg to differ. For one thing, name-brand (名牌) products are usually quality products. As such, they are something beautiful, endurable and reliable. "The love of beauty is common to all," goes the proverb. Therefore, there's nothing to blame about the pursuit of famous

brands. For the other, college students are old enough to make their own decisions. Likewise, they must abide by the consequences if they make an ill-advised one. If they let their pursuit of brands eat into their budget for other more important issues, they should be able to correct their mistakes and keep everything in moderation. So this becomes no other than a good chance to learn management, isn't it?

二十六、主题:我的理想工作

- 1. 人们对职业各有不同的理想。
- 2. 我理想的职业是什么。
- 3. 我怎样为我理想的职业做准备。

● 参考范文一

My Ideal Job

There are various kinds of jobs in the world, but different people are attracted by different jobs because everyone has his own interest and destination. Many people consider an ideal job as a means of making more money and living more comfortably. It may sound reasonable because money is the foundation of life.

As far as my ideal job is concerned, I think I want to be a psychologist, I have made up my mind to do what I really want to so that I can realize my ideal, I believe interest is of the utmost importance in choosing a job, I have been interested in psychology for a long time, so I want to be a psychologist in the future, I think being a psychologist can help lots of people lead a happier life.

However, it isn't easy for me to become a qualified psychologist and many people around me think that it's unrealistic to me. Nevertheless, I'll make every effort to gain much more knowledge, patience, methods, etc. to live up to the name of a qualified psychologist. I believe my dream will come true someday.

▶ 参考范文二

My Ideal Job

Different people have different career outlooks. Some people want to become civil servants; some people hope to start their own business; some people dream of being freelancers, and so on.

However, my ideal job is teaching. Firstly, I'm told that teachers have a high income. With the high income, I can open a training school to help the children in poor families with their education. Secondly, teachers always have summer and winter holidays, thus I will have more free time to relax myself. More importantly, teachers are angels to students, who can pass on the knowledge to students as well as help them develop their hobbies and interests. I can't imagine how happy I will feel when I see my students become elites.

In order to be a qualified teacher, I should read more books to acquire more knowledge, and train my patience and improve my communication and handwriting abilities.

▶ 参考范文三

My Ideal Job

As college students, we will step into the society, and now we need to prepare for our future and arrange for our future career life, we need to take into consideration what to do in the future, my ideal job is to be a teacher. These three reasons support my idea.

First, I think to be a teacher is very interesting for me. I like to play with children and stay with them because of their innocence and purity. What's more, children's enthusiasm affects me and makes me happy. Since I was young, I always played as a teacher, and taught my little sister their lessons. If I can be a teacher, I can stay with them all day and realize my dream. Therefore, to be a teacher is my personal favorite job.

Second, I admire this job. Being a teacher is a holy job. Teachers spend their whole life spreading their knowledge and morality to students. Teachers waste their youth to make contribution to our nation. Teachers cultivate some great persons who make beneficial to the society. For example, Confucius was a great teacher in our country, and his achievement is so great that no one can surpass him.

Third, I think to be a teacher depends on my character. I am outgoing and I have a strong sense of responsibility. I like to communicate with others about books or something else. I used to tutor my classmates about our book theory, and I used to find some part-time jobs like tutor, my students said that I was a responsible teacher.

二十七、主题:世界全球化

- 1. 世界各国的交往越来越频繁。
- 2. 世界全球化。
- 3. 你怎么看。

▶ 参考范文

My View on Globalization

With the development of economy and technology, more and more people come to realize that

the contact between countries has become more and more closely frequent.

Nowadays almost everyone knows Coco-cola, and when we want to pursue all aspects of all-around development, we can't avoid staying in contact with other countries. So globalization has become a unstoppable trend. Different people have different point of views. Some people believe that globalization is a good thing, because they enjoy the convenience and quality life globalization brings, whereas others argue that the developed countries are the only beneficiaries of globalization, and the developing countries in the course of globalization suffered a series of environmental pollution problems. Globalization is a double-edged sword.

As far as I'm concerned, we should look at both sides of globalization. Only when we seize the opportunity of development and meet the challenges can we gain the upper hand in the competition.

二十八、主题:大学寝室生活

- 1. 寝室生活是大学生活的重要组成部分。
- 2. 但寝室生活中也容易出现很多问题。
- 3. 你对大学寝室生活有何建议。

▶ 参考范文

My View on University Dorm Life

Some people say that the most interesting and challenging part about university life is the life in dormitory. In university, we share much more time with our roommates, and thus we may have a close relationship with them.

However, sometimes problems arise. First, we may find one of our roommates not so easygoing, whose characters are intolerable to us. In addition, due to the busy schedule for study and other activities, we lack time to communicate with our roommates so that we lost each other's trust.

Facing these problems, some advice may be helpful. Most crucially, we should not be self-centered when living in a group. Furthermore, it is necessary to spare some time to interact with our roommates and build a good relationship with them. By these efforts, I believe, we can have a memorable dorm life during college years.

二十九、主题:微博

- 1. 微博迅速成为流行的网络交流平台。
- 2. 微博火热的原因。
- 3. 在你看来,大学生应如何对待微博。



On the Popularity of Weibo

Writing miniblog, adding celebrities as friends and having followers or fans do not just sound tempting. In fact, Weibo, or microblog, has become the most popular social networking tool in China.

Why does Weibo become such a fashion recently? The major reasons are listed as follows. To start with, in the fast-paced modern society, more often than not, people do not have time to write a long and thorough article on their blog. Therefore, Weibo, which allows 140 words at maximum, is readily accepted. Secondly, Weibo is a fast way to know the world. The information on Weibo update fast, because every user can contribute it by posting, forwarding and on commenting the latest news.

In my opinion, college students should use Weibo to learn new ideas and communicate with people from all walks of life. However, they should not include in it.

三十、主题:汉语热

- 1. 世界各地兴起了汉语热。
- 2. 汉语热兴起的原因。
- 3. 我的看法。

▶ 参考范文

On Chinese Fever

Chinese language learning has been constantly heating up all over the world. It is reported that Chinese is taught in more than 100 countries and millions of overseas people are learning Chinese.

Why does Chinese fever sweep the world? There are mainly two reasons. To begin with, it has become a consensus that China is the biggest market in the world, thus many foreigners learn Chinese in order to obtain more opportunities. Furthermore, as the political and economic status of China has been greatly enhanced in the past decades, Chinese culture has also been widely spread. Numerous people are fascinated by China and are eager to learn its language so that they can understand its culture better.

I think that Chinese fever indeed reflects the influence of China in the world. However, I hope that personal interest, rather than economic benefits, will become the main reason for learning Chinese. And I expect more exchanges between different minds and cultures can benefit our country.

第六部分

专升本英语词汇必备

专升本必备系列:

英语高频词组 (一)



a few 少许,一些

a great deal/a good deal 许多, 大量

a great many/a good many 许多, 大量

a little一些,少许;少许,一点儿

a lot/a lot of/lots of 大量, 许多; 非常,

相当

a number of 许多

about to 即将

above all 首先, 尤其

accustomed to 习惯于

add to 增加,添加,补充

add up to 总计, 等于

after a while 过了一会儿

after all 毕竟, 虽然这样

agree on/upon 同意

agree with 与 …… 意见一致

ahead of 在……之前, 先于

ahead of time 提前

aim at 瞄准, 针对

all at once 突然

all of a sudden 突然

all out 全力以赴

all over 到处, 遍及

all right 行,可以;顺利,良好

all round 周围, 处处

all the same 仍然,照样地

and so forth/and so on 等等

apply to 将……应用于;涂,抹

approve of 赞赏,同意;批准

around the clock/round the clock 昼夜不

断地

as a matter of fact 实际情况, 真相

as a result 由于, 因此

as a rule 通常

as far as/so far as 只要, 就……而言

as for/as to 至于; 就……而言

as if/as though 好像, 仿佛

as long as/so long as 只要,如果;既然

as soon as 一······就

as usual 像往常一样, 照例

as well as 既 ······ 又, 除 ······ 之外

as well 同样,也倒不如,不妨

as...as 与 ·····一样

ask for 请求,要求

at a loss 困惑,不知所措

at a time 每次, 一次

at all costs 无论如何,不惜任何代价

at all 完全, 根本

at any rate 无论如何, 至少

at best/at the best 充其量, 至多

at first 最初,首先

at hand 在手边, 在附近

at heart 内心,实质上

at home 在家,在国内;自在,自如

at large 总的,一般;在逃

at last 最终,终于

at least 最低限度

at most/at the most 最多, 至多

at once 立刻, 马上

at present 目前,现在

at cost of 以……为代价 at the moment 此刻 at times 有时 at work 在工作, 忙于 at worst/at the worst 在最坏的情况下 back and forth 来回, 往返 back down/off 放弃, 让步, 退却 back up 支持,援助 based on 以……为基础 be friends with 对……友好,与……交上 朋友 be made up of 由……组成,构成 because of 由于,因为 before long 不久以后 begin with 从……开始 benefit from 受益于 both ... and... 既 ······ 又 ······ break away from 脱离, 逃跑 break down 分解, 瓦解 break in 强行进入, 闯入; 打断, 插嘴 break into 闯入 break out 突然发生, 爆发 break through 突破 break up 打碎,拆散 bring about 使发生 bring forward 将……提前;提议 bring out 使出现, 使明显 bring up 抚养,教育;提出问题 build up 增长;积累;增强 burn out 烧掉 burn up 烧尽 by accident/by chance 偶然, 碰巧 by all means 一定, 务必 by and by 不久以后,将来 by far ·····得多 by hand 用手 by heart 牢记, 凭记忆

by itself 单独地, 独自地 by means of 用, 凭借 by mistake 错误地 by the way 顺便提一下,另外 by turns 轮流, 交替 by way of 通过……方式 call for 要求、需要 call off 取消 call on/upon 访问, 拜访, 号召, 呼吁 call up 召集, 动员; 打电话 cannot help 禁不住,忍不住 care for 照顾, 关心, 喜欢 carry on 继续,坚持下去;从事,经营 carry out 执行, 贯彻 catch fire 着火, 烧着 catch up with 追上, 赶上 check in 办理登记手续 check out 结账后离开; 检验, 核查 check up / on 校对, 检验, 检查 clear up 解释,澄清;(天气)变晴 come about 发生,产生 come across 偶遇,碰到;发生效果 come off 成功, 奏效 come on 请,来吧,快点 come out 出版,刊出;传出,长出;结果 是,结局是 come round/around 来访, 前来; 苏醒, 复原 come through 经历, 脱险 come to 苏醒,复苏 come true 实现, 达到 come up 出现 compare to 把……比作 consist in 在于, 存在 consist of 由……构成,由……组成 contribute to 为……出力, 做贡献 convince ...of 使信服

correspond to 相当于,对应,符合 count up 把 ······相加 cross out 删去,取消 cut back 削减,减少 cut down 削減,減少,降低 cut in 插嘴, 打断 cut off 切掉,剪去,删去 deal with 处理,对付;讨论 die down 渐渐消失, 平息 die out 消灭, 灭 do away with 消灭, 丢掉 do one's best 尽力而为 do without 没有……也行,将就 draw up 写出, 画出, 草拟 dress up 穿上盛装, 打扮得漂漂亮亮 drop by/in 顺便来访 drop out 逃学, 离队出走 due to 由于 each other 互相 either ...or ...不是 就是 enjov oneself 过得快乐 even if/even though 即使, 纵然 every now and then 有时, 时时, 偶尔 every other 每隔一个的 except for 除……以外 face to face 面对面 face up to 大胆面对 fall behind 落后 fall in love (with) 相爱, 爱上 far from 绝不, 绝非 feel like 想要 figure out 算出,估计,推测 fill in 填充, 填写 fill out 填好, 填写 find out 发现,查明,找到 focus on 集中于 for example 例如

for good 永久的,一劳永逸的 for instance 举例说, 比如 for short 简称,缩写 for the better 好转,向好的方向发展 for the moment 暂时, 目前 for the present 目前,暂时 for the time being 目前, 暂时 from time to time 时常 get across 解释清楚, 使人了解 get along (with) 相处;有进展,有起色 get away (from) 逃脱, 离开 get hold of 抓住. 掌握 get in 收获:到达、进站 get off 下车,从……下来;动身,开始 get on (with) 继续做; 上车; 在……方面 取得进展 get out of 逃避,改掉 get over 克服. (从病中) 恢复过来 get rid of 摆脱,除去 get through 结束,完成;接通电话 get together 集会,聚会 get up 起床,起立 give away 泄露,暴露,出卖 give back 送还、恢复 give in 投降, 让步, 认输 give off 发出,放出 give out 分发,分派 give rise to 引起,造成 give up 放弃,辞去;投降,屈服 give way to 让位于,被……代替 go about 从事,干:闲逛 go after 追逐, 追求 go ahead 开始, 前进, 领先 go along with 陪同前往, 随行 go around/round 足够分配 go by 经过 go for 竭力想取得: 喜爱: 支持, 拥护

go in for 从事,致力于,追求,沉迷于 go into 研究, 讨论,调查,审查 go off 爆炸,被发射,离去,走调 go on with继续,持续 go on the stage 当演员 go out 熄灭 go over 浏览,读一遍,检查,复习,重 说(读.看) go through 完成,做完,检查,审查, 搜查 go with 陪同前往,与……一致 go without 没有,将就,没有……也行 good for 有效,适用,胜任 had better 最好还是,应该 hand down 传下来, 传给, 往下递 hand in 交上, 递交 hand in hand 手拉手, 联合, 连在一起 hand on 传下来, 依次传递 hand out 分发, 发给 hand over 交出,移交,让给 hang about 闲荡, 徘徊, 逗留 hang on to 紧握住, 坚持下去 hang on 紧抓不放 hang up 挂断 (电话) have back 要回, 收回 have on 穿着, 戴着 have to do with 与 ······ 有关 have to / have got to 不得不, 必须 have in mind 牢记…… head for 朝……走去 heart and soul 全心全意 help oneself 自取所需(食物等) here and there 到处, 处处 hold back 踌躇, 退缩不前 hold on to 紧紧抓住 hold on 握住不放 hold out 坚持,不屈服

hold up 举起,支撑,承载,阻挡,使 停止 how about ······如何, ·····怎么样 hurry up 使赶快, 迅速完成 if only 要是 ······就 in a hurry 匆忙,立即 in a moment 一会儿 in a sense 从某种意义上说 in a word 总而言之 in addition to 除……之外, 加之 in advance 提前, 预先 in all 总共,共计 in any case 总之,无论如何 in brief 简单地说 in case of 假如, 万一 in case 假如,以防 in charge of 负责, 管理 in common 共用, 共有 in danger 在危险中 in debt 欠债,欠情 in detail 详细地 in difficulty 处境困难 in effect 实际上, 事实上 in fact 实际上, 事实上 in favo(u)r of 赞成, 支持, 有利于 in front of 在……前面, 面对 in future 今后,从今以后 in general 通常,一般来说 in half 成两半 in hono (u) r of 向 …… 表敬意, 为庆 祝……, 为纪念…… in no time 立即, 马上 in one's way/in the way 妨碍, 阻碍 in order that 以便 in order to 以便,为了 in order 整齐, 秩序井然 in other words 换句话说,也就是说

in particular 特别,尤其,详细地 in person 亲自 in place 在适当的位置 in place of 代替 in practice 实际上, 在实践中 in public 公众地 in question 在考虑中, 在议论中 in return (for) 作为回报,作为报答 in secret 秘密地、私下地 in short 简言之, 总之 in sight 被看见, 在望 in spite of 尽管,不顾,虽然 in tears 流着泪,含泪,哭 in the end 最后,终于 in the face of 面对 in the first place 起初,首先 in the future 将来 in the least 一点, 丝毫 in the world 究竟, 到底 in time 及时地, 适时地 in turn 依次,轮流 insist on/upon 坚持, 坚持认为 instead of 代替 interfere in/with 妨碍, 阻碍; 干扰, 干涉 just now 方才 keep an eye on 留意, 照看 keep back 阻止、阻挡、隐瞒、保留 keep down 控制, 压制, 镇压, 压低, 放 低 (声音) keep house 管理家务 keep in touch 保持联系 keep off 不接近, 避开 keep on 继续, 保持 keep one's word 守信用 keep out of 躲开, 置身……之外 keep track 通晓事态,注意动向

keep up 继续,坚持,保持,维持 keep ...in mind 记住…… knock down 撞倒, 击倒 knock out 打昏,淘汰 laugh at 讥笑, 嘲笑 lay down 放下,拟定,铺设 lay off (临时) 解雇 lay out 安排, 布置,设计,摆开,陈列 lead the way 带路, 引路 lead to 通向,导致,引起 learn ... by heart 牢记 leave alone 听其自然,不要去管 leave behind 落后,把……留下,忘带 leave out 省略, 遗漏 let alone 听其自然,不要去管,更不用说 let down 放下,降低,使失望 let go 放开, 松手 let in 让 进入. 放 进来 let off 放 (炮、烟火), 开枪 let out 放出,发出 line up 排队, 使排成一行 live on/by 靠 生活, 以 为食 live through 渡过, 经受住 live up to 无愧于,不辜负 look after 照顾, 关心, 照料 look at 看, 注视 look back 回顾, 回头看 look down upon 看不起 look for 寻找, 寻求 look forward to 盼望,期盼 look in 顺便看望, 访问 look into 窥视,调查,过问 look on 旁观,观看 look out 注意, 警惕 look over 检查, 查看, 调查 look through 浏览、温习 look up to 尊敬, 敬仰

keep up with 跟上,不落后

look up 查找, 查阅, 寻找, 查出 lose heart 丧失勇气,失去信心 make a difference 有影响, 很重要 make for 走向,冲向 make friends 交朋友, 友好相处 make fun of 取消, 嘲弄 make one's way 前进, 行进 make out 开列,书写,看出,辨认出,理 解,了解 make sense 讲得通, 言之有理 make sure 查明, 弄确实 make the most of 充分利用 make up 拼凑,组成,构成,编造(故 事、谎言等) make up for 补偿, 弥补 make up one's mind 决定,下决心 make use of 利用 make way 开路, 让路 mix up 混合,混淆,搞糊涂 more or less 或多或少,多少有点 neither...nor...既不······也不······ never mind 不要紧, 没关系 no doubt 无疑, 必定 no longer 不再, 已不 no matter...无论,不管…… no more 不再 no sooner...than 一······就······ no wonder 难怪,怪不得 not as/so ...as...不如 那样 not only ...but (also) ...不仅······而且······ now that 既然 of course 自然, 当然, 无疑 off and on 断断续续,不时地 off duty 下班 on behalf of 代表…… on board 在船、飞机上 on business 出差

on duty 值班, 当班 on earth 究竟到底 on fire 着火 on foot 步行 on hand 在手边 on one's own 独自, 靠自己 on purpose 故意地 on sale 上市;减价 on schedule 按预定时间 on the average 平均; 一般说来 on the countrary 相反 on the one hand, on the other hand $-\bar{p}$ 面,另一方面 on the road 在旅途中 on the spot 当场, 在现场 on the whole 总的来说 on time 准时 on top of 在……之上 once in a while 偶尔, 有时 once more 再一次 once upon a time 从前 once after another 一个接一个 one another 互相 or else 否则, 要不然 or so 大约, 左右 out of 在 外, 离开; 出于; 缺乏, 没有 out of breath 上气不接下气 out of control 失去控制 out of danger 脱离危险 out of date 陈旧的, 过时的 out of doors 在户外 out of order 发生故障,失调 out of place 不适当的 out of practice 久不练习, 荒疏 out of sight 看不见 out of the question 不可能的, 办不到的

out of touch 失去联系 out of work 失业 owing to 由于 pass away 去世 pass out 昏倒 pay attention to 注意 pay back 偿还, 回报 pick out 选出 pick up 拾起;车、船中途搭人、带货; 增加 play with 以……为消遣, 玩弄 point out 指出 pull down 拉倒, 摧毁 pull up 使停下 put across 解释清楚,说明 put aside 储存, 保留 put away 收起, 放好 put down 记下. 写下 put forward 提出 put off 推迟 put on 穿上, 戴上; 上演; 增加 (体重) put out 熄灭; 生产; 出版,发布 put up 举起, 升起, 提(价); 为 ······提 供食宿;建造,搭起;张贴 put up with 容忍, 忍受 quite a little/quite a few 相当多,不少 rather than 而不,不顾 refer to 查阅, 提到, 谈到 rely on 依靠, 信赖 remind sb. of 使想起, 提醒 result from 起因于 result in 导致 ring up 打电话 rub out 擦掉 run across 偶然遇到 run down 撞倒, 撞沉 run for 竞选

run into 偶然遇到,碰撞 run out (of) 用完, 耗尽 run over 浏览, 匆匆复习 run through 匆匆地看 see (to it) that 注意, 留心; 负责, 照料 see about 调查,查询 see into 调查, 检查 see off 给 ······送行 see through 看穿,识破 see after/for 搜寻, 寻觅 send for 派人请;索取 send in 呈报, 提交, 送来 serve as 担任: 起……作用 set about 开始,着手 set aside 宣布无效; 驳回 set back 推迟, 阻碍 set fire to 使燃烧. 点燃 set off 动身: 使爆炸: 引起 set out 动身, 开始 set up 建立,树立;资助,使自立 settle down 定居 show in 领入 show off 炫耀, 卖弄 show up 使显现, 使醒目 shut down 关闭 shut out 排除 shut up 住口; 关上全部门窗 sick of 厌烦 side by side 肩并肩,一个挨一个 sit up 熬夜 slow down 放慢速度 so far 迄今为止 so that 为了;以致 so...that/such...that/so...as to 如此……以至于 sooner or later 迟早 speak of 谈到

speak out 大声说 speed up 加速

stand by 站在旁边, 袖手旁观; 支持,

帮助

stand for 代替,代表,意味着

stand out 突出,显眼

stand up for 为 ······辩护,维护

stand up to 勇敢地面对,坚决抵抗

step by step 逐渐地

step down 让位,下台

step in 介入

step up 提高, 加快

stick to 坚持, 忠于

substitute for 替代

such as 诸如,像……那样的

sum up 总结, 概括

take a chance 冒险一试

take advantage of 利用

take after 与 ······· 相像

take apart 拆开

take care 留心; 保重

take care of 照料;承担,处理,负责

take charge 负责

take delight in 以……为乐

take down 记下,写下

take effect 生效, 见效

take...for granted 想当然

take for 认为,以为

take in 接受; 领会; 欺骗

take off 脱下;起飞

take on 呈现:接纳:承担,从事

take one's time 不急不忙, 从容进行

take over 接管

take pains 尽力, 煞费苦心

take part in 参加

take place 发生

take the place of 代替

take turns 轮流

take up 占据; 开始从事; 拿起

talk back 顶嘴

talk into 说服

talk over 商量

thanks to 由于,多亏

that is 也就是说

the moment that 一·····就······

think better of 改变主意, 重新考虑

think of 想起

think of...as 把······认为是······

think over 仔细考虑

throw away 扔掉, 抛弃

throw up 呕吐

touch on 关系到, 涉及

try on 试穿

try out 实验

try one's best 尽力

turn down 调低音量; 拒绝

turn in 上缴; 拐入

turn into 变成

turn off 关闭

turn on 打开

turn out 生产, 制造; 驱逐; 结果是, 证

明是

turn over 翻转

turn to 转向;求助于

turn up 出现,发生

under control 被控制住

under the circumstances 在这种情况下

under way 进行中

up to 一直到; 等于; 忙于

up to date 时兴的

专升本必备系列:

英语高频词组 (二)



- 1. account for
- ① 说明 (原因、理由等),是……的原因;解释,对……做出解释 (或说明) Jack could not account for his foolish mistake.

杰克无法解释自己愚蠢的错误。

How do I account for it? 我怎么解释这件事情?

- ② 说出(钱、物等)的处理经过,讲清(各项花费、亏空原因等,说明钱的去向),报账 He has to account to the chairman for all the money he spends. 他必须向主席说明他花掉的所有钱的去向。
- ③ 导致,引起,起因于
 The flood accounted for the bad crop. 水灾导致歉收。
- ④ 对 (或为) ……负责 You will have to account for the disappearance of the money. 你要对丢失的钱负责。
- ⑤ 共计达; (在数量、比例上) 占
 It accounts for 15 per cent of all air accidents. 它占所有空难的 15%。
- 2. be about to do sth... when 正要做某事……突然…… I was about to go shopping when it suddenly began to rain. 我刚要出去买东西,天就突然下雨了。
- 3. by accident / by chance / accidentally 偶然地
 We met together by accident / by chance / accidentally. 我们偶然相会。
- 4. come across sb. 偶然遇见 Perhaps I shall come across him in France. 也许我会在法国遇见他。
- act on sth. 依……行事
 Each student should act on the rules and regulations of the school.
 每个学生都应该遵守学校的规章制度。
- 6. add to 增加, 加上; add up to 总计达
 Do you have anything to add to the list? 你还有什么想要添加到这个列表上的吗?
 The number of the patients added up to three hundred last week.

上星期,病人总数达到了300。

7. in advance / ahead of time 提前

If there is any change about the time of the meeting, please notify us in advance/ ahead of time. 开会时间如有变,请提前告诉我们。

8. take advantage of = make use of 利用

We can take advantage of computer to analyze data.

我们可以利用计算机来分析数据。

A good habit in learning is to make full use of class time.

学习的好习惯是充分利用课堂时间。

9. afford (to do) sth. 买/花/用/支付得起

It's hard to imagine how he can afford (to buy) a house on his small salary.

很难想象他靠微薄的薪水能买得起一所房子。

10. aim at doing sth. 确定目标做某事

Aiming at winning the game, he practiced hard every day.

为赢得比赛,他每天努力练习。

11. allow / permit / forbid doing sth. 允许/ 允许/ 禁止做某事

allow / permit / forbid 后跟 doing 做宾语

If we allow discrimination against one group of people, there is no telling who might be next.

如果我们允许歧视某个群体,那不知道谁会是下一个。

12. allow / permit/ forbid sb. to do sth. 允许/ 允许/ 禁止某人做某事

allow / permit / forbid 后跟 to do 做宾补

Allow me to pose several questions. 请允许我提几个问题。

13. apologize to sb. for sth. 因某事向某人道歉

He apologized to his teacher for his being late.

他因为迟到向老师道歉。

14. make the bed 铺床,整理床铺

Will you make the bed immediately after getting up in the morning?

你早上起床后会马上整理床铺吗?

15. put sb. to shame 使某人相形见绌

His courage put all the other students to shame.

他的勇气令其他学生感到惭愧不如。

16. be responsible for 和 be responsible to 都有"对……负责"的意思,有时它们可以

互换, 但它们的用法有点不同

be responsible for sth / doing sth 对……负责;负责做某事

be responsible to do sth. / sb. 负责做某事;对某人负责

Do you want to be responsible for your own life decisions?

你真的想要为你自己的人生决定负责吗?

You have to be responsible for making such a bad decision.

= You have to be responsible to make such a bad decision.

你不得不为做出如此糟糕的决定负责。

We just have to be responsible to ourselves.

我们只需要对自己负责。

17. be interested in sth. 感兴趣; be absorbed/engrossed in sth. 极其感兴趣的,全神贯注的; be keen on sth. 热衷于……

He was a great president. I'm very interested in what happened to him.

他是一个伟大的总统、我对于发生在他身上的事情很感兴趣。

Again, Hanna became absorbed in the unfolding of the book.

汉娜又一次沉浸在这本书的故事情节中。

Daniel is now engrossed in watching video clips of a red toy train on a circular track.

丹尼尔现在正在全神贯注地看一个红色的玩具火车在环形轨道上行驶的录像 片段。

Mary is very keen on etching. 玛丽很喜爱蚀刻艺术。

18. be eager to do sth. / be eager for sth. 渴望, 迫不及待做某事/ 对……很热心 I was reluctant to abandon the life I knew and eager for the challenge.

一方面, 我不愿意放弃我所熟悉的生活; 另一方面, 我又渴望去迎接这个挑战。

The girl in the shop is always eager to please every customer.

这位女店员总是很热心地对待每一位顾客。

19. be curious about sth. 对某事好奇

His wife peered at him, looking curious as to how he might answer the question. 他的妻子凝视着他,对他会怎么回答这个问题好像很好奇。

20. be indifferent to sth. 对……感到无所谓,对……漠不关心 Is he actually so utterly indifferent for my life? 他对我的生命真的是这样完全漠不关心吗?

21. be inferior to 低于……, 劣等于……

I must admit that I thought our boat was inferior to our competitors' boats. 我必须承认,我曾经想过我们的船不如对手的船好。

22. be new to sth. 对……陌生,对……不熟悉 Many of your employees will probably be new to the workforce. 你的许多员工或许没有工作经验。

23. be obedient to 服从于

You should be obedient to your parents. 你必须听从父母的话。

24. with/in regard to sth. 关于 (用于点题); in this/that regard 关于这/那方面 The expression of feeling being the object, these deficiencies in regard to form do not jar on the hearer.

既然情感的表现是它的目的,那么,关于形式上的缺点就不会使听众听着刺耳。 In this regard, we are indeed like ants. 在这方面,我们确实像蚂蚁。

- 25. be regarded / thought of / considered as 被认为,被当成,看作
 Though 20 years old, the book is still regarded as the authority on the subject.
 尽管出版已有 20 年之久,这本书仍然被视作这一领域的权威论著。
- 26. be content / satisfied / pleased with 对……感到满意
 True happiness comes when we learn to be content with what we have.
 真正的幸福感会在我们学会对我们拥有的感到满足时来到。
- 27. be content to do sth. 愿意做某事

 He is content to do many things which all around him think unnecessary, to say the least. 他甘愿做许多周围人认为是没有必要做的事,并且尽量少说话。
- 28. hold one's breath / out of breath 屏住呼吸/ 上气不接下气 It's possible to hold one's breath for three minutes, with practice. 经过练习,屏住呼吸三分钟是可能的。
 When I hurried to school, I was almost out of breath.
 赶到学校时我几乎是上气不接下气了。
- 29. burst into tears / laughters 突然大哭/ 大笑 (burst into 强调突然迸发) Michael immediately burst into tears. 麦克尔"哇"地一下子哭了出来。 Last night, my little sweetie burst into laughters in her beautiful dreams. 昨天晚上,宝贝两次在睡梦中大声地笑了起来。
- 30. burst out crying / laughing 突然大哭/ 大笑 Everyone was quiet when Jenny suddenly burst out crying. 大家都没出声,珍妮忽然"哇"地一声哭了起来。 She burst out laughing and pulled onto the shoulder. 她突然大笑起来,把车停在路旁。
- 31. catch up with sb. / keep up with sb. / put up with sb. 赶上某人/ 跟上某人/ 容忍某人 They should take some crash courses to catch up with their classmates. 他们应该参加一些速成课程来赶上他们的同学。

Hurry up, or you won't keep up with them. 快点, 否则你就赶不上他们了。 I'll have to put up with the noise till I move next week. 我下周就要搬了,在此之前,我还是得忍受这种噪声。

32. come into being 形成

The new system came into being in the late 19th century. 这种新体制在 19 世纪后期开始形成。

- 33. come to oneself 恢复意识; come to life 苏醒过来; 表现生动; 变得活跃; 振作起来 The drowned man cannot come to life/come to oneself. 淹死的人不能苏醒过来。 Children come to life at festival times. 孩子在节日的时候活跃起来。
- 34. have (sth.) in common with sb. 和某人有共同点 What does Beijing have in common with Mexico City, Sydney, Athens, Atlanta and Seoul? 北京与墨西哥市、悉尼、雅典、亚特兰大和首尔有何共同之处? The twins have a lot of things in common with each other. 孪生兄弟(姐妹)间有很多相似点。
- 35. encourage sb. to do sth. / encourage sb. in sth. 鼓励某人做某事 He always encourages me to work hard. 他总是鼓励我要努力工作。 He always encourages me in my study. 他总是学习上鼓励我。
- 36. take... into account = take...into consideration 把……考虑在内
 I hope my teacher will take into account my illness when he grades our test paper.
 我希望老师在给我们的试卷评分时会考虑我的病情。
- 37. be determined to do sth. / make up one's mind to do = set one's mind to do sth. = decide to do sth. 下定决心做某事

 Be determined to swim and you could discover a whole new you.

 下定决心去乘风破浪,你就一定能发现一个全新的自己。

 Only you must make up your mind to avoid strong drink.

 不过你可得先下决心不再喝酒才成。
- 38. to some degree / to some extent / in a way 从某种程度上来说
 To some degree, it is scientifically reasonable. 在某种程度上,它是科学合理的。
 To some extent, this is likely. 在某种程度上,这是有可能的。
 In a way, the tone comes with the territory. 在某种程度上,这种语气和范围有关。
- 39. range between / range from ... to (在一定范围内) 变化
 The right amount of sleep for you can range between 5 to 10 hours.
 合适的睡眠时间是保证 5~10 个小时。
 They range in price from \$3 to \$15. 它们的价格在3到15美元之间变化。

40. take delight in sth. / doing sth. 乐于……, 以……为乐

We should never take delight in others' failures.

我们不应该对别人的失败幸灾乐祸。

I take delight in cooking. 我喜爱烹饪美食。

One should not take delight in making fun of others. 人不能以取笑他人为乐。

41. depend on / rely on 依靠; feed on 用……喂养; live on 以……为生; 靠……生活 The only question is whether I will depend / rely on it consistently.

唯一的问题是,我是否应该一如既往地依赖它。

And both patterns tend to exist because they feed on each other.

而且这两种模式都会存在, 因为它们会彼此滋养。

The fish live on the plankton. 这种鱼以浮游生物为主食。

42. in the distance 在远处; at a distance 在远处, 隔一段距离

The sound of the car died away in the distance / at a distance.

小轿车发出的噪声消逝在远处。

But sometimes, very formal clothes will keep you at a distance from your colleagues.

但是有时候,非常正式的衣服会让你和同事之间产生距离。

43. fail to do sth. 不能;未能做;没有能力做某事;使……失望(这件事还没做) fail in sth/doing sth. 在某些方面失败/不足;考试不及格(强调这件事已经做过了,结果失败的)

He failed to catch the first train. 他没能赶上第一班火车。

People seem to fail to take into account the fact that education does not end with graduation. 人们似乎没有考虑到教育并不是终止于毕业的事实。

I fail to see why you find it so amusing. 我弄不懂你们为什么觉得这件事如此好笑。 He has been failing in health for the last two years.

近两年来,他的健康状况一直在衰退。

(很少用 doing, 一般后接名词。大部分表示"考试不及格"的意思。比如, 当你表达"同学没有完成作业"时, 可以说 She failed in doing his homework. 她的作业没做完。但不能说 She failed to do his homework.)

- 44. be due to do sth. 按期,按理该做某事; due to 因为,由于
 The train is due to arrive at 5 o'clock. 火车应在五点到达。
 Due to the internal rebellion within the army. 由于军队内部的反叛行为。
 The failure is totally due to his carelessness. 失败都是他的粗心造成的。
- 45. have an effect on sth. 对……有影响

Smoking has a bad effect on people's health. 吸烟有害健康。

46. make efforts to do sth. 千方百计做某事;努力做某事 But anyway, we should make efforts to start with. 但是无论怎样,我们应该努力开始。

47. expect sb. to do sth. 期待某人做某事; want sb. to do sth. 想让某人做某事; count on sb. to do sth. 指望某人做某事

Oh, come on, you can't expect me to believe that!

好了,别胡扯了,你反正别指望我会相信那件事。

My father and mother want to invite you to go to the movies. (invite sb. to do sth. 邀请某人做某事) 我父母想邀请你一起去看电影。

In times of trouble, can you count on your boss to help out?

有麻烦的时候, 你可以指望老板伸出援手吗?

48. force sb. to do sth. 迫使某人做某事; make sb. do sth. / have sb. do sth. / get sb. to do sth. / let sb. do 让某人做某事

He could not force me to pay. 他不能强迫我付款。

Chinese teacher makes students recite the text that they just learned.

中文老师让学生背诵他们刚学过的课文。

49. have/lost faith in sth. 对做某事有/失去信心; be faithful to sth. 对……忠诚 I still have faith in him. 我对他仍有信心。

The public has lost faith in the government. 公众已对政府失去信心。

A man should be faithful to his true feelings. 人应该忠实于内心的感受。

50. be fond of doing sth. 对做某事感兴趣

My grandfather was very fond of handing out advice to all my friends. 我祖父喜欢对我的每一位朋友大赠忠告。

51. be fit / suitable for sth. 适合, 胜任

Mary believes that she is fit for the new job. 玛丽相信她可以胜任新的工作。 This area is most suitable for growing wheat. 这一带最适宜种小麦。

52. fall asleep 入睡; fall ill 生病; fall silent 恢复寂静
Don't cry. The sick have fallen asleep. 别喊了,病人已经入睡了。
What if I fall ill while I'm away on holiday? 如果我在旅游时生病了怎么办?
The other students fall silent. 其他的学生保持沉默。

53. sb. be familiar with sth. / sth. be familiar to sb. 某人熟悉某物 He is familiar with export procedure. 他熟悉出口手续。

The list provided above should be familiar to those experienced in the definition, planning of

large initiatives.

上面提供的列表对于那些经历过大型计划的定义和计划的人来说应该是熟悉的。

54. find fault with sb. 挑某人的毛病; sb. be at fault 是某人的错; be at fault 有错, 有责任

He could always find fault with Tom's composition. 他总是挑汤姆作文的毛病。Who's at fault for starting the fight? 引起这场争斗是谁的错呢?
My memory was at fault. 我记错了。/ 我忘记了。

55. feel like doing sth. / would like to do sth. 想要做某事

Use it to remind yourself of why you want to stop, whenever you feel like smoking. 每当你想要吸烟的时候就用它提醒你自己为什么不能吸。

How many of you would like to have something like that? 你们当中有多少人愿意这样做呢?

- 56. hold on
- ① 抓住,使……位置固定 He was struggling to hold onto a rock on the face of the cliff. 他拼命挣扎着去抓悬崖壁上的一块岩石。
- ② 坚持, 固守

He said he would hold on to the truth with his blood and life. 他说他会为坚持真理而付出鲜血和生命。

③ 继续前行; (习惯等) 沿袭下来
Hold on to the third block, then turn left. 一直往前走, 到第三个街区后向左拐。
The custom has been held on nowadays. 这个习俗一直流传到现在。

④ 持续,不停止

A fierce fight held on steadily a whole day. 激烈的战斗持续了整整一天。

- ⑤ 等一等, 停一下; 等待, 停止 Just hold on a minute. I'll be back at once. 请稍等一下, 我马上就回来。
- ⑥ 不挂断电话:
 Hold on! I go to see if he's in. 别挂断, 我去看看他在不在。
- 57. hold up
- ① 举起, 抬起; 使升高

She held up her arm and wiped her tears off. 她抬起手擦去了眼角的泪。 She held up her hat to me, and I winked at her. 她向我抬了抬她的帽子,我则向她眨了眨眼。

② 使停顿、阻挡

The final of the football was held up by a heavy storm. 由于一场凶猛的暴风雨,那场足球决赛被迫停赛了。 The train he took was held up for over 2 hours. 他乘坐的火车晚点了两个多小时。

③ 拦劫,抢劫

The bank was held up last night. 昨天夜里有人抢劫了这家银行。

58. insist on / persist in / stick to 坚持
I insist on his innocence. 我坚持认为他是无辜的。
If you insist on doing something, do it every day.
如果你希望坚持做某件事, 那就坚持每天做。
If you persist in doing that you will end up in trouble.
你要坚持做那件事的话,将来麻烦可多着呢。

Try to stick to some or all of these strategies.

试着坚持下面策略中的其中一些或者全部。

- 59. knock at the door 敲门; knock into the wall 撞墙; knock into sb. 与……相撞; 撞在某人身上; knock out sb. 把……撞倒, 击昏; knock sth. off 把……打掉 At that moment there came a knock at the door. 正在这时,有人敲门了。 Please knock the nail into the wall. 请把这颗钉子钉到墙里去。 I am so hurried as to knock into my teacher. 我如此匆忙以至于撞到老师身上。 The ball hit him on the head and knocked him out. 球击中了他的头部,把他打昏了。 Who has knocked the vase off the shelf? 谁把花瓶从架子上弄掉的?
- 60. let out the secret 泄露秘密; keep sth. a secret 保守秘密 Someone has let out this secret decision to the workers. 有人已经将这个秘密决定透露给工人了。
 I have an obligation to keep secret for the taxpayer. 我有责任为纳税人保密。
- 61. before long 不久之后; long before 很久以前; it is not long before ...不久之后便…… He was sad no longer because he would see his daughter before long. 他不再沮丧了,因为他不久以后将见到自己的女儿。 I saw the film long before. 我很久以前就看过那部电影。 It was not long before I realized that how foolish I was at that time. 不久之后我便意识到我当时多么愚蠢。
- 62. be made up of / consist of / contain / include 由……构成;包含,包括

The class is made up of fifty students. = The class consists of fifty students. = The class contains/ includes fifty students. 这个班由五十名学生组成。

63. mean to do sth. 打算做某事; mean doing sth. 意味着做某事

I didn't mean to hurt you by telling you the truth.

我告诉你真相并不是打算要伤害你。

It means killing me that you lie to me.

你对我撒谎就意味着要杀了我。

64. in badly need of / in lack of / in want of 急需, 缺乏

The world badly in need of such personnel, in any case they can overcome all obstacles to complete tasks.

世界上极需这种人才,他们在任何情况下都能克服种种阻力完成任务。

As a recent graduate, certainly, I will be in lack of work experience.

当然, 作为应届毕业生, 我在工作经验方面会有所欠缺。

I'm in want of a good dictionary. 我需要一本好的词典。

65. have nothing to do with (sb.) 和 (某人) 没关系; it is none of sb. 's business 不关某人的事

The fact is, these have nothing to do with being poor.

但事实是,这些东西都与贫穷毫不相干。

I have nothing to do with my old classmates anymore.

我和我的老同学都不再有联系了。

It's none of my business, but I think you should work harder.

这不关我的事,不过我认为你应该更加努力才是。

66. object to sth / doing sth 反对某事/ 反对做某事

If she does not object to it, why should we?

只要她不反对, 我们为什么要反对?

I object to doing things that computers can do.

我反对去做那些电脑可以做的事情。

- 67. occur to sb.
- ① ……发生在 happen to sb. (especially of unpleasant events)

 I hope no accident has occurred to him. 我希望他没出什么事。
- ② 被想起(到) come to mind of (sb. / sth.)

 Such a simple explanation never occurred to me! 我从未想到如此简单的解释。

 A wonderful idea occurred to him. 他突然想到一个妙主意。
- ③ an idea occurred to 某人突然想到一个主意

An idea occurred to Tom that he can hide himself under the bridge. 汤姆突然想到他可以藏在桥底下。

68. owe sth. to 把……归功于
He owed all his success to the supports from his family.
他把成功归功于家人的支持。

69. sth. cost sb. some money
This book costs me \$5. 这本书花了我5美元。

70. sb. spends/ spent some money on sth. / (in) doing sth.

I spent \$5 on this book. = I spent \$5 (in) buying this book.
我花了5美元买这本书。

71. it takes / took sb. some money to do sth.

It took me \$5 to buy this book. 买这本书花了我5美元。

72. take place 发生, 举行; take one's place 取代某人; take place of 代替, 取代; take the place of sb. 代替……, 取代……, 接替……的位置
The discussion took place in a famous villa on the lake's shore.

讨论发生在湖边一座著名的别墅里。

When does the wedding take place / come off? 什么时候举行婚礼?
No one can take your manager's place. 没有人能代替你们经理的工作。
Nothing can take place of persistence. 没有什么可以取代坚持!
Who will take the place of Mr. Smith? 谁将取代史密斯先生呢?

73. provide sb. with sth. 向某人提供某物; provide sth. for sb. 提供什么东西给某人 Our parents are willing to provide money and food for us students so that we can study better. = Our parents are willing to provide us students with money and food so that we can study better.

我们的父母愿意为我们学生提供金钱和食物、这样我们就能更好地学习。

74. rather than 而不是: other than 除了. 不同于

He bought the red tie rather than the green one.

他买了那条红领带而不是那条绿色的。

He never speaks to me other than to ask for something.

他除了向我要东西, 从不和我说话。

She seldom appears other than happy. 她很少有不高兴的时候。

75. make room for 为……腾地方

We all have to make room for each other's personalities and needs. 我们必须为彼此的个性习惯和生活需要留出空间。

76. make sense 有意义

What you have said makes no sense. 你刚才说的话都是废话。

77. reason with sb. 规劝某人

I have tried to reason with him, but he is too stubborn.

我尽力说服他,但是他太固执了。

78. stop sb. from doing sth. / keep sb. from doing / prevent sb. from doing 阻止某人做某事 People should be stopped by us from cutting down trees. (from 不可省略) 我们应该阻止人们伐树。

She stopped the boy (from) climbing the tree. (from 可省略) = The boy was stopped from climbing the tree. (from 不可以省) 她阻止那个男孩爬树。

We should keep children from playing games too much.

我们应防止孩子们过度玩游戏。

The heavy rain prevented / stopped them (from) going out. = The heavy rain kept them from going out. 大雨使得他们不能外出。

79. suffer from sth. 遭受……痛苦

Our business has suffered from lack of investment. 我们的企业因缺乏投资而受苦。 I'm suffering from a real lack of time this week. 我这周为时间不够用而痛苦。 Mrs. White's little boy is suffering from a bad flu bug again. 怀特太太的小男孩又患了严重的感冒。

- 80. be tired of doing 厌烦……; be tired with/from doing 因为……而疲倦 I am tired of living abroad. 我对生活在国外感到厌倦了。
 He felt tired from walking. 他觉得走累了。
- 81. keep in touch with sb. / lose touch with sb. 和某人保持联系/和某人失去联系 Please keep in touch with me. 请与我保持联系。

 Many people lose touch with what they want. 很多人在他们想要什么上迷失了方向。
- 82. used to do sth. / would do sth. 过去常常
 He used to bike his son to school. 他过去常用摩托车送儿子上学。
 When my parents were away, my grandmother would take care of me.
 我父母外出的时候总是祖母照顾我。
- 83. be / get used to doing sth. / be accustomed to doing sth. 习惯做某事 I am used to teaching English. 我对教英语已经习惯了。(一般用于指自然而然地成为习惯)

Mrs. Smith was not accustomed to leaving home during the winter. 史密斯夫人不习惯冬天出门。(一般用于指自然而然地成为习惯)

84. be used to do sth. / be used for sth. 被用来做某事 Wood is used to make paper. 木头被用来造纸。 These essays can be used for doing to read the material. 这些文章能够用来做阅读资料。

85. by the way 顺便说; in the way 碍事, 挡道; in a way 从某种程度上来说; on the way 在路上; in no way 绝不; in this way 就这样; 用这种方式 By the way, which province are you from? 顺便问一下, 您是哪个省来的?

Don't stand in the way. 闪开,别挡道。

In a way, you're right. 从某一点上看, 你是对的。

My car broke down on my way to the company. 在去公司的路上,我的车子抛锚了。 You can in no way surrender. 你绝不能投降。

In this way they can better apply theory to practice.

这样他们就能更好地把理论运用到实践中去。

Only in this way can we improve ourselves. 只有用这种方法我们才能不断提高自己。

- 86. be willing to do sth. / be unwilling to do 愿意做某事/ 不愿意做某事 He cherishes friendship and is willing to do anything for his friends. 他珍视友谊,为朋友他什么事情都肯做。

 She is unwilling to do her homework. 她不愿意做家庭作业。
- 87. have a word with sb. 和某人谈话; have words with sb. 和某人吵架 Let me have a word with my boss first. 先让我跟我的老板谈一谈吧。 They have had words with her. 他们和她吵过架。
- 88. hold/keep one's word 守约; go back on / break one's word 失信于人,食言 I told you I was as able to keep my word as you. 我告诉你我能说话算数。
 After promising to keep the book for me, he broke his word and sold it to someone else.
 他答应把书留给我之后,却食言把它卖给了别人。

Never break your word, or no one will trust you. 不要食言, 否则没有人会信任你。

89. eat one's word 收回前言,承认错误; put in a word 插嘴; in other words 换句话说,换言之; in word and in deed 在言语上和行动上; half a word 只言片语 If you are right, I'll eat my words. 如果你是对的,我就收回我说过的话。 He put in a good word for me. 他插进来为我说了一句好话。 In other words, what have I been afraid of all this time? 换句话说,我这一直以来害怕的到底是什么呀?

He is faithful in word and in deed. 他无论说话、办事都可以信得过。 You'll never get even half a word out of me! 你们从我口里半个字也套不出来!

90. be worth doing / be worthy to do 值得做某事
The book is worth reading. (be worth 后跟 doing 主动表被动)
The book is worthy to be read. 这本书值得一读。

91. be independent of sth. 独立于; be dependent on sth. 依赖于
Now you are an adult. You should be independent of your parents.
现在你是个成年人了。你不应该依靠自己的父母了。
You'll be dependent on network speed and availability.
您将依赖于网络速度和可用性。

92. be dismissed from / be fired from 被……解雇
Do you have a doubt whether she will be dismissed from school?
你怀疑她是否会被学校开除吗?

You are going to be fired from your job this Friday. 这个星期五, 你会被炒鱿鱼。

93. protect sb. from sth. / doing sth. 保护某人免受,保护……不受伤害,免于…… (from 不能省略,后接能带来伤害或损害之物)

The umbrella can protect people from the rain. 雨伞可以保护人们不受雨淋。

You had better wear sunglasses to protect your eyes from the sun.

你最好戴上墨镜,这样能保护眼睛不受阳光的伤害。

Hair can protect our heads from being hurt. 头发可以保护我们的头部免受伤害。

94. abandon oneself to 陷入,沉湎于(某种感情,如绝望) addicted to (使)沉溺于,(使)嗜好,热衷于,对……上瘾; indulge in 放任,纵容,使满足,使快乐,迁就

Their decision to abandon taking the trip was made because of financial constraints. 他们决定放弃这次出游,因为财力有限。

Durian is a strange fruit. You either hate it or love it. But once you get started, it's easy to get addicted to it.

榴莲是很奇异的水果。你要么讨厌它,要么爱它。但是,一旦开始吃,你很容易上瘾。

I've worked really hard all week. This weekend I will indulge in a little bit of relaxation. 我整星期工作都忙得不可开交,这个周末我会纵容自己,小小放松一下。

95. appeal to sb. 吸引某人; appeal to sb. to do sth. / appeal to sb. for sth. 呼吁, 呼吁……做; appeal for (mercy, sympathy, charity) 乞求 (怜悯, 同情, 施舍), 恳求, 要求; appeal against 上诉, 申诉

The bright colors always appeal to the young girls. 鲜艳的颜色总是会吸引年轻女孩。 He appealed to voters to go to the polls tomorrow. 他呼吁选民们明天去投票站。 The police appealed for the witness to come forward. 警方呼吁目击者挺身而出。 *The Guardian* has said it will appeal against the verdict. 《卫报》已表示将对这一判决提出上诉。

96. sb. be involved in sth. 某人被牵涉进某事中; include in 包括在……中 I don't want to be involved in their quarrel. 我不想搅和进他们的争吵中。 What information should I include in the paper to support my argument? 论文中应该包括哪些材料以支持我的论点?

97. attach to

- ① 结, 系, 贴; 装; 连接
 A tag was attached to each article. 每件物品都贴上了标签。
 He attached an aerial (或 antenna) to the radio. 他给收音机装上了天线。
- ② 依附;参加(党派、团体等),使成为一份子,使在一起 He attached himself to our group. 他参加了我们组。
- ③ 认为有 (重要性等),结合;联系 We attached no significance to his statement. 我们认为他的声明毫无意义。
- ④ (使) 属于; (使) 归于, 归因于; 归属

 The blame for this accident attaches to the man who destroyed the signal.
 这个事故的责任归于那个破坏信号的人。
- ⑤ 使爱慕, 使依恋, 爱恋; 使喜爱 He is ardently attached to his wife. 他热切地爱着妻子。
- ⑥ 隶属于, 附属于
 She was attached to the Chinese Embassy. 她隶属于中国大使馆。
- ⑦ 附加 (条件等); 加 (用法说明、附录等) an index attached to the dictionary 附在字典上的索引

98. see to

- ① 负责准备;照看,照料 Whose turn to see to the dinner today? 今天轮到谁做饭了? Will you see to the children? 你可以照看下孩子们吗?
- ② 注意, 留意 See to the fire. 当心火。
- ③ 通常用于 see to it that = make sure that 确保……, 务必

Can you see it that the fax goes this afternoon?

你保证今天下午就把传真发出去, 行吗?

See to it that the lights are turned off when you leave the office.

你离开办公室时, 务必把灯关掉。

99. yield to

① 屈服于;向……投降;服从,顺从

We shall never yield to a conqueror. 我们绝不会向征服者屈服。

He is not the kind of people to yield to threats. 他不是那种屈服于威胁的人。

He yielded to temptation. 他屈服于诱惑之下。

② 同意接受或照做

At last they yield to our advice. 他们终于听从了我们的劝告。

③ (物等) 对……退让; 对……失去抵御力; 被……替代, 为……所取代

The ice has yield to the sun. 冰在阳光下融化了。

Barges yielded to road vehicles for transporting goods.

在货物运输方面, 驳船让位给了公路车辆。

④ 给(大路上的车辆)让路

Yield to oncoming traffic. 给迎面驶来的车辆让路。

⑤(议会中)把发言权让给

They yielded to the senator from the South. 他们把发言权让给了南方议员。

100. be sensitive to 对……感到敏感

The little girl is very sensitive to the sunshine. 那个小女孩对阳光很敏感。

101. be obedient to 服从于

Although I felt very unhappy, I was obedient to mum.

尽管感到不快,但我还是顺从了妈妈。

At home, she became obedient to her mother and did a lot of housework for her.

在家里,她变得很孝顺,经常主动帮母亲做家务。

专升本必备系列:

英语近义词、形近词辨析

- 1. ability, enable, capable, be able to do 能够做……
- ① have the ability to do 能够做,有能力做…… He has the ability to make very good boat. 他有能力做一艘很好的船。
- ② enable sb. to do 使……能做…… Internet has enabled us to get information from all over the world. 互联网使我们能够从世界各地得到信息。
- ③ be capable of 能够做…… He is capable of drawing oil painting. 他能画油画。
- ④ be able to = can 能够

 He is able to read and write in English. 他能用英语阅读和写作。
- 2. 表示"获得,得到,赢得"的一类动词。
- ① acquire 多指经过努力逐步获得才能、知识、习惯等,也可用于对财物等的获得,该词强调"一经获得就会长期持有"的含义。

They must struggle against their circumstances to acquire the basics of survival and human dignity. 他们必须在这样的环境下进行斗争,以此来获得基本的生存权和尊严。

② attain 指经过不懈的努力获得未曾预料到的结果: 也可指达到某一目标。

How can we attain fulfillment in this world? 在这个世界上我们怎样才能取得成就?

Still greater efforts are needed before we can attain our goal. 我们必须百尺竿头,更进一步,才能达到目的。

③ obtain 获得,买到,用于正式语体中。

It is difficult to obtain reliable evidence. 很难获得可靠的证据。

You can also obtain knowledge through practice.

你还可以从实践经验中获得知识。

- ④ gain 指通过较大努力获得某种利益或好处。
 This should help you gain trust. 这可以帮助你获得信任。
- ⑤ earn 挣得,赢得,指因工作等而得到报酬或待遇。 How much do you earn a week? 你一星期赚多少钱?

- ⑥ achieve 得到,获得,多指成就、目标、幸福的取得。 All we need to do to achieve that is produce more, consume less, or both. 为了达到目标,我们需要做的就是多生产,少消费,或者两者均衡。
- 3. 形近词辨析:
- ① abroad *adv*. 在国外,在海外 High school students may benefit from going abroad to study language. 高中生去国外学语言可能有好处。
- ② aboard *adv. /prep.* 在(船、飞机、车)上,上(船、飞机、车) If there's an emergency evacuation, leave all your bags, packs and possessions aboard. 如果要紧急疏散,将你所有的袋子、背包和财产留在机上。
- ③ absorb v. absorb sb. in sth.; sb. be absorbed in sth. Can your brain absorb all this information? 你的大脑能吸收全部这些信息吗?

You can tell he was absorbed in his conversation, and not paying much attention to the road. 可以看出,他当时光顾着说话而没有注意路上的情况。

- 4. advantage, benefit, interest, favor, profit, gain 这些名词均有"利益、好处"之意。
- ① advantage n. 指因某方面占优势或利用某机会以及对方弱点而获得利益与好处。 The Chinese team enjoyed the height advantage. 中国队占有身高优势。
- ② benefit v. 普通用词,指通过正当手段从物质或精神方面得到的任何好处或利益。 That was a health programme to benefit everyone. 那是一项对人人都有好处的健康计划。
- ③ favor 指在竞争中获得的好处,也可指在狭隘的个人利益。 But everything seemed to be in my favor. 但似乎每件事都对我有利。
- ④ profit 着重收益,尤指从物质、钱财等方面获得的利益。
 This transaction afforded them a good profit. 这笔交易给他们带来了很大利润。
- 5. 形近词辨析:
- ① adapt v. adapt to sth. / doing sth. 使适应, 使适合 Her children adapted quickly to living in a small town. 她的孩子很快适应了小城镇的生活。
- ② adopt v. 收养;接收,采取 She was forced to have her baby adopted. 她被迫把婴儿给别人收养。 This is the attitude that everyone should adopt towards their frustrations. 这也是每个人面对挫折时应该采取的态度。 adopt various methods 采取不同办法

- ③ adjust v. + to 使适应, 适应
 - Adjusting to the tropical heat was more difficult than I had expected. 适应热带地区的高温比我预料的更为困难。
- 6. 表示"相同,类似"等的一类词。
- ① same"同样的""一样的",指相同的人或事物,其前需用定冠词 the。

Old people do not feel the same about these things as the younger generation.

老年人对这些事情的感觉与年轻的一代不一样。

similar "类似的", 指两者有相似性, 非同一人或事物。常用结构: similar to

Anyone who has spent time with children is aware of the difference in the way boys and girls respond to similar situations.

与小孩待过的人都知道男孩和女孩对类似情况的反应方式有不同之处。

Your views on the political situation are very similar to mine.

你对政治形势的看法与我的看法非常相似。

② identical "同样的", 意义上接近 the same, 常用结构: identical with ...。有时还可以表示"同一个的"。

Yet underneath their labels, these products are often nearly identical (the same).

然而, 在标签下这些产品通常是几乎相同的。

This is the identical hotel we stayed at last year. 这是我们去年住过的同一家旅馆。

③ alike "相似的", 只用做表语。

The two buildings are alike in size and shape, but different in their uses. 这两座建筑物在大小和形状上相似,但用途不同。

- ④ likely adj. 可能的: be likely to
 - The blockade is likely to last for some time. 封锁可能要持续一段时间。
- 7. arise, rise, rouse, arouse, raise 的区别:
- ① arise v. (arose, arisen)
 - "发生", 如: Problems arose from the outset. 一开始就产生了很多问题。
 - "起源于",如: Accidents always arise from the carelessness. 许多事故都源于粗心。
- ② rise (rose, risen)
 - v. "上升", (不及物动词)
 - n. "上升,上涨"

give rise to = lead to 引起. 如:

The food shortage gave rise to the serious problems.

食品的短缺引起了严重的问题。

- ③ rouse "唤醒",如: I was roused by the sound of the alarm. 我被闹铃的声音吵醒了。
- ④ arouse "唤起",如: arouse one's interest / sympathy "唤起某人的兴趣 / 同情心"
- ⑤ raise 根本含义"使上升",

- "举起", raise one's hand
- "提出", raise a question
- "抚养", 相当于 bring up, 如: raise children
- "筹集", raise funds
- 8. 表示"帮助,援助"的一类词。
- ① aid v. 帮助,援助,带有被帮助者是弱者,处于需要帮助及安慰状态这个含义。 China never hesitates to aid those weak and small countries. 中国总是毫不犹豫地帮助弱小国家。
- ② help v. 帮助,指帮助某人达到一个目的,普通用语。 You are hindering rather than helping. 你在帮倒忙。
- ③ assist v. 帮助,指帮助者在援助过程中只起辅助作用,事情主要由被帮助者来做。 He assisted me in my experiments. 他帮助我做实验。
- 9. living, alive, live 均与"活,活着的"有关。
- ① living adj. 指活着的生命有机体。既可放在名词之前,也可放在其后。如: All living plants grow fast in the spring. 春天所有活着的植物都长得很快。
- ② alive 多用于人,含有"未死"的意思,但必须放在动词或被修饰的名词之后。如: He is the happiest man alive. 他是世界上最快乐的人。 all the living people = all the people alive She does not know if he is alive or dead. (做表语) 她不知道他是生还是死。
- ③ live adj. 活的, 生动的; 实况转播的; 精力充沛的 We saw a real live snake. 我们看见了一条活蛇。 live coverage of the World Cup 世界杯赛的实况转播 a live wire 活跃而精力充沛的人
- ④ lively adj. 活泼的 an intelligent and lively young woman 聪慧而充满活力的年轻女士
- 10. 表示"指责, 控告"等的词组: 主要根据动词后的介词区分。 accuse sb. of sth = charge sb. with sth. = blame sb. for sth. 指责……做了……; 指控……犯了……

He was accused of robbing the bank and sentenced ten years in jail. 他被指控抢劫银行并被判处十年监禁。

His mother charged him with being lazy. /

His mother blamed him for being lazy. 他妈妈指责他太懒。

- 11. 表示"设备、装备"等的一类词。
- ① facility 可数名词,常用复数形式。各种设施(建筑、人员、服务、设备、仪器等) facilities 指为某一特殊活动或目的所提供的种种便利,包括设备、建筑物和服

务等。

It describes completely the facility and its safety basis.

它完整地描述了设备和它的安全基础。

Many old houses have been updated with modern facilities.

许多老房子都添设了现代设备而变成很入时了。

- ② equipment 是不可数名词,指用于某一特殊目的的东西,供给品、仪器、机械、工具器材、装备(武器)等。
- ③ device 装置,设计,策略,设备;这个既可以是抽象的,也可以是具体的。 The recording device has activated.录音装置已经启动。
- ④ appliance (家用) 器具;器械;装置 The employer was in the appliance industry. 雇主从事的是器具行业。
- 12. empty, vacant, blank, void, vacuous, bare, barren 这些形容词用于表明无内容或缺乏逻辑上会有或应有的内容。
- ① empty 空的, 徒劳的, 指没有内容或实质的。 an empty box 空盒子; an empty room 空房子; empty promises 空许诺
- ② vacant 空缺的,空闲的,指没有人居住的或未在职的 The auditorium is full of vacant seats. 礼堂中满是空椅子。 The chairmanship is vacant. 主席职位空缺。 修辞上该词指缺乏理念意志:
 - a vacant stare 茫然凝视; a vacant mind 空虚的大脑
- ③ blank 空白,空白表格,强调某种缺乏,尤指在传递含义和内容的方面 blank pages 空白页; a blank expression 无意义的表达
- ④ void 用来指没有或完全缺乏可分辨内容的 space void of matter 太空没有物质 gibberish void of all meaning 毫无意义的胡言乱语
- ⑤ vacuous 空的,无意义的,像真空一样缺少物质 a vacuous smile 一个空洞的笑容 lead a vacuous life 过着空虚的生活
- ⑥ bare 空的,赤裸的,表示没有覆盖物 trees standing bare in November 11 月树木光秃秃的 a bare head or detail 光头
- 13. adapt = adjust 适应; adopt 收养; 采用
 You should adapt to college life as soon as possible. 你应该尽快适应大学生活。
 He adjusted himself very quickly to the weather in the country.
 他很快适应了这个国家的天气。

There are hundreds of people desperate to adopt a child. 有数以百计的人极其渴望收养小孩。

- 14. 表示"战争,战役"等的一类词。
- ① fight 意为"战争",指战争的动作。
 They fought back in self-defense. 他们进行了自卫还击。
- ② war 指全面战争,包含多次。
 We experienced two world wars in the zoth century.
 20 世纪我们经历了两次世界大战。
- ③ battle 战役,指大的、连续数小时数天的战争。 the battle of Waterloo 滑铁卢战役
- ④ struggle 指较长时间的激烈的争斗,常指肉体、精神上的战斗。
 They had to struggle for their freedom. 他们不得不为自由而战。
 The army struggled against Japanese Imperialist. 这支部队与日本帝国主义做斗争。
- ⑤ conflict 可指实际战争,但更多地指精神方面的冲突和斗争。 Personal ethics and professional ethics sometimes conflict. 个人道德与职业道德之间有时会相冲突。
- 15. assure, ensure, insure, guarantee 都含有一定的"保证"之意。
- ① assure 表示向某人保证某事一定会发生 (内含有让某人放心之意,以消除疑虑) assure sb. of sth. / assure sb. that...

He assured us of his ability to solve the problem.

他向我们保证他有能力解决这个问题。

The witness assured the judge that he was telling the truth. 目击者向法官保证他所说的都是事实。

- ② ensure "确定,保证"确保某种行为一定会发生。ensure sth. /ensure that... I will ensure that the car arrives by six o'clock. 我保证汽车六点钟以前到。
 This medicine will ensure you a good night's sleep. 这种药能保证你睡一夜好觉。
- ③ insure 意思是为防不测向保险公司付钱投保。
 My house is insured against fire. 我的房子保了火险。
- ④ guarantee 对某事物的品质或人的行为"提出担保",对事物、商品等无质量、性能等方面的欺诈行为做出保证。

The cooker is guaranteed for five years. 本炊具保质期五年。

Can you guarantee me a job when I get there?

你可以确保我到那儿就可以找到一份工作吗?

- 16. bank, beach, coast, shore, seaside 这些名词均含有"岸"之意。
- ① bank 多指有一定坡度的河岸、湖岸或堤岸。

I take a walk along the bank every morning.我每天早晨在岸上散步。

- ② beach 指倾斜度小,被海、湖或河水冲刷而有沙或卵石积存的地方。
 On the beach of the lake a curious scene took place. 湖边呈现出一幅罕见的景象。
- ③ coast 地理学上的名词,专指被视为边界的沿海陆地的尽头。
 The south coast is the warmest part of the country. 南海岸是这个国家最温暖的地区。
- ④ shore 指紧靠大湖泊或海洋的陆地边缘或靠海的休养地。
 There are lighthouses all along the eastern shore. 沿着东海岸都是灯塔。
- ⑤ seaside 尤指疗养地、游览地区的海边。 Let's go to the seaside at the weekend! 让我们到海滨去度周末吧!
- ⑥ bay 海湾。
 a short ferry ride across the bay 一趟跨海湾的短途渡轮旅程
 the Bay of Bengal 孟加拉湾
- 17. steams 蒸, boil 煮, roasts 烤, bakes 烘
- ① steams
 - n. 蒸汽 This machine goes by steam. 这台机器是由蒸汽驱动的。
 - v. 蒸煮 Steam or microwave the vegetables until tender. 蒸或用微波炉加热蔬菜、直到蔬菜变软。
- (2) boil
 - n. 沸腾, 煮沸 Keep the kettle at the boil. 使水壶里的水保持沸腾。
 - v. 煮, 通常是把东西加热到沸腾那种程度

So if you released this pressure, your blood would boil.

所以,一旦你释放这种压力,血液就会沸腾。

- ③ roast v. /n. 烘烤, 烤肉, 一般用在外部加热的那种烘烤。
 Truss the chicken before you roast it. 烤鸡前先将鸡贴身扎紧。
 Let's have a nice roast tonight. 我们今天晚上好好吃一顿烤肉吧。
- ④ bake 是烘焙,主要是将物品内部水分蒸发掉,烤面包、饼干、砖块。 We are baking in the sun. 我们让太阳晒熟了。
- 18. 与"环境"有关的一类词。
- ① circumstance 多用于指"状况,情况",常用复数。

 Maybe under these circumstances we may say that man can conquer nature.

 也许在这样的情况下我们可以说人定胜天。
- ② surrounding 多用于指"人文环境", adj. 周围的, 附近的 [pl.] 周围的事物, 环境。 Chicago and the surrounding area 芝加哥及其周边地区
- ③ environment 多用于指"自然环境"。
 In order to transform their environment, he drew up the project with painstaking accuracy.

为了改造环境,他制订了这个精确的计划。

- ④ condition 常用词,用作单数形式,表示人或物目前所处的真实具体状态,尤指内在状态,可与 state 替用;用作复数形式时,笼统地表示一般状态。
 The two-bedroom chalet is in good condition.
 这个有两间卧室的小屋状况良好。
- ⑤ background 也指背景声音,图画或布景的背景。
 You should acquaint yourself with the background of all your pupils.
 你应熟悉你所有学生的家庭背景。
- 19. whole, all, entire, total 这组形容词均含有"整体的,全部的"意思。
- ① whole 的意思比较广泛, 指事物是完整的、无损的, 通常置于定冠词或所有格之后, 单数名词之前。

He has got a whole set of Shakespeare's plays. 他得到一套完整的莎士比亚戏剧集。

② all 用法最广,几乎可以替代该组中的任何一个词,修饰可数名词时,表示"所有的",修饰不可数名词时,表示"全部的"。

All his money went to pay the rent. 他的钱全部用来付租金了。

- ③ entire 更强调事物的完整性,并常带有感情色彩。 There is an entire silence in the hall. 大厅里鸦雀无声。
- ④ total 指计数或计量后得出的总数。 What is the total population? 人口总数是多少?
- 20. correct, accurate, exact 这组形容词均表示"正确的"。
- ① correct 指正确的,真实的。
 He used correct English in his article, but his facts were incorrect.
 他文章里的英语使用得很准确,但引用的事实是不确切的。
- ② accurate 指由于细心而精确地使某事符合事实。
 He gave us an accurate report of the accident. 他向我们精确地描述了那起事故。
- ③ exact 指不多不少,确切地与事实或标准相符。 What is the exact size of the table? 桌子的确切尺寸是多少?
- 21. profession, occupation, job, work, profession 这组名词均可表示"职业,工作"。
- ① profession "职业,专业",指需要专门知识和特殊训练的职业,是受过相当高的教育才能获得的职业。

What made you chose law as a profession? 是什么使你选择法律作为职业的?

- ② occupation "职业,工作",指一般人日常所从事的职业,工作的种类较为广泛。 Many middle-aged women have no fixed occupation. 许多中年妇女无固定职业。
- ③ job "工作,活力",一般用来指各种形式有收入、有报酬的工作。 The students are seeking for summer jobs. 这些学生在寻找暑假工作。

④ work "工作",是非常广泛的用语,指任何一种体力或脑力劳动的工作,是不可数名词。

I've a lot of work to do. 我有许多工作要做。

- 22. quiet, calm, silent, still, peaceful, 这些形容词均含有"平静的, 无声无息的"之意。
- ① quiet 普通用词,指没有喧闹、活动或骚乱的寂静状态。 They were quiet during the alert. 警戒期间他们保持安静。
- ② calm 普通用词,既可指天气、海洋等的平静状态,又可指人的镇定、沉着、不慌乱,不受外界影响和情绪支配。

Such a boat is fit only for a calm sea. 这种船只适于在风平浪静的海上航行。 He answered with a calm voice. 他以平静的声音回答。

- ③ silent 普通用词,指缄默不语或无声无息。
 She emitted one shrill cry and then was silent. 她发出一声尖叫,然后沉默了。
- ④ peaceful 普通用词,指一种不受外物扰乱和刺激的内在宁静或和平状态。 She repined for a peaceful life. 她渴望过乎静的生活。
- 23. 与"费用,花费"有关的一类词。
- ① charge v. /n. 商品和服务所需的费用
 If you need shorten the trousers, additional fee will be charged.
 如果您需要缩短裤子,将收取额外费用。
 The charge varies from 5 yuan to 10 yuan.
 费用从 5 元到 10 元不等。
- ② pay 经常构成短语 pay for "付款,为……花费的",主语是人。 I pay them by the hour. 我按小时付给他们钱。 He pledged his gold watch to pay for her birthday gift. 为给她买生日礼物他抵押了他的金表。
- ③ cost v./n. 花费, 使付出; 费用, 成本 常用句型: sth. cost sb. some money 物花费的钱 This book costs me \$ 5. 这本书花了我 5 美元。 Can you figure the total cost out? 你能把全部成本算出来吗?
- ④ spend v. 度过,花费 (时间、金钱) 常用句型: sb. spend some time / money (in) doing sth. sb. spend some time / money on sth.

It is so easy to spend your entire life working for the bank. 花费一生的精力在银行工作,这确实很容易。

You'll spend lots on clothes if you always follow the fashion.

你若想赶新潮,就得在衣着上花很多钱。

- 24. "agree" 构成的词组
- ① agree with 同意,和……意见一致 She nodded to agree with me. 她点头同意了我的意见。
- ② agree on 同意 (双方就……达成一致)

 The two countries have agreed on the date for next talk.

 两国已就下次会谈的日期达成一致。
- ③ agree to 同意(上级,父母对下级,晚辈允许……)
 My parents don't agree to my staying outside overnight.
 我父母不同意我在外面过夜。
- 25. 表示"证实,确认"的一类词。
- ① confirm "(进一步)证实""确定"。指对已有的观点、说法、预测、猜疑等予以证实或确证。

The form requires that you confirm any delete request.

该表单要求您确认任何删除请求。

I can confirm the news. 我可以证实这个消息。

② prove "证明",普通用词,泛指有充分的、可靠的事实证明某一观点或结论是正确的。可用作及物动词,后接宾语或宾语从句。

In order to prove his point he showed them the latest sales figures.

为了证明他的观点,他给他们看了最新的销售数字。

These facts prove that they are trying to pass fish eyes for pearls.

这些事实证明他们是打算鱼目混珠。

③ verify "证明" "证实", "核实"。多指通过实验、论证, 查核证实某事的是对的, 也可表示"查证""核实"某事的真实性。

We must verify his figures. 我们必须把他的数字核实一下。

④ assure 保证. 使确信

常用结构: assure sb. that/assure sb. of sth. 确保

And I can assure you: there will be more.

我可以向你们保证:将会有更多。

I can assure you of the reliability of the information.

我可以向你保证这消息是可靠的。

- 26. 表示"持续,重复"的一类词。
- ① constant 多指习惯性的重复和不变的持续。

Even outstanding musicians require constant practice.

既使好乐师也需经常练习。

② continual 强调重复或持续发生,但连续之间允许有间断。

The student needs to realize that learning is a continual process—one that is both enjoyable and necessary.

学生应该意识到学习是一个持续不断的过程——一个令人愉快而又必要的过程。

③ continuous 语义最强、强调在时间和空间上没有间断。

On the other hand, your weight loss is in fact a continuous function, so each piece of data should be attached.

从另外一个角度来讲, 你的减肥事实上是一个持续的过程, 所以每天的数据都应该被附上。

④ perpetual 指保持永久不变,没有中断的行为,永无止境地持续下去。有时用于贬义,指令人厌烦之事。

They hoped to live in perpetual happiness. 他们希望生活在永久的幸福之中。

That means perpetual debt for as long as the system exists.

那意味着只要系统存在,就有永恒的债务。

- 27. announce, declare 都含"明确地声明或宣布"的意思。
- ① announce 指 "把人们关心或感兴趣的事正式公布于众"。 announce a sale 公布减价
- ② declare 经常用于正式场合,指"清楚,有力地,公开让人知道"。 He declared his intention to run for office. 他宣布了自己参加竞选的想法。
- ③ announce 和 declare 后边一般是跟宾语和宾补。

The chairman declared our team the winner.

主席宣布我们队获胜。

- 28. therefore, consequently, hence, then 这组副词均可表示"因此, 所以"这种逻辑或因果关系。
- ① therefore 强调前面的原因就是后面的结果。
 The house is smaller and therefore cheaper. 这房子小一点, 所以便宜些。
- ② consequently 可以指合理的推论,也可以表示影响或结果。
 My car broke down and consequently I was late. 我的汽车坏了,所以我迟到了。
- ③ hence 更强调前面原因的重要性,其后不跟从句。
 The economic situation was very bad, hence the high unemployment rate.
 经济形势很糟,所以失业率很高。
- ④ then 在指逻辑顺序时,主要用于结论句中。

 Come in by the back door, and then no one will notice you.

 从后门进来,那样没有人注意你。
- 29. 表示"耽误,推迟"的一类词。

- ① put off 延迟, 推迟
 - In that case, we'll have to put off the sports meet till next Saturday. 如果那样的话,我们只好把运动会推迟到下个星期六了。
- ② postpone 延迟,推迟(指主观上的推迟,也指把某人和某事置于次要位置);通用于交货期或者约会,会议等。(有一段比较长的时间去安排的) Lacking money, they had to postpone their plan. 没有钱,他们只得推迟计划。
- ③ delay 延误, 延时的 (客观上的推迟, 比如天气使得航班或者出货晚了) A tight schedule means we can't delay any longer.

 一张紧凑的时间表表明我们不能再耽搁了。
- 30. 表示"要求,请求"的一类词。
- ① demand 主语是人时,表示"坚决要求,坚持要做某事",常用来指一个有权要求别人做某事的人,坚持要对方服从,不希望对方有相反的意见。主语是物时,指迫切的需要。当用作动词时,后接不定式或宾语从句,不接动名词。

In production, we demand not only quantity but also quality.

我们的产品不但要求数量多,而且要求质量高。

He demanded to be told everything. 他要求把一切都告诉他。

I demand that John (should) go there at once. 我要求约翰立即到那里去。

- ② ask 一般用得比较多,比较通俗,语气也较客气。 I have something to ask you. 我有件事要问你。
- ③ request 意为"恳求,请求",指通过正式手续提出的要求,口气较缓和,态度很礼貌。

We did it at her request. 我们应她的要求而做。

- ④ require 表示按照法规、权利提出的要求或命令,指客观需要。 What clause do you require in the contract? 你要求在合同中签上什么条款?
- 31. estimate, appraise, assess, evaluate 这些词都表示对客体的重要性形成定论。
- ① estimate 暗示评价的主观性和不精确。
 The gardener estimated that it would take him four hours to weed the garden.
 园丁估计他给花园除草需要四个小时。
- ② appraise 表示专业水准的评估,名词形式为: appraisal。 He appraised the necklace at £1,000. 据他估计,项链价值 1 000 英镑。
- ③ assess 表示为确定某物的应税价值而做出的权威估价。 assess housing demand regularly and accurately 定期和准确地评估房屋需求
- ④ evaluate 表示在确定价值时经过了深思熟虑,不一定是金钱价值。

I cannot evaluate his ability. 我不能评价他的能力。

- 32. build, construct, erect, establish, set up 这些动词均有"建设,建立,建造"之意。
- ① build 普通用词,含义广泛,可指一切具体或抽象的建造或建立。

In order to do this you have to build up confidence.

为了做到这一点, 你一定要建立起自信。

② construct 较正式用词,强调根据一定计划进行的规模较大、结构较复杂、要求较高技术的建造。

This adaptation is also the basis for the recipe construct.

这个改编版本也是食谱构造的基础。

③ erect 侧重指对高而垂直物的建造。使用不如 build 广泛。

They plan to erect an apartment house on that property.

他们计划在那片地产上建造一座公寓楼。

④ establish 着重稳固地建成,可具体指国家、政府、学校或商店等的建立,也可指信仰、信用、名誉、法律、制度、规则等的建立。

It is impossible to establish democracy amid economic chaos.

经济秩序混乱不堪, 是不可能建立民主的。

⑤ set up 用作"建立"用时,侧重于"开始",可指具体或抽象的建立。

In remembrance of the battle, we set up a museum.

为了纪念那次战役,我们建立了一座博物馆。

He set up in that way an alternative form of quantum mechanics.

他就是以这样一种方式建立了量子力学的另一种形式。

⑥ building, structure 这两个名词都表示"建筑物"之意。

building 普通用词,指任何建筑物,但不涉及建筑物的大小、风格以及所用材料。

It was rebuilt on the site of the old building.

它是在原来建筑物的旧址上重新建造的。

structure 结构,构造,侧重建筑物的构造形式。

The typical family structure of Freud's patients involved two parents and two children.

弗洛伊德的病人的典型家庭结构是父母二人和两个孩子。

The oil-bearing structure of the new oil field has been verified.

新油田的含油层结构已经探明。

- 33. 表示"否定、否认"的一类词。
- ① neglect 指没有给予或很少给予必要的注意或关心,尤指因粗心或遗忘而没有做某事。除了可接 sb. 或 sth. 之外,还可接 to do sth. 或 doing sth. 做其宾语。

Don't neglect minor issues. 不要忽略枝节问题。

He neglected to make repairs in his house. 他忘记了修理房子。

② ignore 指有意识地拒绝、不愿给予注意或故意不予理会。后面只可接 sb. 或 sth.,不可接不定式。

She saw him coming but she ignored him. 她看见他走过来,但是装作没看见。

③ deny 作"否定,否认",当否认某件事时,就是否认它的真实性。其后可接名词、代词、动名词或 that 从句。其次,deny sb. sth. 结构,就是拒绝给予某人想要的东西。 He denied his daughter nothing and gave her whatever she wanted.

他从不拒绝女儿的任何要求、她要什么就给什么。

The president has denied having made any statement to that effect. 总统否认曾就那件事做过任何声明。

- 34. 表示"拒绝"的一类词。
- ① decline 婉言拒绝,谢绝,相当于 refuse politely, 比较正式。decline sth.; decline to do sth.

They declined our offer of help with thanks. 他们谢绝了我们提供的帮助。

② refuse 语气比 decline 强,含有非常坚决地、不客气地拒绝的意味。其后接名词或代词、不定式。

She refused to marry him, for she didn't love him at all. 她拒绝嫁给他,因为她一点儿也不爱他。

- ③ reject 指强烈地拒绝接受,通常包含否定与对抗的意味。 Our proposal was firmly rejected. 我们的提议被断然否决。
- 35. 表示"打断,干扰"的一类词。
- ① interrupt
 - vt. 打断 (正在说话或动作的人), 中断, 妨碍, 插嘴
 - vi. 打断 (别人的讲话或行动)
 - n. (发给电脑的) 中断信号

Don't interrupt me when I am busy. 我正忙的时候请不要来打扰我。interfere with 干扰,干涉;妨碍;触动或弄坏;乱动;与……抵触

But that is your affair; we do not interfere with your problems.

但那是你自己的事情。我们不愿意干涉你们的问题。

interfere in vt. 干涉, 干预

I hope my parents don't try to interfere in my choice of career. 我希望我的父母在我的职业选择方面尽量不要干涉。

② disturb 扰乱; 搅乱; 使骚动

Wind disturbed the water. 风吹皱水面。

妨碍;打扰;干扰

Please don't disturb me while I'm working. 当我工作时,请不要打扰我。 使焦虑:使心烦;使烦恼 I have heard some bad news which has disturbed me very much. 我听到了一些坏消息, 这使我很不安。

- 36. pull, draw, drag 三者都可表示"拉"; push 推动, 推
- ① 如果表示将某物拖动了位置,用 draw 或 pull 均可以。
 The horse was drawing [pulling] a cart. 马拉着一辆大车。
 He drew [pulled] her out of bed. 他把她从床上拖了起来。
- ② 如果没有位置变化,通常用 pull。 He pulled the door open. 他拉开了门。 He pulled her hair. 他拽着她的头发。
- ③ 与 draw 或 pull 相比, drag 侧重指用力拖或拉。
 They had to drag loads. 他们得拖很重的东西。
 He dragged the body out of the river. 他把死尸从河中拉出来。
- 37. 表示"讨论,辩论,争论"的一类词。
- ① discussion 程度最轻,也就是气氛最轻松,一般用于课堂、公司工作团队,甚至是朋友或家庭成员之间,对某件事情的看法的表达,类似于聊天。
 - Their case is now under discussion. 他们的案件现在正在讨论中。
- ② debate 程度就有些重了,语言色彩也更正式,一般就是正式场合、如:辩论会、研讨会、学术会议、专题性国际会议、临时召开的针对性会议等等,使用这个词语时,通常存在双方比较明显的观点差异,话题也是比较正式严肃的。

The theatre's future is a subject of considerable debate. 剧院的前途是一个颇有争议的问题。

- ③ argument 指辩论双方均以事实或理由来说服对方的辩论。
 She got into an argument with the teacher. 他和老师争论了起来。
 His argument is very convincing. 他的论点很有说服力。
- ④ conflict 指双方坚持己见、互不妥协,怀有敌意的争论,多暗示分歧极为严重,有时用语言无法解决,只得诉诸武力。

The hours of those two exams conflict. 那两门测验的时间冲突。

- ⑤ dispute 普通用词,侧重指长时间,言辞激烈,针锋相对的争辩。 Mother interposed in the dispute between my brother and me. 母亲介入了我与哥哥之间的争论。
- ⑥ quarrel 普通用词,既可指言辞激烈的争吵,也可指温和的言辞上的不和。 They should resolve that quarrel on its merits. 他们应该根据争论本身的情况解决那个争论。
- 38. 表示"展示,揭露"的一类词。
- ① demonstrate 证明、展示 (才能、品质、感情)

How can I demonstrate to you that my story is true? 我怎么才能向你证明我的故事是真的呢?

② display 陈列,展示 Department stores display their goods in the windows.

百货商店把商品陈列在橱窗里。

③ reveal 揭露,所跟的名词多为一些有关秘密的、不可告人的东西。 I should be glad to give you any help if you reveal your thoughts to me. 如果你把你的想法透露给我,我愿意尽全力帮助你。

- ④ expose 的意思多为"暴露",如:把秘密暴露于世,比 reveal 和 disclose 的口吻要强。 We need to use God's Word to expose the lies we've ingrained about sex. 我们需要使用上帝的话语来揭露我们关于性的根深蒂固的谎言。
- 39. saving, economical, sparing 三者都有"节约的"意思。
 - energy saving 节能,能源节省 time saving 节约时间 saving account 储蓄账户 money saving 省钱;储蓄 tax saving 节税;税收节减 saving face 挽回面子,爱面子

① saving 节省,常用结构有:

cost saving n. 节省费用; 成本节约 labor saving 人力节约 space saving [计] 节约空间 life saving 救生; 水上救生 fuel saving 节约燃料

- ② economical 一般就是不浪费金钱(或时间、燃料等)的节约 I want most economical packing. 我要最经济的包装。
- ③ sparing 用作节约讲的时候有种主观上节约的感觉,相当吝惜,所以节约;通常与in, of 连用。

So you can turn the trolley car, if you want to, onto the side track, killing the one, but sparing the five. 所以,你可以将有轨电车开到岔道上——如果你愿意的话———轧死一个人,但救了另外五个。

- 40. 表示"教授,指导"的一类词。
- ① teach 最普通用词,含义广泛。指直接教某人知识或技能等,侧重传播知识和帮助应用知识。

She volunteered to teach in the school. 她自愿在学校教书。

② instruct 与 teach 含义很接近,但语体较正式。指系统、详细、精心地传播知识,侧重教授与指示。

Students can instruct one another, can mentor one another, and can teach one another. 学生可以互相指导,互相学习,互相引导。

③ educate 较正式用词、指教育、内容比 teach 广泛、侧重动机或结果、或对潜在能力

的开发。

It takes patience to educate children. 教育孩子需要耐心。

④ coach 指对个人或小组等进行辅导、训练或补课。

He is now being coached by a famous pianist. 他现在正由一位著名的钢琴家进行辅导。

⑤ train 指训练与培养。

It is difficult to train an unruly boy. 教育一个不守规矩的男孩儿是一件不容易的事。

⑥ tutor 指进行个别教学或课外辅导。

Most parents have no time to tutor their children. 大部分家长没有时间辅导孩子。

- 41. 近形、近义词比较:
- ① affect 动词,指 "产生的影响之大足以引起反应",着重 "影响"的动作,有时含有 "对……产生不利影响"的意思。

This article will affect my thinking. 这篇文章将会影响我的思想。

- ② effect 可做名词,动词指"实现""达成",着重"造成"一种特殊的效果。 This book effected a change in my opinion. 这本书使我的看法发生变化。
- ③ influence 名词指"通过说服、举例等对行动、思想、性格等产生不易觉察到的、潜移默化的影响"。

Influenced by a high-school biology teacher, he took up the study of medicine. 在一位中学生物教师的影响下,他从事了医学研究。

- 42. 义近词比较:
- ① effective 意思是"有效的",强调一个事情的结果,表示结果很好。 The medicine is effective for knocking colds. 这种药祛除感冒很有效。
- ② efficient 意思是"有效率的",强调一个事情的过程,表示过程很快。 She is an efficient secretary. 她是个有效率的秘书。
- ③ valid 法律概念意义上的有效,或指理论、观点、结论等能站得住,正确的。 This train ticket is valid for three days. 这张车票 3 日内有效。
- ④ beneficial 有益的,有利的

And make better use of this policy beneficial to both people and the state. 使这项利国利民的政策更好地发挥作用。

- 43. 表示"选择"的一类词。
- ① choose "选择, 挑选", 普通用语。

We have many patterns in stock for you to choose from. 我们有多种现存的式样供你选择。

Choose any one you like. 任你挑选一个。

② select"挑选,精选",侧重于从同类的许多东西仔细辨别后选择,从中挑选最合

适的。

You can select any one of them for testing. 您可以选择其中任何一个进行测试。

- ③ pick"挑选",是指仔细地而又苛刻地选择,多指挑选有形的东西。 How do you pick one library over another? 您怎么选择这个图书馆,而不选另一个? How do you pick the right one?怎么样选择一个正确的方案?
- ④ elect "推选,选举"

 The University of Washington elected him Dean in 1956.

 华盛顿大学在1956 年选他为院长。
- 44. 表示"电"的一类词。
- ① electricity 电, 电流, 是四个单词里唯一的名词。 The electricity is off, so we must reset it. 电流切断了, 我们必须把它重新接通。
- ② electronic 电子的,电子学的,形容词。

 The price of electronic products slumps recently. 最近,电子产品的价格暴跌。
- ③ electrical 关于电的,与电有关的,形容词。 electrical engineering 电工学 electrical apparatus 电器
- ④ electric 意思是"带电的,发电的,电动的",也是形容词。 an electric generator 发电机 an electric iron 电熨斗。
- 45. 表示"扩张,蔓延"的一类词。
- ① expand 主要是"扩大,膨胀"的意思。
 You should see your stomach expand and contract.
 你应该看到你的腹部扩张和收缩。
- ② spread 主要是"蔓延"的意思,要搭配 out 才能表示"张开,伸长扩延"的意思。 The disease was spread in the small town. 这种疾病曾在这个小镇传播蔓延。 They depend on instinct and spread out. 它们依靠本能展开队形。
- ③ extend 延长,扩大 (范围、时间、距离);伸开 (身体某部分)
 The school is extending the range of subjects taught. 学校正在拓宽授课学科的范围。
 Our playing fields extend as far as those trees. 我们的操场延伸到那些树前。
 He extended his hand to the new employee. 他伸出手来和新员工握手。
 extend one's business 扩大其业务
- ④ stretch 主要是"拉长,伸长,延伸"的意思 Vast meadows stretch to the east. 辽阔的草场向东伸展。

- 46. 表示"证明,证据"的一类词。
- ① proof 指足以直接证明某事为某事实的依据,侧重作为充分证据所导致的结果。 The proof was fished up from old papers. 这个证据是从旧文件中搜寻到的。
- ② evidence 普通用词,在法律上指能起证明作用的,如:证明、公证书以及所有的实物东西等。在生活中指任何一样可证明某一件事的真实性的东西。 From the evidence, he must be guilty. 根据此证据,他肯定有罪。
- 47. 表示"交换、转移"的一类词。
- ① transfer 搬迁 (转到新地方); 转学; 转会 (尤指职业足球); 转移, 转交 (财产, 权力等); 换乘交通工具等。

The film studio is transferring to Hollywood. 这家电影制片厂正迁往好莱坞。

He transferred to UCLA after his freshman year.

他读完大学一年级后, 转学到加利福尼亚洛杉矶分校。

He intends to transfer the property to his daughter.

他打算把财产转让给女儿。

Passengers are transferred from the airport to the hotel by taxi.

旅客从机场乘出租车到旅店。

transfer sth. from...to... 转移(某物)从……到……

The content owners and providers can specify whether you can transfer it from one device to another.

内容所有者和提供者可以指定用户是否能将内容从一个设备传递到另一个设备。

② convert 转变,改建,改装,改变信仰

convert sth. (into sth.) 使转变:把……转化成

I convert waste into wealth. 我将废物转变为财富。

The signal will be converted into digital code. 信号将被转变成数字编码。

European missionaries converted thousands to Christianity.

欧洲的传教士使成千上万的人皈依了基督教。

③ replace...with... 用······代替

You can swap out one system and replace it with another.

您可以换掉一个系统并且用其他的系统替代它。

④ exchange...for... 交换. 兑换

She got the building owner to let her clean apartments and do other work in exchange for rent. 她说服房东让她做清洁和其他的工作,以此来交换房租。

- 48. 表示"破坏、毁坏"的一类词。
- ① destroy 多指彻底地、毁灭性地破坏,含导致无用,不能或很难再修复的意味。 Destroy the old world and build a new one. 破坏旧世界,建设新世界。

② ruin 多指因外部原因而受到严重破坏或毁灭, 侧重破坏的彻底性, 也可用于引申 意义。

The tower collapsed into a heap of ruin. 这座塔倒塌了,成为一堆废墟。

- ③ wreck 残骸 (侧重指船只、车辆、房屋等受到严重破坏或完全毁坏) The car was a worthless wreck after the collision. 撞车以后,那辆车成了毫无价值的残骸。
- ④ damage 多指对无生命物体的损害,造成降低价值、破坏功能等后果。 The customer will be reimbursed for any loss or damage. 顾客受到的一切损失或损害将一律得到赔偿。
- ⑤ spoil 溺爱;变坏,腐败
 She spoiled her grandson. 她把孙子宠坏了。
 Olives, ketchup and even mayo are all so highly acidic they'll dry out before they spoil. 橄榄、番茄酱甚至蛋黄酱都是高酸性的,在腐败前它们就会变干。
- 49. 表示"希望,期望"的一类词。
- ① expect 意思是期待某事或某人可能的发生或出现。 You can expect us for lunch. 你可以等我们一起吃午饭。
- ② anticipate 有时被用作 expect 的同义词,但通常它不仅仅是期望这个意思,有时它指提前采取行动,来阻止预料中某事的发生或在一项要求或愿望说出之前使它得到满足。

anticipate the attack and lock the gates 预见会有袭击并锁上门;

③ hope 意思是热切期望并对获得所期待之物的可能性方面有一定的信心。 I hope to see you soon. 我希望不久就见到你。

As a man sows, so he shall reap.

种瓜得瓜,种豆得豆。

No cross, no crown.

不经历风雨,怎么见彩虹。

Where there is a will there is a way.

有志者事竟成。

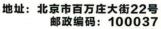




作者简介: 李海燕

研究方向: 英语课程与教学论

1996年参加工作,现任教于潍坊科技学院外语学院,副教授。参加工作20多年来,始终工作在教育教学第一线,先后被评为学科带头人,潍坊市教学能手。曾获得潍坊科技学院优秀教师和三八红旗手荣誉称号。工作中勤于研究,发表SCI论文一篇,出版专著两部,出版教材与教辅多部;主持和参与多项国家、省、区级课题的研究,多篇论文在国家级、省级核心刊物上发表;被《学英语》报聘为特邀编辑。



电话服务 服务咨询热线: 010-88361066

读者购书热线: 010-68326294 010-88379203

网络服务

机工官网: www.cmpbook.com 机工官博: weibo.com/cmp1952 金书网: www.golden-book.com 教育服务网: www.cmpedu.com

www.cmpedu.com 封面无防伪标均为盗版



机械工业出版社微信公众号

上架指导 英语

ISBN 978-7-111-60458-7

策划编辑◎孙铁军/封面设计◎马精明



定价: 48.00元